



**beginner's hindi**  
rupert snell

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be  
with **teach yourself**

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data:* a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

*Library of Congress Catalog Card Number:* on file.

First published in UK 2003 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2003 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 2003 Rupert Snell

*In UK:* All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

*In US:* All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, an Hachette Livre UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 15 14 13 12 11  
Year 2010 2009 2008 2007



# contents

introduction	vi
the Hindi script and sounds	viii
<b>01 नमस्ते</b>	<b>1</b>
<b><i>namaste</i> greetings</b>	
1 saying hello	2
2 who and how people are	2
3 this and that; he, she and it	5
4 more questions	6
<b>Raju meets his neighbour, Javed</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>02 हमारा परिवार</b>	<b>14</b>
<b><i>hamārā parivār</i> our family</b>	
1 gender matters	15
2 number	18
3 getting familiar	23
4 getting formal	25
<b>Javed asks Raju about his family</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>03 कमरे में</b>	<b>30</b>
<b><i>kamre mē</i> In the room</b>	
1 some more questions	31
2 where? on the table	33
3 case	37
<b>at school</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>at home</b>	<b>43</b>

04	चाय पीजिए <i>cāy pījie</i> have some tea	47
	1 giving orders and making requests	48
	2 telling, saying, speaking, asking	51
	3 routine events	53
	Javed and Raju get to know each other	57
05	आपको क्या चाहिए ? <i>āpko kyā cāhie?</i> what do you want?	61
	1 obliques again	62
	2 what do you like, what do you want?	64
	Pratap goes shopping	66
	3 availability — 'to get, to find'	67
	4 revision!	69
	Raju visits a hotel	69
06	आप क्या काम करते हैं ? <i>āp kyā kām karte hai?</i> what work do you do?	77
	1 possession and 'to have'	78
	2 the Sharma family	80
	Manoj introduces Pratap to his father	83
	3 you can go	84
	there's nobody in the house	85
	4 let me go!	87
07	भूत-काल <i>bhūt-kāl</i> the past	92
	1 in the past	93
	2 getting specific	97
	3 a shortcut	98
	4 adding emphasis	102
08	क्या हो रहा है ? <i>kyā ho rahā hai?</i> what's happening?	106
	1 comparisons: bigger and smaller	107
	2 continuous tense: '-ing' verbs	109
	Geeta phones home	110
	3 Raju is reading 'his own' newspaper	113
	revising with Gopal and Jagdish	114
	4 these days, in and out, up and down	118

09	भविष्य में <i>bhaviṣya mē</i> in the future	124
	1 the future tense	125
	what will you do tomorrow?	125
	the days ahead	128
	2 ifs and maybes	131
	Javed calls on Raju	131
	3 so that, in order that	133
	4 how long does it take?	134
10	क्या हुआ ? <i>kyā huā?</i> what happened?	138
	1 the past tense	139
	2 transitivity	141
	3 other perfective tenses	145
	4 sit and rest — linking two actions	150
11	कहा जाता है कि ... <i>kahā jātā hai ki...</i> It is said that...	156
	1 a verb with many meanings	157
	2 finding the way in Vilaspur	158
	3 it is said that... the passive is easy	161
	4 you should read this — obligations	166
	5 you <i>must</i> read this — stronger obligations	168
12	तबियत और शैली <i>tabiyat aur śailī</i> health and style	173
	1 'j-words' and relative clauses	174
	2 getting things done — causatives	180
	a visit to the doctor	182
	3 parts of the body	184
	4 shades of meaning	186
	5 style in Hindi	188
	6 numbers	190
	7 time	192
	key to the exercises	198
	Hindi-English vocabulary	230
	English-Hindi vocabulary	244
	glossary of grammatical terms	262
	index	264

## Welcome to *Beginner's Hindi* !

### Is this the right course for you?

This course is designed for people who want a structured but user-friendly introduction to Hindi, whether studying alone or in a class. It aims to get you into the world of real Hindi as quickly as possible. Each of the twelve units prepares you for some new social or practical situations while also introducing the grammar gradually and simply. We begin with simple statements and questions using the verb 'to be'; then the various tenses and other structures are explained, steadily increasing the range of contexts that you can deal with. There are plentiful examples and exercises; all *numbered* questions are provided with answers, either immediately after the questions, or at the back of the book. The book often addresses you directly, asking questions about you and encouraging you to *use* the language as you learn it. The carefully graded vocabulary for each unit comes at the end, with full Hindi–English and English–Hindi glossaries bringing it all together at the back of the book.

### The Sharma family

Most of the dialogues are based on the various members of the Sharma family, who live in Agra: Geeta (a doctor) and her husband Raju (a teacher), their children Manoj, Ram and Meena — and a dog, Moti. Because we're dealing with a set of known characters, it's easy to see the different levels of formality that are an important feature of Hindi: for example, we hear the children being addressed less formally than adults and strangers. One or two subsidiary characters, such as Pratap (a student visiting England), also appear in the book *Teach Yourself Hindi*, which gives a more detailed introduction to the language.

## Script and pronunciation

The Hindi script, called 'Devanagari', is an extremely systematic writing system: each character represents a particular sound, making it the perfect guide to pronunciation. Although a 'roman' transliteration is given throughout the book, the small effort required to learn Devanagari is very well worthwhile!

Listen out for two important contrasts in pronunciation. The first is between 'retroflex' consonants (pronounced with the tongue touching the roof of the mouth, giving a 'hard' sound of the kind associated with Indian pronunciations of words like 'doctor') and 'dental' consonants (pronounced with the tongue touching the upper teeth, giving a 'soft' sound as in an Italian pronunciation of 'Italia'). The second contrast is between 'unaspirated' and 'aspirated' consonants, such as the pair क *ka* and ख *kha* — the first is much less 'breathy' than the second. Vowel sounds are very 'clean': the vowel ए *e* is more like the vowels in French 'été' than in English 'mayday'.

## The recordings

This book is accompanied by recordings which will help bring the language alive for you. They introduce the sounds of Hindi, present the dialogues and other features from the book, and go beyond the book with several further listening and speaking exercises that will build your confidence in using Hindi in real conversations. Pause the recording whenever you need time to think, and practise imitating the Hindi voices as closely as possible, *speaking out loud*.

## Where does this book lead?

After finishing this book, you may like to look at *Teach Yourself Hindi*, by Rupert Snell with Simon Weightman: this gives more detail on the grammar, and plenty of reading practice. The web-based course *A Door into Hindi* ([www.ncsu.edu/project/hindi\\_lessons](http://www.ncsu.edu/project/hindi_lessons)) has an interactive approach to the learning process; and Hindi films also offer a brilliant way of getting to know the language and the culture it expresses. Most importantly of all, you will find some 400 million Hindi-speakers waiting to talk to you: start speaking Hindi today!

Dictionaries: Rupert Snell's *Beginner's Hindi Dictionary* is designed for learners and gives a lot of help with sentence formation, while the *Oxford Hindi-English Dictionary* by R.S. McGregor is what you need if you want to start reading Hindi newspapers and magazines, many of which are available on the internet.

## The Hindi script and sounds

Although a roman transliteration is provided for all the Hindi in this book, learning to read and write the Devanagari script is extremely worthwhile. Its phonetic basis makes it really easy to learn; and if you're in India, being able to read the Hindi all around you in signs and posters will bring its own reward, even before you start reading more ambitiously. As you begin to learn Devanagari, there's a very useful web-based 'Hindi script tutor' to help you learn the characters and their sounds: <http://www.avashy.com/hindiscripttutor.htm>; this website, devised by Richard Woodward, teaches and tests the script inter-actively, and demonstrates the sounds of Hindi. And for a detailed introduction to Devanagari, see Rupert Snell, *Beginner's Hindi Script* (Hodder & Stoughton, 2000).

The best way to learn the script is to copy out each character several times, pronouncing its sound as you do so. Start with the consonants. Each basic consonant is actually a complete syllable: for example the sign क stands for not just the consonant 'k' but the whole syllable 'ka'; it will sound similar to the first syllable of the word 'cup'. The 'a' vowel is always there unless replaced by some other vowel indicated by a special vowel sign. More on this later: for now, concentrate on copying and learning the consonants.

Write on lined paper, with the top line of the character falling on the printed line, and the rest of the character hanging below.

### Aspiration

In the descriptions of the Hindi sounds you'll see many references to 'aspiration' — the amount of breath that escapes from the mouth when a sound is spoken. In English, the initial 'k' of 'kick' is strongly aspirated, the closing 'ck' much less so. In Hindi, such differences are represented by pairs of consonants such as क *ka* (unaspirated) and क्ख *kha* (aspirated). English consonants fall halfway between the two, so you'll have to make a special effort to cut back your aspiration for the one, and increase it for the other! All these things are best dealt with by listening to the recordings, and/or by asking a Hindi-speaker to demonstrate them for you.

On the facing page you'll find all the main characters of the script set out in a table; then each character is set out separately with its handwritten equivalent, and a note on pronunciation. The consonants are dealt with first (as is the tradition), though in dictionary order the vowels precede the consonants.



# Devanagari: the basic characters

## Independent vowel forms ('vowel characters')

अ <i>a</i>	आ <i>ā</i>	इ <i>i</i>	ई <i>ī</i>
उ <i>u</i>	ऊ <i>ū</i>	ऋ <i>r̥</i>	
ए <i>e</i>	ऐ <i>ai</i>	ओ <i>o</i>	औ <i>au</i>

## Consonants

क <i>ka</i>	ख <i>kha</i>	ग <i>ga</i>	घ <i>gha</i>	
च <i>ca</i>	छ <i>cha</i>	ज <i>ja</i>	झ <i>jha</i>	
ट <i>ṭa</i>	ठ <i>ṭha</i>	ड <i>ḍa</i>	ढ <i>ḍha</i>	ण <i>ṇa</i>
त <i>ta</i>	थ <i>tha</i>	द <i>da</i>	ध <i>dha</i>	न <i>na</i>
प <i>pa</i>	फ <i>pha</i>	ब <i>ba</i>	भ <i>bha</i>	म <i>ma</i>
य <i>ya</i>	र <i>ra</i>	ल <i>la</i>	व <i>va</i>	
श <i>śa</i>	ष <i>ṣa</i>	स <i>sa</i>	ह <i>ha</i>	

## Dependent vowel forms ('vowel signs', based on क as an example)

क <i>ka</i>	का <i>kā</i>	कि <i>ki</i>	की <i>kī</i>
कु <i>ku</i>	कू <i>kū</i>	कृ <i>kṛ</i>	
के <i>ke</i>	कै <i>kai</i>	को <i>ko</i>	कौ <i>kau</i>

## ▶ The consonants

क	<i>ka</i>	As in 'skin'; minimum aspiration.
क़	<i>qa</i>	Further back in the throat than undotted क (many speakers say 'ka' for both).
ख	<i>kha</i>	Aspirated version of क <i>ka</i> .
ख़	<i><u>k</u>ha</i>	Like the 'ch' in Scottish 'loch'.
ग	<i>ga</i>	As in 'gift'.
ग़	<i>ga</i>	A more guttural version of the above.
घ	<i>gha</i>	Aspirated version of ग़; like the 'g h' in 'dog-house'. A <i>single</i> sound.
च	<i>ca</i>	As in 'cheap', but with the tongue positioned as for the 'ty' sound in 'tube'.
छ	<i>cha</i>	Aspirated form of the above.
ज	<i>ja</i>	As in 'jeep'.
ज़	<i>za</i>	As in 'zip'.
झ	<i>jha</i>	Aspirated form of ज <i>ja</i> .

The next seven consonants are 'retroflex': the tongue curls back to the palate (front part of the roof of the mouth), making a hard sound.

ट	<i>ṭa</i>	As in 'try', but harder.
ठ	<i>ṭha</i>	Aspirated version of the above.
ड	<i>ḍa</i>	As in 'dry', but harder.
Ḍ	<i>ṛa</i>	The tongue flicks past (rather than resting on) the retroflex position.
Ḍ	<i>dha</i>	Aspirated version of ड <i>ḍa</i> .

ढ़ *rha* Aspirated version of ड़ *ra*.

ण *ṇa* An 'n' sound in the retroflex position.

The next five consonants are 'dental': the tongue touches the upper teeth, making a soft sound.

त *ta* As the first 't' in 'at the', very soft.

थ *tha* Aspirated version of the above.

द *da* As in 'breadth', very soft.

ध *dha* Aspirated version of the above.

न *na* As in 'anthology'.

'SONI DENTAL CHAMBER:  
[FALSE-] TEETH AND  
SPECTACLE-MAKER'

Ironically, the English word 'dental' is spelt with retroflex ड़ *ḍ* and ट़ *ṭ* in this signboard, whereas the Hindi word दाँत *dāṭ* 'tooth' has two dentals!



Now we come to 'labials', consonants produced with the lips.

प *pa* Much less aspiration than in 'pin'.

फ *pha* Aspirated version of the above.

ब *ba* As in 'bun'.

भ *bha* Aspirated version of the above.

म *ma* As in 'moon'.

Now for a sequence of four characters called ‘semi-vowels’:

य	<i>ya</i>	As in ‘yes’.
र	<i>ra</i>	As in ‘roll’ — but lightly rolled!
ल	<i>la</i>	As in ‘lullaby’, but softer, more dental.
व	<i>va</i>	Neither a buzzy sound as in ‘visa’, nor as rounded as in ‘we’, but halfway between.

We’re nearly done. Here are three ‘sibilants’:

श	<i>śa</i>	As ‘sh’ in ‘ship’; pronounced ‘s’ in some regional accents.
ष	<i>ṣa</i>	Strictly speaking a ‘cerebral’ (in which the tongue touches a high point in the roof of the mouth); but usually pronounced ‘sh’, the same as the previous character, श <i>śa</i> . It occurs in loanwords from Sanskrit only.
स	<i>sa</i>	As in ‘sip’.

And finally an aspirate:

ह	<i>ha</i>	As in ‘help’.
---	-----------	---------------

You’ll have noticed that some characters have ‘dotted’ versions: these are for sounds which go beyond the range of Sanskrit, the classical language for which the script was first devised. They are क *qa*, ख *kha*, ग *ga*, ज *za*, and फ *fa* (typically for words borrowed from Arabic and Persian) and ढ *ra*, ढ *rha* (late developers in the long history of Indian languages). These characters are not distinguished in dictionary order from their undotted equivalents. The showing of dots in print is often rather haphazard — but not in this book!

Remember that each consonant contains an inherent ‘a’ vowel as part of the deal. But it’s important to notice that this ‘inherent vowel’ is *not* pronounced at the end of a word: thus the word for ‘all’, सब, reads *sab* (not ‘*saba*’), and the word for ‘simple’, सरल, reads *saral* (not ‘*sarala*’). Armed with this information you can now read and write these words:

कब <i>kab</i> when?	कलम <i>qalam</i> pen
जब <i>jab</i> when	गरम <i>garam</i> warm
तब <i>tab</i> then	तरफ <i>taraf</i> direction
पर <i>par</i> but; on	नमक <i>namak</i> salt
फल <i>phal</i> fruit	महल <i>mahal</i> palace
मन <i>man</i> mind	शहर <i>śahar</i> town
सब <i>sab</i> all	सड़क <i>sarak</i> street
हम <i>ham</i> we, us	सरल <i>saral</i> simple

In the words महल *mahal* and शहर *śahar*, the ह *ha* has the effect of 'lightening' the adjacent vowels, making them sound more like the 'e' in 'mend' than the 'u' in 'mundane' (this will vary somewhat from speaker to speaker). Elsewhere, Hindi is remarkably free of such contextual changes: the Hindi script is a 'what you see is what you get' system.

## ► The vowels

Now we move on to look at vowels. Each vowel has two different forms: one is the 'vowel *sign*', used after a consonant; the other is the 'vowel *character*', used in other positions. First, vowel signs.

A vowel sign is used when a vowel follows a consonant. It's a small mark that is added to the consonant, and it replaces the 'a' that is otherwise present as the inherent vowel. The examples below show the vowel 'e' added to the consonants क *ka*, ख *kha*, ग *ga* and घ *gha*.

के *ke*      खे *khe*      गे *ge*      घे *ghe*

Here now is the full range of such vowel signs, based on क —

का <i>kā</i>	A long vowel, as in 'calm'.
कि <i>ki</i>	A short vowel, as in 'kipper'.
की <i>kī</i>	A long version of the above, as in 'keep'.
कु <i>ku</i>	Short, as in 'put'.

कु	kū	A long version of the above, as in 'food'.
कृ	kr	A very short 'ri' sound, as in 'thrill'. It only occurs in Sanskrit loanwords.
के	ke	Like the French é in 'été'; <i>not</i> a rounded sound as in English 'payday'.
कै	kai	Similar to the vowel in 'cap', but flatter.
को	ko	A pure 'o', less rounded than in 'cold'.
कौ	kau	Similar to the vowel in 'hot'.

And here's some more reading and writing practice:

▶ कान	kān	ear	पानी	pānī	water
कृपा	krpā	kindness	भारत	bhārat	India
खड़ा	kharā	standing	मकान	makān	house
चाय	cāy	tea	वाराणसी	vārāṇasī	Varanasi
तोता	totā	parrot	सितार	sitār	sitar
दुकान	dukān	shop	सौ	sau	hundred
दूर	dūr	far	है	hai	is

At this point you should practise writing out these vowel signs attached to *all* the consonants until they become really familiar.

These vowel signs can only be used when they have a consonant sign to cling to. In other positions, such as at the beginning of a word, the vowel is written with a vowel *character*. The first in the list is the 'inherent' vowel:

अ	a	अब	ab	now
आ	ā	आज	āj	today
इ	i	इधर	idhar	over here
ई	ī	ईरान	irān	Iran

उ	u	उधर <i>udhar</i> over there
ऊ	ū	ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up
ऋ	r	ऋण <i>ṛṇ</i> debt
ए	e	एक <i>ek</i> one
ऐ	ai	ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such
ओ	o	ओर <i>or</i> direction
औ	au	और <i>aur</i> and

And here are three words in which vowel characters appear as the second of two sequential vowels (i.e. neither at the beginning of a word nor after a consonant):

कई *kaī* 'several' — ई *ī* follows the syllable क *ka*;

उबाऊ *ubāū* 'boring' — ऊ *ū* follows the syllable बा *bā*;

बनाओ *banāo* 'make' — ओ *o* follows the syllable ना *nā*.

## ▶ Conjunct characters

When two consonant sounds come together without an intervening vowel, we have to cancel or 'kill off' the inherent vowel of the first consonant. For example, in the word 'Hindi' there is no 'a' between the 'n' and the 'd', so a shortened form of the first consonant, न, is physically joined to the second consonant, द, giving हिन्दी *hindī*.

क + य = क्य	क्या <i>kyā</i> what?
च + च = च्च	बच्चा <i>baccā</i> child
च + छ = च्छ	अच्छा <i>acchā</i> good
ल + ल = ल्ल	बिल्ली <i>billī</i> cat
स + त = स्त	हिन्दुस्तानी <i>hindustānī</i> Indian

Conjuncts beginning with द *da* can be hard to recognize:

द + द = द्द	रद्द <i>radd</i> cancelled
द + म = द्म	पद्म <i>padma</i> lotus

द + य = य विद्या *vidyā* knowledge

द + व = द्व द्वार *dvār* gateway

When र is the first character of a compound it turns into a little curl (called रेफ *reph*) above the second character:

र + क = कर्क फर्क *farq* difference

र + थ = र्थ अर्थ *arth* meaning

र + द = दर्द दर्द *dard* pain

र + मा = मर्मा शर्मा *śarmā* Sharma

र + थी = र्थी विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* student

The *reph* comes at the very *end* of the syllable in words like शर्मा *śarmā* (where it's above the vowel sign ि) and like विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* (where it's above the vowel sign ी).

When र is the *second* character of a compound it turns into a little slanting line, tucked into a convenient nook of the first character:

ग + र = ग्र सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* cigarette

द + र = द्र द्रोही *drohī* hostile

प + र = प्र प्रदेश *pradeś* state, region

See what happens when no nook is available:

ट + र = ट्र ट्रेन *ṭren* train

ड + र = ड्र ड्रामा *ḍrāmā* drama

Some conjuncts stack vertically:

ट + ट = ट्ट छुट्टी *chuṭṭī* holiday

ट + ठ = ठ्ठ चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* letter

Most conjuncts are easy to read, but there are some in which the conjunct has limited resemblance to its component parts, and these have to be learnt as new characters in their own right:

क + त = क्त भक्ति *bhakti* devotion

क + ष = क्ष रक्षा *rakṣā* protection



त + त = त्त	कुत्ता <i>kuttā</i> dog
त + र = त्र	मित्र <i>mitr</i> friend
द + भ = द्भ	अद्भुत <i>adbhut</i> wondrous
श + र = श्र	श्री <i>śrī</i> Mr
ह + म = ह्म	ब्रह्मा <i>Brahmā</i> Brahma (a deity)

The rare character ज्ञ *jñā* is a conjunct of ज with ञ *ñā*, a nasal consonant (like the first 'n' in 'onion') that is not shown in our table because it never occurs alone; ज्ञ *jñā* is usually pronounced 'gy'.

When pronouncing doubled consonants, just 'hold' the sound momentarily, as in distinguishing 'night train' from 'night rain'. Practise with कुत्ता *kuttā* 'dog', बिल्ली *billī* 'cat', बच्चा *baccā* 'child'.

## ▶ Nasals

A nasalized vowel is produced by diverting part of the breath through the nose: speak while pinching your nose to hear what it sounds like! Nasalization is marked with a sign called *candrabindu*, 'moon-dot':

हाँ *hā̃* yes

कहाँ *kahā̃* where?

यहाँ *yahā̃* here

If there's a vowel sign above the top line, there won't be room for the moon (*candra*), so the dot (*bindu*) is used alone:

नहीं *nahī̃* no

कहीं *kahī̃* somewhere

यहीं *yahī̃* right here

Nasalizing a vowel can change the meaning, as with है *hai* 'is' and हैं *haĩ* 'are'. Similarly, while यहीं *yahī̃* means 'right here', यही *yahī* means 'this one, this very one' — a completely different word!

Our little dot has a second function also (here with a new name — 'anusvār'); it can be used to indicate an 'n' or 'm' when such a letter is the first element of a conjunct:

अंडा = अण्डा *aṇḍā* egg

हिंदी = हिन्दी *hindī* Hindi

लंबा = लम्बा *lambā* long, tall

## Other signs

The word दुःख *duḥkh* 'sorrow' includes the colon-like sign called 'visarga'; this rare sign indicates a lightly pronounced 'h' sound.

In situations where it's not possible or convenient to write or print a conjunct, an inherent vowel can be cancelled by hanging a little line called 'virām' below it: चड्डी *caḍḍī* 'underpants'.

The 'full stop' is a standing line, as seen from Unit 1 onwards. Most other punctuation follows English usage.

Here are the numerals from 0 to 9:

० १ २ ३ ४ ५ ६ ७ ८ ९

## Loanwords from English

When writing non-Indian words, transcribe the sounds, *not* the spelling; thus 'cycle' (bicycle) is written साइकिल *sāikil*. English 't' and 'd' usually become retroflex: 'doctor' is डाक्टर *dākṭar*.

Sometimes a little 'moon' sign is used to designate the Hindi pronunciation of an English 'o' like the first vowel in 'chocolate' — चॉकलेट. It doesn't have a standard transliteration in the roman script, and the sound isn't really affected: most people say चाकलेट *cāklet*, with the standard long 'ā' vowel.

## Silent 'inherent vowels'

The inherent vowel 'a' is silent at the end of a word in Hindi — though not in Sanskrit, Hindi's classical ancestor. Thus the name राम is pronounced 'Rām' in Hindi, 'Rāma' in Sanskrit.

At the end of a word whose last syllable is a conjunct character, the inherent vowel is pronounced lightly in order to make the conjunct easier to say: अवश्य *avaśya* 'certainly', जन्म *janma* 'birth'.

Sometimes an inherent vowel is silent in the middle of a word, even though the spelling involves no conjunct. Here is a general (if imperfect) pair of rules:

In a word of three or more syllables that ends with a vowel other than the inherent vowel, the penultimate inherent vowel is not pronounced. Thus समझ *samajh*, but समझा *samjāh* (because it ends in long ā); रहन *rahan*, but रहना *rahnā* (likewise).

In a word that has three syllables in which the third is a long vowel and the second is the inherent vowel, the inherent vowel is not pronounced. Thus सोमवार *somvār* 'Monday', लिखता *likhtā* 'write, writing'.

# 01

नमस्ते

*namaste*

greetings

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to say who you are, greet people and say goodbye
- how to ask questions about things and people

**Language points**

- the verb 'to be'
- basic sentence construction
- question formation

## 1 Saying hello

The universal greeting in Hindi is the word नमस्ते *namaste*, which means both 'hello, good morning' etc. and also 'goodbye'. It comes from India's classical language of Sanskrit, where it means 'Salutation to you'. Though this literal meaning is now remote (like the 'God be with you' that underlies the English 'goodbye'), it is part of the elaborate code of respect that runs through the Hindi language.

To communicate well in Hindi, good clear pronunciation is as important as grammar, and the word नमस्ते *namaste* gives an ideal chance to practise right from the start. Your tongue should touch your upper teeth as you say the n and the t; and in the last syllable, aim for the é of French 'été' — the vowel is not the rounded 'ay' sound heard in English 'stay'.



In formal contexts the word नमस्ते *namaste* is accompanied by a gesture in which the palms are put together (though many people are more likely to offer a handshake these days). It's considered polite to say नमस्ते *namaste* to an older or senior person first, before he or she says it to you. Sometimes you will hear नमस्कार *namaskār* (in which the 's' may be pronounced 'sh'); this means the same thing.

नमस्ते *namaste* — you're speaking Hindi already!

## 2 Who and how people are

Here we meet Raju and Geeta, a married couple from Agra; later we'll meet their children Manoj (boy, 16), Meena (girl, 10), and Ram (boy, 8), and their dog Moti (male, age unknown).

'I am' is मैं हूँ *mai hū̃*, and 'I am not' is मैं नहीं हूँ *mai nahī̃ hū̃*. Notice how the verb हूँ *hū̃* 'am' comes at the end of the sentence.

मैं राजू हूँ ।

*mai Rājū hū̃*. I am Raju.

मैं ठीक हूँ ।

*mai thīk hū̃*. I am OK.

मैं बीमार नहीं हूँ ।

*mai bīmār nahī̃ hū̃*. I am not ill.

मैं गीता हूँ ।

*mai Gītā hū.* I am Geeta.

मैं हिन्दुस्तानी हूँ ।

*mai hindustānī hū.* I am Indian.

मैं अंग्रेज़ नहीं हूँ ।

*mai āgrez nahī hū.* I am not English.

## ► My and mine

The word मेरा *merā* means both 'my' and 'mine'; है *hai* means 'is'.

मेरा नाम राजू है ।

*merā nām Rājū hai.* My name is Raju.

मैं अध्यापक हूँ ।

*mai adhyāpak hū.* I'm a teacher.

गीता डाक्टर है ।

*Gītā dāktar hai.* Geeta is a doctor.

सीता नर्स है ।

*Sītā nars hai.* Sita is a nurse.

## ► Yes/no questions

A statement is turned into a question by simply adding the question-word क्या *kyā* at the beginning of the sentence; क्या *kyā* isn't translatable here: it just turns what follows into a question. There's no change in the word order: just add क्या *kyā* to make a question.

क्या मैं अध्यापक हूँ ?

*kyā mai adhyāpak hū?* Am I a teacher?

क्या गीता डाक्टर है ?

*kyā Gītā dāktar hai?* Is Geeta a doctor?

क्या सीता नर्स है ?

*kyā Sītā nars hai?* Is Sita a nurse?

Because these questions can all be answered either जी हाँ *jī hā* 'yes' or जी नहीं *jī nahī* 'no', we'll call them 'yes/no' questions. Here are two more, with their answers:

क्या राजू ठीक है ?

*kyā Rājū thik hai?* Is Raju OK?

जी हाँ, राजू ठीक है ।

*jī hāī, Rājū ṭhīk hai.* Yes, Raju is OK.

क्या गीता बीमार है ?

*kyā Gītā bimār hai?* Is Geeta ill?

जी नहीं, गीता बीमार नहीं है ।

*jī nahiī, Gītā bimār nahiī hai.* No, Geeta isn't ill.

## You

In order to begin real conversations, we need to add the word आप *āp* 'you' and the verb हैं *hai* 'are' — आप हैं *āp hai* 'you are'. Notice the difference between है *hai* 'is' and हैं *hai* 'are': the second is nasalized (a nasal sound is produced when some of the breath comes through the nose rather than through the mouth).

Now we're really talking:

क्या आप गीता हैं ?

*kyā āp Gītā hai?* Are you Geeta?

जी हाँ, मैं गीता हूँ ।

*jī hāī, mai Gītā hūī.* Yes, I am Geeta.

क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?

*kyā āp dāktar hai?* Are you a doctor?

जी हाँ, मैं डाक्टर हूँ ।

*jī hāī, mai dāktar hūī.* Yes, I'm a doctor.

क्या मैं बीमार हूँ ?

*kyā mai bimār hūī?* Am I ill?

जी नहीं, आप बीमार नहीं हैं ।

*jī nahiī, āp bimār nahiī hai.* No, you're not ill.

क्या मैं ठीक हूँ ?

*kyā mai ṭhīk hūī?* Am I all right?

जी हाँ, आप बिल्कुल ठीक हैं !

*jī hāī, āp bilkul ṭhīk hai!* Yes, you're quite all right!

## Did you know?

In the tally of world languages, only English, Chinese and Spanish have more speakers than Hindi.

## ▶ Practise what you've learnt

Practise these questions by speaking them out loud (and answering them) until you're completely at home with the format. Stay with this pattern until new words and phrases have been introduced.

क्या आप अँग्रेज़ हैं ?

*kyā āp āgrez hai?* Are you English?

क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?

*kyā āp dāktar hai?* Are you a doctor?

क्या आप अध्यापक हैं ?

*kyā āp adhyāpak hai?* Are you a teacher?

क्या आप विद्यार्थी हैं ?

*kyā āp vidyārthī hai?* Are you a student?

क्या आप ठीक हैं ?

*kyā āp thīk hai?* Are you OK?

क्या आप बीमार हैं ?

*kyā āp bimār hai?* Are you ill?

क्या आप खुश हैं ?

*kyā āp khuś hai?* Are you happy?

क्या आप नाराज़ हैं ?

*kyā āp nārāz hai?* Are you angry?

You may have noticed that Hindi doesn't have a word for 'a' (though sometimes the word एक *ek* — the number 'one' — serves this purpose). There isn't a word for 'the' either.

## ▶ 3 This and that; he, she, and it

So far we've seen the pronouns मैं *mai* 'I', and आप *āp* 'you'. Now we move on to the two words that mean, 'this, that, he, she, it'.

यह *yah* (often pronounced 'ye') means 'this', and वह *vah* (often pronounced 'vo') means 'that'.

यह लड़का राम है ।

*yah laṛkā Rām hai.* This boy is Ram.

यह लड़की मीना है ।

*yah laṛkī Mīnā hai.* This girl is Meena.

वह लड़का नाराज़ है, लेकिन ...

*vah larḳā nārāz hai, lekin...* That boy is angry, but...

वह लड़की खुश है ।

*vah larḳī khuś hai.* that girl is happy.

यह *yah* and वह *vah* also mean 'he, she, it'. If the person referred to is near at hand ('this person here'), use यह *yah*; otherwise, use वह *vah*. Only use यह *yah* when indicating quite specifically 'this person/thing here': when referring to 'he, she, it' generally, वह *vah* is better.

राम ठीक नहीं है । वह बीमार है ।

*Rām ṭhīk nahī hai. vah bīmār hai.* Ram isn't well. He's ill.



यह मोती है । *yah Motī hai.*

यह कुत्ता है । *yah kuttā hai.*

यह खुश है । *yah khuś hai.*

यह मेरा है । *yah merā hai.*

There's no 'he/she' gender distinction in the Hindi pronoun. Later on you'll see that gender is distinguished by some verb endings.

In the plural, यह *yah* becomes ये *ye* ('these, they'), and वह *vah* becomes वे *ve* ('those, they'). And remember है *hai* 'is' and हैं *hai* 'are'.

यह आदमी अंग्रेज़ है ।

*yah ādmī āgrez hai.* This man's English.

ये लोग अंग्रेज़ हैं ।

*ye log āgrez hai.* These people are English.

वह आदमी अंग्रेज़ है ।

*vah ādmī āgrez hai.* That man's English.

वे लोग अंग्रेज़ हैं ।

*ve log āgrez hai.* Those people are English.

## ► 4 More questions

We saw just now that क्या *kyā* turns a statement into a question, without changing the word order: आप ठीक हैं *āp ṭhīk hai* 'You are OK' becomes क्या आप ठीक हैं? *kyā āp ṭhīk hai?* 'Are you OK?'.



But in a second meaning, क्या *kyā* has the sense 'what?' Similarly कौन *kaun* means 'who?'

क्या

*kyā* what?

यह क्या है ?

*yah kyā hai?* What is this?

वह क्या है ?

*vah kyā hai?* What is that?

कौन

*kaun* who?

यह कौन है ?

*yah kaun hai?* Who is this?

वह कौन है ?

*vah kaun hai?* Who is that?

Notice how a reply copies the word-order of the question, the answer-word simply replacing the question-word. In the following pair of sentences, कौन *kaun* 'who?' is replaced by the answer मेरा दोस्त *merā dost* 'my friend'.

वह कौन है ?

*vah kaun hai?* Who is he?

वह मेरा दोस्त है ।

*vah merā dost hai.* He is my friend.

Our conversation possibilities are growing rapidly:

आप कौन हैं ?

*āp kaun hai?* Who are you?

मैं राजू हूँ ।

*mai Rājū hū.* I am Raju.

यह कौन है ?

*yah kaun hai?* Who is this?

यह मीना है ।

*yah Mīnā hai.* This is Meena.

वह क्या है ?

*vah kyā hai?* What is that?

वह सितार है ।

*vah sitār hai.* That is a sitar.

वह कौन है ?

*vah kaun hai?* Who is that?

वह मनोज है ।

*vah Manoj hai.* That is Manoj.

मनोज कौन है ?

*Manoj kaun hai?* Who is Manoj?

मनोज मेरा भाई है ।

*Manoj merā bhāi hai.* Manoj is my brother.

### ► What's this?

Here's a chance for you to practise a very useful question-and-answer pattern — 'What's this?' 'It's a...'



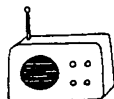
यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*

यह किताब है । *yah kitāb hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*

यह कलम है । *yah qalam hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*

यह रेडियो है । *yah rediyo hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*

यह कुर्सी है । *yah kursī hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*  
यह मेज़ है । *yah mez hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*  
यह मकान है । *yah makān hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*  
यह कुत्ता है । *yah kuttā hai.*



यह क्या है ? *yah kyā hai?*  
यह बिल्ली है । *yah billi hai.*

Remember that when क्या *kyā* comes at the beginning of the sentence, it turns a following statement into a question. When you've answered the following questions, make up more questions and answers of your own, using any everyday words from the glossary. (NB: you'll find answers to all *numbered* questions either after the questions or at the back of the book.)

१. क्या मोती बिल्ली है ?  
*kyā Motī billi hai?*
२. क्या गीता डाक्टर है ?  
*kyā Gītā dāktar hai?*
३. क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?  
*kyā āp dāktar hai?*
४. क्या राजू और गीता हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?  
*kyā Rājū aur Gītā hindustānī hai?*
५. क्या हिंदी आसान है ?  
*kyā hindī āsān hai?*

## ▶ Raju meets his new neighbour, Javed

You'll see a new pronoun here: उसका *uskā* 'his, her/hers, its'.

राजू नमस्ते । मैं राजू हूँ । आप कौन हैं ?

जावेद नमस्ते । मेरा नाम जावेद है ।

राजू क्या आप ठीक हैं ?

जावेद जी हाँ, शुक्रिया, मैं ठीक हूँ ।

राजू वह लड़की कौन है ?

जावेद उसका नाम बानो है ।

राजू आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ?

जावेद मेरा पूरा नाम जावेद खाँ है ।

*Rājū namaste. mai Rājū hū. āp kaun hai?*

*Jāved namaste. merā nām Jāved hai.*

*Rājū kyā āp thīk hai?*

*Jāved jī hā, śukriyā, mai thīk hū.*

*Rājū vah laṛkī kaun hai?*

*Jāved uskā nām Bāno hai.*

*Rājū āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?*

*Jāved merā pūrā nām Jāved Khā hai.*

**Raju** Hello. I am Raju. Who are you?

**Javed** Hello. My name is Javed.

**Raju** Are you OK?

**Javed** Yes, thank you, I am OK.

**Raju** Who is that girl?

**Javed** Her name is Bano.

**Raju** What is your full name?

**Javed** My full name is Javed Khan.

### Exercise 1a Translate:

**Javed** What is this?

**Manoj** This is my radio.

**Javed** Who is that boy?

**Manoj** He is my brother.

**Javed** What's his name?

Manoj His name is Ram.  
 Javed Who is that girl?  
 Manoj Her name is Meena.  
 Javed Is she ill?  
 Manoj No, she isn't ill. She's OK.

**Exercise 1b** Answer the questions about the people described below. (New words: शादी-शुदा *sādī-śudā* 'married', दोनों *donō* 'both'.)



सुरेश खन्ना Suresh Khanna	उमा देवी Uma Devi	विनोद कुमार Vinod Kumar
student	teacher	doctor
Indian	Indian	American
not married	not married	married
not happy	happy	happy

- १ क्या सुरेश शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā Sureś sādī-śudā hai?*
- २ क्या वह हिन्दुस्तानी है ? *kyā vah hindustānī hai?*
- ३ क्या वह अध्यापक है ? *kyā vah adhyāpak hai?*
- ४ उसका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *uskā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
- ५ क्या उमा हिन्दुस्तानी है ? *kyā Umā hindustānī hai?*
- ६ क्या वह डाक्टर है ? *kyā vah dāktar hai?*
- ७ क्या वह शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā vah sādī-śudā hai?*
- ८ क्या वह सुखी है ? *kyā vah sukhi hai?*
- ९ क्या विनोद अँग्रेज़ है ? *kyā Vinod āgrez hai?*

- १० क्या वह अध्यापक है ? *kyā vah adhyāpak hai?*  
 ११ उसका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *uskā pūrā nām kyā hai?*  
 १२ क्या वह शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā vah sādī-śudā hai?*  
 १३ क्या विनोद और सुरेश दोनों हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?  
*kyā Vinod aur Sureś donō hindustānī hai?*  
 १४ क्या उमा और विनोद दोनों शादी-शुदा हैं ?  
*kyā Umā aur Vinod donō sādī-śudā hai?*  
 १५ क्या सुरेश और उमा दोनों अध्यापक हैं ?  
*kyā Sureś aur Umā donō adhyāpak hai?*

## Glossary

The words in this glossary are on the recording at the end of the Introduction (track 1).

अंग्रेज़ <i>āgrez</i> m., f. English person	डाक्टर <i>ḍāktar</i> m. doctor
अध्यापक <i>adhyāpak</i> m. teacher	दोनों <i>donō</i> both
अमरीकन <i>amrikan</i> American	दोस्त <i>dost</i> m., f. friend
आदमी <i>ādmī</i> m. man	नमस्कार <i>namaskār</i> hello,
आप <i>āp</i> you	goodbye
आपका <i>āpkā</i> your, yours	नमस्ते <i>namaste</i> hello, goodbye
आसान <i>āsān</i> easy	नर्स <i>nars</i> m., f. nurse
इसका <i>iskā</i> his, her/hers, its	नहीं <i>nahī</i> not, no
उसका <i>uskā</i> his, her/hers, its	नाम <i>nām</i> m. name
एक <i>ek</i> a; one	नाराज़ <i>nārāz</i> angry, displeased
और <i>aur</i> and	पूरा <i>pūrā</i> full, complete
औरत <i>aurat</i> f. woman	बिल्कुल <i>bilkul</i> quite, completely
क़लम <i>qalam</i> m./f. pen	बिल्ली <i>billī</i> f. cat
किताब <i>kitāb</i> f. book	बीमार <i>bīmār</i> ill, sick
कुत्ता <i>kuttā</i> m. dog	बेटा <i>beṭā</i> m. son
कुरसी <i>kursī</i> f. chair	भाई <i>bhāī</i> m. brother
कौन <i>kaun</i> who?	मकान <i>makān</i> m. house
क्या <i>kyā</i> what?; and question-	मेज़ <i>mez</i> f. table
marker	मेरा <i>merā</i> my, mine
खुश <i>khuś</i> pleased, happy	मैं <i>mai</i> I
जी नहीं <i>jī nahī</i> no	यह <i>yah</i> he, she, it, this
जी हाँ <i>jī hā</i> yes	ये <i>ye</i> they, these
ठीक <i>thīk</i> OK, all right	रेडियो <i>redīyo</i> m. radio

लड़का *laṛkā* m. boy  
 लड़की *laṛkī* f. girl  
 लेकिन *lekin* but  
 लोग *log* m. pl. people  
 वह *vah* he, she, it, that  
 विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m. student  
 वे *ve* they, those  
 शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* married  
 शुक्रिया *śukriyā* thank you

सुखी *sukhī* happy  
 सितार *sitār* m. sitar  
 हाँ *hā* yes  
 हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi  
 हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī* Indian  
 हूँ *hū* am  
 हैं *hai* are  
 है *hai* is

# 02

हमारा परिवार

*hamārā*

our family

**In this unit you will learn**

- about masculines and feminines
- about formal and informal ways of speaking to people

**Language points**

- agreement of number and gender
- cardinal and ordinal numbers



## 1 Gender matters

We saw earlier that लड़का *laṛkā* means 'boy' and लड़की *laṛkī* means 'girl'. This contrast between *-ā* in the masculine and *-ī* in the feminine appears in many nouns, adjectives, etc. — in fact it's a characteristic feature of Hindi. See how both adjective and noun change in the following:

मनोज बड़ा लड़का है ।

*Manoj barā laṛkā hai.* Manoj is a big boy.

मीना बड़ी लड़की है ।

*Mīnā barī laṛkī hai.* Meena is a big girl.

Masculine बड़ा *barā* becomes feminine बड़ी *barī*. Watch again:

मनोज लंबा और पतला है ।

*Manoj lambā aur patlā hai.* Manoj is tall and thin.

मीना लंबी और पतली है ।

*Mīnā lambī aur patlī hai.* Meena is tall and thin.

राम छोटा है ।

*Rām choṭā hai.* Ram is little.

क्या राम अच्छा लड़का है ?

*kyā Rām acchā laṛkā hai?* Is Ram a good boy?

मोती मोटा नहीं है ।

*Motī motā nahī hai.* Moti isn't fat.

क्या मनोज पतला है ?

*kyā Manoj patlā hai?* Is Manoj thin?

क्या मीना लंबी है ?

*kyā Mīnā lambī hai?* Is Meena tall?

Similarly, मेरा *merā* 'my, mine' becomes मेरी *merī* when describing a feminine noun:

यह लड़का मेरा छोटा भाई है ।

*yah laṛkā merā choṭā bhāī hai.* This boy is my little brother.

यह लड़की मेरी छोटी बहिन है ।

*yah laṛkī merī choṭī bahin hai.* This girl is my little sister.

मेरा बेटा ठीक है लेकिन मेरी बेटी बीमार है ।

*merā betā ṭhīk hai lekin merī betī bīmār hai.* My son is well but my daughter is sick.

The speaker of the three sentences above could be either male or female: the gender of मेरा/मेरी *merā/merī* depends on the thing or person possessed, *not* the possessor. It behaves just like any other adjective. Similarly आपका *āpkā* becomes आपकी *āpkī* in the feminine:

आपका बेटा काफी लंबा है ।

*āpkā betā kāfi lambā hai.* Your son is quite tall.

आपकी बेटी बहुत सुंदर है ।

*āpkī betī bahut sundar hai.* Your daughter is very beautiful.

### Practise what you've learnt

Think of a neighbour and answer these questions about him or her:

A male neighbour	A female neighbour
क्या आपका पड़ोसी लंबा है ? <i>kyā āpkā paṛosī lambā hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन लंबी है ? <i>kyā āpkī paṛosin lambī hai?</i>
क्या आपका पड़ोसी पतला है ? <i>kyā āpkā paṛosī patlā hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन पतली है ? <i>kyā āpkī paṛosin patlī hai?</i>
क्या आपका पड़ोसी अँग्रेज़ है ? <i>kyā āpkā paṛosī āgrez hai?</i>	क्या आपकी पड़ोसिन अँग्रेज़ है ? <i>kyā āpkī paṛosin āgrez hai?</i>
क्या वह नाराज़ है ? <i>kyā vah nārāz hai?</i>	क्या वह नाराज़ है ? <i>kyā vah nārāz hai?</i>
क्या वह बीमार है ? <i>kyā vah bīmār hai?</i>	क्या वह बीमार है ? <i>kyā vah bīmār hai?</i>
क्या वह सुंदर है ? <i>kyā vah sundar hai?</i>	क्या वह सुंदर है ? <i>kyā vah sundar hai?</i>

### All nouns have a gender

You must learn the gender of every new noun you meet — it's not only animate beings that have gender. The words आशा *āśā* 'hope', अलमारी *almārī* 'cupboard' and तस्वीर *tasvīr* 'picture' are all feminine, while कमरा *kamrā* 'room', मकान *makān* 'house' and आदमी *ādmī* 'man' are all masculine. Try learning nouns with an appropriate

बड़ा कमरा, बड़ा आदमी

*barā kamrā, barā ādmī* big room, big man

बड़ी तस्वीर, बड़ी किताब

*barī tasvīr, barī kitāb* big picture, big book

बड़ा कुत्ता, छोटी बिल्ली

*barā kuttā, choṭī billī* big dog, small cat

### Some adjectives never change

Only those adjectives that end *-ā* in the masculine change to *-ī* in the feminine. Other adjectives never change, and so are called 'invariable'; ठीक *thik* 'OK' is a good example.

यह किताब ठीक है ।

*yah kitāb thik hai.* This book is OK.

यह कमरा ठीक है ।

*yah kamrā thik hai.* This room is OK.

मनोज ठीक है ।

*Manoj thik hai.* Manoj is OK.

A few adjectives ending in *-ā* are invariable despite this ending. Examples are ज़िन्दा *zindā* 'alive' and शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* 'married'. A few adjectives ending in *-ī*, such as खाली *khālī* 'vacant, empty, free', are also invariable.

क्या बिल्ली ज़िन्दा है ?

*kyā billī zindā hai?* Is the cat alive?

गीता शादी-शुदा है ।

*Gītā śādī-śudā hai.* Geeta is married.

यह कमरा खाली है ।

*yah kamrā khālī hai.* This room is free.

### Did you know?

Though India's linguistic diversity has made it difficult for Hindi (or any other language) to gain the status of a true 'national language', Hindi is spoken by some 350 million people in the subcontinent — the 1991 census gives the figure of 337,272,114 (source: [www.censusindia.net](http://www.censusindia.net)).

## ▶ Role play

In this role play, your name is Geeta Sharma and you are married to Raju Sharma; you have a brother, Rakesh, and a sister, Sita — she's unwell, but everyone else is OK. Answer these questions:

- १ क्या आप गीता हैं ? *kyā āp Gītā hai?*
- २ आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ? *āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
- ३ क्या आप शादी-शुदा हैं ? *kyā āp śādī-śudā hai?*
- ४ राकेश कौन है ? *Rākeś kaun hai?*
- ५ सीता कौन है ? *Sītā kaun hai?*
- ६ क्या आपकी बहिन ठीक है ? *kyā āpkī bahin thīk hai?*
- ७ क्या आपका भाई बीमार है ? *kyā āpkā bhāi bīmār hai?*
- ८ क्या आप बीमार हैं ? *kyā āp bīmār hai?*

## 2 Number

English usually makes nouns singular plural by adding an 's', as in 'one book, two books'. In Hindi it's a bit more complicated, because masculine and feminine nouns behave differently. We'll look at masculine nouns first.

### Two types of masculine noun

Most masculine nouns ending *-ā* in the singular change to *-e* in the plural. The same happens with most adjectives ending *-ā*.

बड़ा कमरा	बड़े कमरे
<i>barā kamrā</i> big room	<i>barē kamre</i> big rooms

Other masculine nouns don't change at all in the plural — they behave like the English word 'sheep'. In the following, though the noun आदमी *ādmī* doesn't change, its status as singular or plural is revealed by the adjective changing from singular *-ā* to plural *-e*:

बड़ा आदमी	बड़े आदमी
<i>barā ādmī</i> big man	<i>barē ādmī</i> big men

You'll sometimes find that neither the adjective *nor* the noun is of the changing type. As with the numerically ambiguous English phrase 'fat sheep', you can only tell the number from the context:

आसान काम

*āsān kām* easy work / easy jobs

साफ़ मकान

*sāf makān* clean house / clean houses

A handful of nouns ending in *-ā* belong to this 'non-changing' group:

पिता *pitā* 'father', चाचा *cācā* 'uncle', राजा *rājā* 'king', नेता *netā* 'leader, politician.

मेरे पिता और चाचा दोनों नेता हैं ।

*mere pitā aur cācā donō netā hāi.* My father and uncle are both politicians.

## Two types of feminine noun

Feminine nouns ending *-ī* (like लड़की *laṛkī* 'girl') or *-i* (शक्ति *śakti* 'power') change this ending to *-iyā* in the plural, but feminine adjectives stay the same in the plural:

छोटी लड़की

*choṭī laṛkī* little girl

छोटी लड़कियाँ

*choṭī laṛkiyā* little girls

Other feminine nouns are made plural by adding *-एँ -ē*.

एक मेज़

*ek mez* one table

दो मेज़ें

*do mezē* two tables

एक औरत

*ek aurat* one woman

तीन औरतें

*tīn auratē* three women

एक मोटी महिला

*ek moṭī mahilā* one fat lady

चार मोटी महिलाएँ

*cār moṭī mahilāē* four fat ladies

मेरी बड़ी बहिन

*merī baṛī bahin* my big sister

मेरी बड़ी बहिनें

*merī baṛī bahinē* my big sisters

An adjective that refers to mixed genders is masculine, as in लंबे *lambe* below:

मनोज और मीना दोनों लंबे हैं ।

*Manoj aur Mīnā donō lambe hāi.* Manoj and Meena are both tall.

(Manoj is male, Meena female: the adjective लंबे *lambe* is masculine plural.)

## Fill the gap!

Fill the gap with the appropriate word(s). Answers below.

- १ ये औरतें बहुत ..... हैं ।  
*ye auratē bahut ..... hai.* These women are very tall.
- २ ..... बहुत मोटे हैं ।  
*..... bahut moṭe hai.* Those boys are very fat.
- ३ आपका दोस्त ..... ।  
*āpkā dost ..... Your friend is very thin.*
- ४ सीता ..... है ?  
*Sitā ..... hai? Who is Sita?*
- ५ ..... मोती ठीक है ?  
*..... Motī ṭhīk hai? Is Moti OK?*

**Answers:** 1 लंबी *lambī*; 2 वे लड़के *ve larṛke*; 3 बहुत पतला है *bahut patlā hai*; 4 कौन *kaun*; 5 क्या *kyā*.

## Practising some plurals

Making nouns plural is an essential skill: practise singular/plural contrasts out loud, pronouncing every word as clearly as you can, and you'll feel the music of the language as you learn it.

एक आदमी	दो आदमी
<i>ek ādmī</i> one man	<i>do ādmī</i> two men
एक लड़का	दो लड़के
<i>ek larṛkā</i> one boy	<i>do larṛke</i> two boys
एक लड़की	दो लड़कियाँ
<i>ek larṛkī</i> one girl	<i>do larṛkiyā</i> two girls
एक मेज़	दो मेज़ें
<i>ek mez</i> one table	<i>do mezē</i> two tables

Do this with a variety of different nouns and you'll soon get the hang of it — a certain amount of parrot-like repetition is essential when learning a new language! Throw in an adjective too —

एक बड़ा आदमी

*ek barā ādmī*

one big man

दस बड़े आदमी

*das barē ādmī*

ten big men etc.

## Some numbers

Talking of numbers — you should learn to count! Learn the numbers from 1 to 20 in groups of five as they're set out below. (You'll find a full list of numbers in Unit 12.6.) Hindi uses both the Arabic set of numerals (1 2 3 etc.) and the Devanagari set (१ २ ३ etc.).

१ 1 एक *ek*

२ 2 दो *do*

३ 3 तीन *tīn*

४ 4 चार *cār*

५ 5 पाँच *pāc*

६ 6 छह *chah*

७ 7 सात *sāt*

८ 8 आठ *āṭh*

९ 9 नौ *nau*

१० 10 दस *das*

११ 11 ग्यारह *gyārah*

१२ 12 बारह *bārah*

१३ 13 तेरह *terah*

१४ 14 चौदह *caudah*

१५ 15 पंद्रह *pandrah*

१६ 16 सोलह *solah*

१७ 17 सत्रह *satrah*

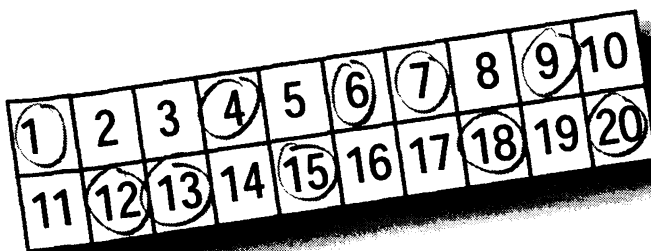
१८ 18 अठारह *aṭhārah*

१९ 19 उन्नीस *unnīs*

२० 20 बीस *bis*

## Bingo

If you have people you can practise with, have a game of bingo: everyone selects ten numbers of their choice (between 1 and 20) as shown below, then the caller calls out random numbers in Hindi between 1 and 20 until the winner declares a victory. No cheating!



## Ordinal numbers: first, second, third

Ordinal numbers are made by adding -vā to the cardinal number, as in पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth; but 'first', 'second', 'third', 'fourth', sixth' and 'ninth' are irregular:

पहला <i>pahlā</i> first	छठा <i>chaṭhā</i> sixth
दूसरा <i>dūsra</i> second, other	सातवाँ <i>sātvā</i> seventh
तीसरा <i>tīsra</i> third	आठवाँ <i>āṭhvā</i> eighth
चौथा <i>cauthā</i> fourth	नवाँ <i>navā</i> ninth
पाँचवाँ <i>pācvā</i> fifth	दसवाँ <i>dasvā</i> tenth

The ordinal numbers agree as adjectives: दसवाँ कमरा *dasvā kamrā* 'tenth room', दसवीं तस्वीर *dasvī tasvīr* 'tenth picture'.

## Ordinal numbers quiz

Answer the questions about these five fine fellows:

गणेश Ganesh



सुरेश Suresh



महेश Mahesh



दिनेश Dinesh



राजेश Rajesh



- क्या पहला लड़का मोटा है ? *kyā pahlā larṅkā moṭā hai?*
- पहला लड़का कौन है ? *pahlā larṅkā kaun hai?*
- क्या तीसरा लड़का खुश है ? *kyā tīsra larṅkā khus hai?*
- पाँचवाँ लड़का कौन है ? *pācvā larṅkā kaun hai?*



- ५ क्या चौथा लड़का पतला है ? *kyā cauthā laṛkā patlā hai?*  
 ६ चौथा लड़का कौन है ? *cauthā laṛkā kaun hai?*  
 ७ क्या दूसरा लड़का महेश है ? *kyā dūsrā laṛkā Maheś hai?*

### 3 Getting familiar

We've already seen that आप *āp* means 'you' and आप हैं *āp hai* means 'you are'. But in an informal context (talking to a friend, or with someone perceived by the speaker to be in some way close or socially 'junior') the pronoun तुम *tum* 'you' is used instead. तुम *tum* has its own verb form: तुम हो *tum ho* 'you are'.

तुम कौन हो ?

*tum kaun ho?* Who are you?

क्या तुम राम हो ?

*kyā tum Rām ho?* Are you Ram?

When addressing someone as तुम *tum*, the word for 'your' is तुम्हारा *tumhārā*. Remember that such words must agree with the person or thing 'possessed'.

तुम्हारा भाई

*tumhārā bhāī* your brother

तुम्हारी बहिन

*tumhārī bahin* your sister

The important point here is that तुम *tum* is much more familiar and informal than आप *āp*. Used in the wrong context, तुम *tum* and तुम्हारा *tumhārā* could sound presumptuous or offensive, so you have to tread carefully here.

Even greater familiarity is shown by yet another pronoun, तू *tū* 'you', whose verb is है *hai* (the same as for यह *yah* and वह *vah*): तू है *tū hai* 'you are'. This is very intimate and is restricted to the closest of relationships, such as with partners, small children — and God!

राजू, तू मेरी जान है !

*Rājū, tū merī jān hai!* Raju, you are my darling!

गीता, तू मेरी जान है !

*Gītā, tū merī jān hai!* Geeta, you are my darling!

We won't be seeing much of तू *tū* in this book. Its intimacy restricts its usage; and if you know a Hindi-speaker well enough to use it, he or she will happily teach you all you need to know! Used in the wrong context, it can be insultingly blunt. All its verb forms (except the commands — see 4.1) are the same as for यह *yah* and वह *vah*.

Here then is the full range of 'you' words, with their verbs:

आप हैं

*āp haī* you are (formal and polite)

तुम हो

*tum ho* you are (familiar and casual)

तू है

*tū hai* you are (intimate or blunt)

Grammatically, तू *tū* is singular, and both आप *āp* and तुम *tum* are plural — whether addressing one person or more than one.

### Did you know?

English used to have a similar singular/plural distinction, but the singular pronouns 'thou (thou art), thee, thy, thine' have been dropped — which is why even a single person is now addressed by the plural 'you are', rather than 'you is'.

### ► How are you?

This is a good moment to introduce another new word, the very important कैसा *kaisā*, 'how?', as in 'how are you?'. (Later we'll see that it can also mean 'what kind of?')

राजू, आप कैसे हैं ?

*Rājū, āp kaise haī?* Raju, how are you?

गीता, आप कैसी हैं ?

*Gītā, āp kaisī haī?* Geeta, how are you?

आपका भाई कैसा है ?

*āpkā bhāī kaisā hai?* How is your brother?

आपकी बहिन कैसी है ?

*āpkī bahin kaisī hai?* How is your sister?

आपके माता-पिता कैसे हैं ?

*āpke mātā-pitā kaise haī?* How are your parents?

राम, तुम कैसे हो ?

*Rām, tum kaise ho?* Ram, how are you?

मीना, तुम कैसी हो ?

*Mīnā, tum kaisī ho?* Meena, how are you?

## 4 Getting formal

As we have seen in the आप-तुम-तू *āp-tum-tū* distinction, Hindi has a hierarchy of formality: calling someone आप *āp* shows respect, and sets them 'above' people referred to as तुम *tum*, who in turn have higher status than those addressed as तू *tū*.

You may be familiar with similar systems in languages like French, with its distinction between 'vous' and 'tu' in the second person ('you'). But in Hindi, the system extends to the third person: 'he/she' can be expressed with the plural pronouns ये *ye* and वे *ve* instead of यह *yah* and वह *vah*. In effect, it's like referring to an individual person as 'they' rather than as 'he' or 'she'. The bad news is that verbs and adjectives must be plural to match!

As there's no difference between this 'honorific' plural and a numerical plural, some statements could be ambiguous:

वे अच्छे आदमी हैं ।

*ve acche ādmī hai.* He is a good man. / They are good men.

मेरे भाई लंबे हैं ।

*mere bhāī lambe hai.* My brother is tall. / My brothers are tall.

But this ambiguity only occurs in the masculine. In the feminine, only *numerically* plural nouns show plural forms. Compare the following:

ये लंबी महिला कौन हैं ?

*ye lambī mahilā kaun hai?* Who is this tall lady?

(Here the pronoun ये *ye* and verb हैं *hai* are honorific plural, but the noun महिला *mahilā* stays singular.)

ये लंबी महिलाएँ कौन हैं ?

*ye lambī mahilāṛe kaun hai?* Who are these tall ladies?

(Here ये *ye*, महिलाएँ *mahilāṛe* and हैं *hai* are all plural.)

## Raju ji, Geeta ji

Respect can also be shown by adding जी *jī* to a name — written as one word or two (गीताजी *Gītājī*, or गीता जी *Gītā jī*). It's used with first names of both genders, or with surnames for males; also with titles and relationship terms (e.g. पिता जी *pitā jī* 'father'). It's sometimes a bit like 'Mr' or 'Mrs', but manages to combine respect and warmth more successfully than these rather stuffy English equivalents.

ये सीता जी हैं ।

*ye Sītā jī haī.* This is Sita ji.

शर्मा जी अच्छे अध्यापक हैं ।

*Śarmā jī acche adhyāpak haī.* Sharma ji is a good teacher.

Used alone, जी *jī* can be used as a polite way of addressing someone: नमस्ते जी ! *namaste jī!* English has no single equivalent.

## We and our

Finally: 'we' and 'us' is हम *ham*, and 'our, ours' is हमारा *hamārā*.

हम आपके पड़ोसी हैं ।

*ham āpke paṛosī haī.* We're your neighbours.

मोती हमारा कुत्ता है ।

*Motī hamārā kuttā hai.* Moti is our dog.

मोती हमारा है ।

*Motī hamārā hai.* Moti is ours.

## ▶ Javed asks Raju about his family

जावेद राजू जी, मनोज कौन है ?

राजू मनोज हमारा बड़ा बेटा है ।

जावेद अच्छा । मीना और राम कौन हैं ?

राजू मीना हमारी बेटी है और राम हमारा दूसरा बेटा है ।

जावेद और गीता जी आपकी पत्नी हैं ?

राजू जी हाँ, गीता मेरी पत्नी है ।

जावेद क्या आपके भाई डाक्टर हैं ?

राजू जी नहीं । वे अध्यापक हैं ।

जावेद वे कैसे अध्यापक हैं ?

राजू वे बहुत अच्छे अध्यापक हैं ।

*Jāved Rājū jī, Manoj kaun hai?*

*Rājū Manoj hamārā baṛā beṭā hai.*

*Jāved acchā. Mīnā aur Rām kaun hai?*

*Rājū Mīnā hamārī beṭī hai aur Rām hamārā dūsra beṭā hai.*

*Jāved aur Gītā jī āpki patnī hai?*

*Rājū jī hā, Gītā merī patnī hai.*

*Jāved kyā āpke bhāi ḍākṭar hai?*

*Rājū jī nahī. ve adhyāpak hai.*

*Jāved ve kaise adhyāpak hai?*

*Rājū ve bahut acche adhyāpak hai.*

Javed Raju ji, who is Manoj?

Raju Manoj is our elder ('big') son.

Javed Right. Who are Meena and Ram?

Raju Meena is our daughter and Ram is our second son.

Javed And Geeta ji is your wife?

Raju Yes, Geeta is my wife.

Javed Is your brother a doctor?

Raju No, he's a teacher.

Javed What kind of teacher is he? [i.e. 'is he good?']

Raju He's a very good teacher.

**Exercise 2a** Translate these sentences into Hindi.

(NB: 'There are' is हैं *hai*; 'only' is सिर्फ *sirf*.)

- 1 My name is Manoj. Raju and Geeta Sharma are my parents.
- 2 Meena is my little sister and Ram is my little brother.
- 3 Moti is our dog. He's very cute.
- 4 This is Meena. She is OK. She is little.
- 5 Our house isn't very big. There are only five rooms.
- 6 That boy is my friend; his name is Pratap [प्रताप *Pratāp*].
- 7 Javed sahab is our neighbour. [Use honorific plural.]

**Exercise 2b** Here are some sentences with singular subjects. Make them all numerically plural. (Make sure that all verbs, pronouns and adjectives agree!)

- ८ यह लड़का बहुत प्यारा है । *yah laṛkā bahut pyārā hai.*  
 ९ यह कुत्ता हमारा नहीं है । *yah kuttā hamārā nahī hai.*  
 १० वह लड़का कौन है ? *vah laṛkā kaun hai?*  
 ११ यह आदमी कौन है ? *yah ādmī kaun hai?*  
 १२ मेरा दोस्त पंजाबी है । *merā dost panjābī hai.*  
 १३ क्या यह कुत्ता आपका है ? *kyā yah kuttā āpkā hai?*  
 १४ वह औरत कौन है ? *vah aurat kaun hai?*  
 १५ हमारा बेटा अच्छा लड़का है । *hamārā beṭā acchā laṛkā hai.*  
 १६ मेरी बेटी बीमार है । *merī beṭī bīmār hai.*  
 १७ क्या यह किताब महँगी है ? *kyā yah kitāb mahāgī hai?*  
 १८ यह मेज़ गंदी है । *yah mez gandī hai.*

**Exercise 2c** Change the sentences from आप *āp* to तुम *tum*, or vice versa, making sure that all the verb agreements (तुम हो *tum ho*, आप हैं *āp hai* etc.) work properly.

- १९ तुम कौन हो ? *tum kaun ho?*  
 २० तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ? *tumhārā nām kyā hai?*  
 २१ तुम्हारे माता-पिता बहुत अच्छे लोग हैं । *tumhāre mātā-pitā bahut acche log hai.*  
 २२ तुम्हारा भाई सुंदर नहीं है । *tumhārā bhāī sundar nahī hai.*  
 २३ तुम दोनों लड़के लंबे हो । *tum donō laṛke lambe ho.*  
 २४ तुम कैसे हो ? *tum kaise ho?*  
 २५ आपका नाम क्या है ? *āpkā nām kyā hai?*  
 २६ क्या आप ठीक हैं ? *kyā āp ṭhīk hai?*  
 २७ आप नाराज़ नहीं हैं ? *āp nārāz nahī hai?*  
 २८ आप कैसी हैं ? *āp kaisī hai?*

Finally, go through all the sentences in sentences 1–28, underlining the subject of the verb; and make sure you can understand why each verb is singular or plural.

## Glossary

(NB: Cardinal numbers up to 10 (and ordinals up to 'sixth') are included here. Higher cardinal numbers are given in Unit 12.6.)

अच्छा <i>acchā</i> good, nice	दो <i>do</i> two
अलमारी <i>almārī</i> f. cupboard	नेता <i>netā</i> m. leader, politician
आठ <i>āṭh</i> eight	नौ <i>nau</i> nine
आशा <i>āsā</i> f. hope	पड़ोसी <i>paṛosī</i> m., पड़ोसिन
औरत <i>aurat</i> f. woman	<i>paṛosin</i> f. neighbour
कमरा <i>kamrā</i> m. room	पतला <i>patlā</i> thin
काफ़ी <i>kāfī</i> quite, very; enough	पत्नी <i>patnī</i> f. wife
काम <i>kām</i> m. work; job, task	पहला <i>pahlā</i> first
कैसा <i>kaisā</i> how?	पाँच <i>pāc</i> five; पाँचवाँ <i>pācvā</i> fifth
ख़ाली <i>khālī</i> empty, free, vacant	पिता <i>pitā</i> m. father
गंदा <i>gandā</i> dirty	प्यारा <i>pyārā</i> dear, sweet, cute
चाचा <i>cācā</i> m. uncle (father's younger brother)	बड़ा <i>baṛā</i> big
चार <i>cār</i> four	बहिन <i>bahin</i> f. sister
चौथा <i>cauthā</i> fourth	बहुत <i>bahut</i> very
छठा <i>chathā</i> sixth	बेटी <i>betī</i> f. daughter
छह <i>chah</i> six	महँगा <i>mahāgā</i> expensive
छोटा <i>choṭā</i> small	महिला <i>mahilā</i> f. lady
ज़रूर <i>zarūr</i> of course	माता <i>mātā</i> f. mother
जान <i>jān</i> f. life, soul	माता-पिता <i>mātā-pitā</i> m. pl. parents
ज़िंदा <i>zindā</i> (invariable -ā ending) alive	मोटा <i>moṭā</i> fat
जी <i>jī</i> word of respect used after names etc. and as a short form of जी हाँ <i>jī hā</i> 'yes'	राजा <i>rājā</i> m. king, raja
तस्वीर <i>tasvīr</i> f. picture	लंबा <i>lambā</i> tall
तीन <i>tīn</i> three	शक्ति <i>śakti</i> f. power
तीसरा <i>tīsra</i> third	सात <i>sāt</i> seven
तुम <i>tum</i> you (familiar)	साफ़ <i>sāf</i> clean, clear
तुम्हारा <i>tumhārā</i> your, yours	साहब <i>sāhab</i> sahib
तू <i>tū</i> you (intimate)	सिर्फ़ <i>sirf</i> only
दस <i>das</i> ten	सुंदर <i>sundar</i> beautiful, handsome
दूसरा <i>dūsra</i> second; other	हम <i>ham</i> we, us
	हमारा <i>hamārā</i> our, ours
	हो <i>ho</i> are (with तुम <i>tum</i> )

# ॐ

कमरे में

*kamre*

in the room

**In this unit you will learn**

- to say where people and things are
- to describe things
- to talk about ownership

**Language points**

- postpositions and case
- word order



## 1 Some more questions

You'll have noticed that question-words in Hindi begin with a 'k' — क्या *kyā*, कौन *kaun* etc. A further selection of such words will give us much more to talk about. We've already met कैसा *kaisā*, used in asking 'how' someone is; but it also means 'what kind of?' And कितना *kitnā* means 'how much?'

कैसा मकान ?

*kaisā makān?* what kind of house?

यह कैसा मकान है ?

*yah Kaisā makān hai?* What kind of house is this?

कितना पानी ?

*kitnā pānī?* how much water?

कितना पानी है ?

*kitnā pānī hai?* How much water is there?

Both कैसा *kaisā* and कितना *kitnā* inflect (OK, change their endings!) like adjectives: कैसा-कैसे-कैसी *kaisā-kaise-kaisī*, कितना-कितने-कितनी *kitnā-kitne-kitnī*.

यह कैसा कमरा है ?

*yah Kaisā kamrā hai?* What kind of room is this?

यह कैसी किताब है ?

*ye kaisī kitāb hai?* What kind of book is this?

ये कैसे कमरे हैं ?

*ye kaise kamre hāi?* What kind of rooms are these?

कितने कमरे हैं ?

*kitne kamre hāi?* How many rooms are there?

कितनी दुकानें हैं ?

*kitnī dukānē hāi?* How many shops are there?

कितना पैसा है ?

*kitnā paisā hai?* How much money is there?

कितने लोग हैं ?

*kitne log hāi?* How many people are there?

कितना समय है ?

*kitnā samay hai?* How much time is there?

## What's this like?

When कैसा *kaisā* comes *after* the noun, it means 'what is something like?' Remember that it's also the usual way of asking about someone's health — such a commonly used expression that we'll look at some more examples:

यह कमरा कैसा है ?

*yah kamrā kaisā hai?* What's this room like?

मनोज कैसा है ?

*Manoj kaisā hai?* How is Manoj?

माता जी कैसी हैं ?

*mātā jī kaisī hai?* How is Mother?

राम, तुम कैसे हो ?

*Rām, tum kaise ho?* Ram, how are you?

शर्मा जी, आप कैसे हैं ?

*Śarmā jī, āp kaise hai?* Sharma ji, how are you?

गीता जी, आप कैसी हैं ?

*Gītā jī, āp kaisī hai?* Geeta ji, how are you?

## Some questions for you

Answer the questions about the picture, using words from the list:

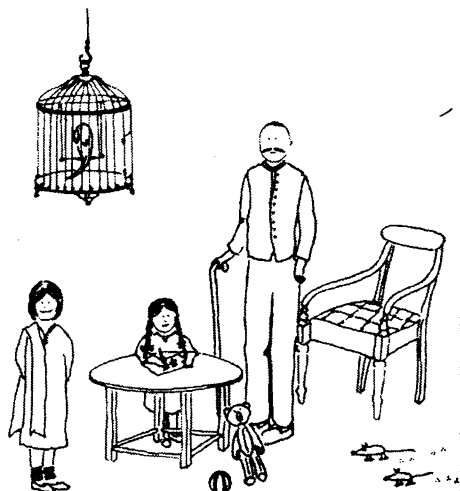
बूढ़ा *būrhā*  
elderly

पुराना *purānā*  
old (of things)

कुल मिलाकर  
*kul milākar*  
in total

चूहा *cūhā* m.  
mouse, rat

तोता *totā* m.  
parrot



- १ कितने आदमी हैं ? *kitne ādmī hai?*
- २ यह कैसा आदमी है ? *yah kaisā ādmī hai?*
- ३ मेज़ कैसी है ? *mez kaisī hai?*
- ४ कितनी लड़कियाँ हैं ? *kitnī laṛkiyā hai?*
- ५ कुल मिलाकर कितने लोग हैं ? *kul milākar kitne log hai?*
- ६ क्या दोनों लड़कियाँ लंबी हैं ? *kyā donō laṛkiyā lambī hai?*
- ७ कितने चूहे हैं ? *kitne cūhe hai?*
- ८ कितनी कुरसियाँ हैं ? *kitnī kursiyā hai?*
- ९ क्या चूहे बहुत बड़े हैं ? *kyā cūhe bahut bade hai?*
- १० कितने तोते हैं ? *kitne tote hai?*

## 2 Where? On the table

The word कहाँ *kahā* means 'where?' In order to say *where* something is, we need the words for 'on, in' and so on. Here's a little list:

पर	<i>par</i>	on, at
में	<i>mē</i>	in
से	<i>se</i>	from, with, by
तक	<i>tak</i>	up to, until
को	<i>ko</i>	to (and other meanings)

And here are some phrases:

मेज़ पर	<i>mez par</i>	on the table
कुरसी पर	<i>kursī par</i>	on the chair
घर पर	<i>ghar par</i>	at home
घर में	<i>ghar mē</i>	in the house
दिल्ली में	<i>dilli mē</i>	in Delhi
भारत में	<i>bhārat mē</i>	in India
आज तक	<i>āj tak</i>	until today

As you can see, the words पर *par*, में *mē* etc. come *after* the noun. Because of this they're called *postpositions* rather than *prepositions*.

## ▶ Practise what you've learnt

Answer these questions, using the postposition में *mē* 'in'.

दिल्ली कहाँ है ? *dillī kahā hai?*

काठमांडु कहाँ है ? *kāṭhmāṇḍu kahā hai?*

कराची कहाँ है ? *karācī kahā hai?*

मुम्बई कहाँ है ? *mumbaī kahā hai?*

लंदन कहाँ है ? *landan kahā hai?*

आप कहाँ हैं ? *āp kahā hai?*

Your answers should be दिल्ली भारत में है *dillī bhārat mē hai* etc.; and my answer to the last one is मैं लंदन में हूँ *mai landan mē hū̃*.

## At home, at school, at work

पर *par* usually means 'on', but it means 'at' in phrases like घर पर *ghar par* 'at home'.

आज मनोज घर पर नहीं है ।

*āj Manoj ghar par nahī hai.* Manoj isn't at home today.

राम स्कूल पर नहीं है ।

*Rām skūl par nahī hai.* Ram isn't at school.

मेरे दोस्त काम पर हैं ।

*mere dost kām par hai.* My friends are at work.

शर्मा जी काम पर हैं ।

*Śarmā jī kām par hai.* Sharma ji is at work.

## Word order

Look very closely at the difference between these two sentences:

मेज़ पर पंखा है ।

*mez par pankhā hai.* There's a fan on the table.

पंखा मेज़ पर है ।

*pankhā mez par hai.* The fan is on the table.

You'll see that the main piece of new information comes *just before the verb*. Another way of looking at these sentences is to see them as the answers to particular questions, with the new information simply slotting into the space that had been occupied by the question word:

मेज़ पर क्या है ?

*mez par kyā hai?* What is on the table?

मेज़ पर पंखा है ।

*mez par pankhā hai.* There's a fan on the table.

पंखा कहाँ है ?

*pankhā kahā hai?* Where is the fan?

पंखा मेज़ पर है ।

*pankhā mez par hai.* The fan is on the table.

### Where's the cat?

Answer the questions about the picture:

१ बिल्ली कहाँ है ? *billi kahā hai?*

२ कुत्ता कहाँ है ? *kuttā kahā hai?*

३ तस्वीर में कितनी कुरसियाँ हैं ? *tasvīr mē kitnī kursiyā hai?*

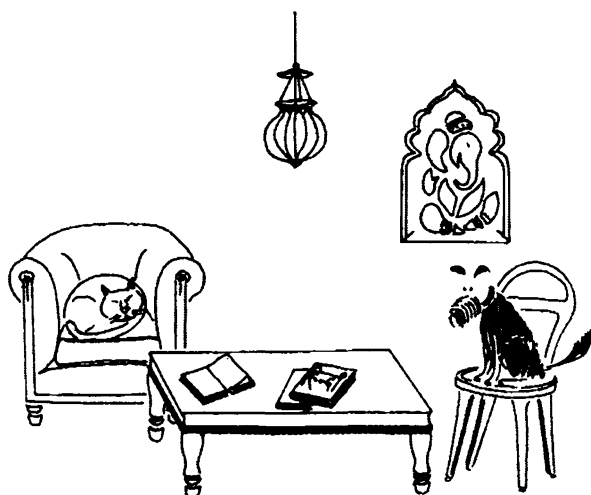
४ तस्वीर में कितनी बिल्लियाँ हैं ? *tasvīr mē kitnī billiyā hai?*

५ छोटी कुरसी पर क्या है ? *choṭī kursī par kyā hai?*

६ बड़ी कुरसी पर क्या है ? *baṛī kursī par kyā hai?*

७ मेज़ पर क्या है ? *mez par kyā hai?*

८ क्या कुत्ता और बिल्ली प्यारे हैं ? *kyā kuttā aur billi pyāre hai?*



## ▶ Do you have...

One postposition that you'll often need is के पास *ke pās*. We'll meet it more fully later, but we need it *now*. Its first meaning is 'near':

हमारी दुकान स्टेशन के पास है ।

*hamārī dukān ṣṭeśan ke pās hai.* Our shop is near the station.

But के पास *ke pās* can also indicate *ownership* of goods and chattel (or even time) — it's used in the meaning of 'to have':

मनोज के पास नया रेडियो है ।

*Manoj ke pās nayā reḍiyo hai.* Manoj has a new radio.

राम के पास कई नई किताबें हैं ।

*Rām ke pās kái naī kitābē hai.* Ram has several new books.

मीना के पास कुछ नए कपड़े हैं ।

*Mīnā ke pās kuch nae kapṛe hai.* Meena has some new clothes.

राजू के पास कम्प्यूटर नहीं है ।

*Rājū ke pās kampyūṭar nahī hai.* Raju doesn't have a computer.

पिताजी के पास समय नहीं है ।

*pitāji ke pās samay nahī hai.* Father doesn't have time.

आपके पास कितना पैसा है ?

*āpke pās kitnā paisā hai?* How much money do you have?

When के पास *ke pās* is used with मेरे *mere*, तुम्हारे *tumhāre* or हमारे *hamāre*, the के *ke* is dropped:

मेरे पास समय नहीं है ।

*mere pās samay nahī hai.* I don't have time.

तुम्हारे पास क्या है ?

*tumhāre pās kyā hai?* What have you got?

हमारे पास कुछ नहीं है ।

*hamāre pās kuch nahī hai.* We have nothing.

Although के पास *ke pās* is used widely for a variety of possessions it's not usually used with relatives ('I have a son' etc.); we'll come to a way of saying this in Unit 6.1. Meanwhile, a spirit of idle curiosity makes me ask you some questions:

क्या आप के पास ... *kyā āp ke pās...*

... साइकिल है ? *sāikil hai?*

... बहुत पैसे हैं ? *bahut paise hai?*

... नया रेडियो है ? *nayā reḍiyo hai?*

... नए हिन्दुस्तानी कपड़े हैं ? *nae hindustānī kapre hai?*

... नई गाड़ी है ? *naī gārī hai?*

### 3 Case

In the English phrase 'he speaks to him', the two pronouns can't be exchanged: 'him speaks to he' isn't impressive English! This is an example of a difference of 'case' — a system that shows how words relate to each other in a sentence. Stand by for a really important piece of grammar here.

Hindi has two main cases — the 'oblique', always used before postpositions, and the 'direct', used elsewhere.

In the following sentences, the underlined words are postpositions, and the **bold** words are oblique, because they're followed by those postpositions.

हम लोग **घर** में हैं ।

*ham log **ghar** mē hai.* We ['we people'] are in the house.

दिल्ली **भारत** में हैं ।

*dilli **bhārat** mē hai.* Delhi is in India.

क्या आप **लंदन** से हैं ?

*kyā āp **landan** se hai?* Are you from London?

शर्माजी **दुकान** पर हैं ।

*Śarmājī **dukān** par hai.* Sharma ji is at the shop.

In the first example, में *mē* 'in' affects only घर *ghar* 'house', giving the sense 'in the house' — it doesn't affect हम लोग *ham log* 'we' because this is the subject, and not part of the location. The same principle applies with the other examples.

Why say that these words are oblique, when they haven't changed their form at all? Because in the singular, only *some* nouns change in the oblique. Masculine -ā endings are the culprits here: they change to -e, as shown in the following list.

कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
कमरे में	<i>kamre mẽ</i>	in the room
लड़का	<i>larkā</i>	boy
लड़के से	<i>larke se</i>	by the boy
आगरा	<i>āgrā</i>	Agra
आगरे तक	<i>āgre tak</i>	as far as Agra

Masculine -ā adjectives describing oblique nouns change similarly:

छोटा कमरा	<i>choṭā kamrā</i>	small room
छोटे कमरे में	<i>choṭe kamre mẽ</i>	in a/the small room
मोटा लड़का	<i>moṭā larkā</i>	fat boy
मोटे लड़के से	<i>moṭe larke se</i>	by the fat boy
मेरा बगीचा	<i>merā bagīcā</i>	my garden
मेरे बगीचे में	<i>mere bagīce mẽ</i>	in my garden

An -ā adjective changes like this with *all* types of masculine noun. So although घर *ghar* 'house' does not end in -ā and therefore cannot change visibly in the oblique, -ā adjectives qualifying it must change all the same:

बड़े घर में	<i>baṛe ghar mẽ</i>	in the big house
छोटे मकान में	<i>choṭe makān mẽ</i>	in the little house

Feminine nouns and adjectives are easier to deal with — they don't change at all in the oblique singular:

छोटी मेज़ पर	<i>choṭī mez par</i>	on the little table
मेरी बहिन को	<i>merī bahin ko</i>	to my sister

### Plural nouns in the oblique case

In the oblique plural, all nouns take the ending -ō as shown:

मेज़	<i>mez</i>	table
मेज़ों पर	<i>mezō par</i>	on tables
कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
कमरों में	<i>kamrō mẽ</i>	in rooms



लड़का	<i>laṛkā</i>	boy
लड़कों को	<i>laṛkō ko</i>	to boys
कुत्ता	<i>kuttā</i>	dog
कुत्तों को	<i>kuttō ko</i>	to dogs

... and masculine -ā adjectives keep their *usual* oblique -e ending:

कमरा	<i>kamrā</i>	room
छोटे कमरों में	<i>choṭe kamrō mē</i>	in small rooms

लड़का	<i>laṛkā</i>	boy
बड़े लड़कों को	<i>baṛe laṛkō ko</i>	to big boys

हमारा कुत्ता	<i>hamārā kuttā</i>	our dog
हमारे कुत्तों को	<i>hamāre kuttō ko</i>	to our dogs

Nouns of either gender that end in -ī change this to *iy* before adding the -ō ending. So they end -iyō.

आदमी	<i>ādmī</i>	man
आदमियों से	<i>ādmīyō se</i>	from men
लड़की	<i>laṛkī</i>	girl
लड़कियों से	<i>laṛkiyō</i>	from girls

Well, after all that grammar you probably feel the need to sit or even lie down for a bit, so...

### Sitting and lying

'Sitting' is बैठा *baiṭhā* and 'standing' is खड़ा *kharā*; 'lying' is पड़ा *paṛā* for an inanimate object (e.g. a book lying on the table), but लेटा *leṭā* for a person who is 'lying down'. These words need to agree with their nouns, like adjectives:

मनोज कमरे में बैठा है ।

*Manoj kamre mē baiṭhā hai.* Manoj is sitting in the room.

गीता बगीचे में खड़ी है ।

*Gītā bagīche mē kharī hai.* Geeta is standing in the garden.

आपके कपड़े क्रसरी पर पड़े हैं ।

दोनों लड़कियाँ फर्श पर लेटी हैं ।

*donō laṛkiyā̃ fars̄ par leṭī haī.* The two girls are lying on the floor.

### House for rent

A Hindi-speaking friend has seen an advertisement in an English newspaper and needs your help in understanding it. Read the advertisement and then answer her questions.



**New house for rent in  
Agra. 2 large & 2 small  
rooms, all well ventilated  
(windows in all rooms,  
ceiling fans in large  
rooms). Small garden with  
trees. Rent Rs. 5000.**

- १ घर कहाँ है ?  
*ghar kahā̃ hai?*
- २ क्या वह बहुत पुराना है ?  
*kyā vah bahut purānā hai?*
- ३ कितने कमरे हैं ?  
*kitne kamre haī?*
- ४ क्या सब कमरों में खिड़कियाँ हैं ?  
*kyā sab kamrō mē khiṛkiyā̃ haī?*
- ५ क्या पंखे भी हैं ?  
*kyā pankhe bhī haī?*
- ६ बाहर क्या है ?  
*bāhar kyā hai?*
- ७ क्या दुकानें दूर हैं ?  
*kyā dukānē dūr haī?*
- ८ किराया कितना है ?  
*kirāyā kitnā hai?*



## Geeta's story

Geeta is telling us about her husband and her home.

मेरा नाम गीता है – श्रीमती गीता शर्मा । मैं वाराणसी से हूँ ।  
मेरे पति श्री राजकुमार शर्मा हैं । वे दिल्ली से हैं । राजू अध्यापक  
हैं । यह हमारा घर है । हमारा घर आगरे में है । घर में एक  
बड़ा कमरा और चार छोटे कमरे हैं । यह हमारा बड़ा कमरा है ।  
कमरे में एक बड़ी मेज़ है । मेज़ पर मेरा कम्प्यूटर है । एक  
पंखा भी है । फ़र्श पर कुछ किताबें पड़ी हैं । बगीचे में दो-तीन  
लंबे पेड़ हैं ।

*merā nām Gītā hai – śrīmatī Gītā Śarmā. mai vārāṇasī se hū̃.  
mere pati śrī Rājkmār Śarmā hai. ve dillī se hai. Rājū adhyāpak  
hai. yah hamārā ghar hai. hamārā ghar āgre mẽ hai. ghar mẽ ek  
baṛā kamrā aur cār choṭe kamre hai. yah hamārā baṛā kamrā hai.  
kamre mẽ ek baṛī mez hai. mez par merā kampyūṭar hai. ek  
pankhā bhī hai. farś par kuch kitābē paṛī hai. bagīce mẽ do-tīn  
lambe peṛ hai.*

My name is Geeta — Mrs Geeta Sharma. I'm from Varanasi.  
My husband is Mr Rajkumar Sharma. He's from Delhi. Raju is a  
teacher. This is our house. Our house is in Agra. In the house  
there's one big room and four small rooms. This is our big room.  
In the room there's one big table. On the table is my computer.  
There's a fan too. Some books are lying on the floor. In the  
garden there are two or three tall trees.



## Two tasks for you

Underline all the words in the oblique case in Geeta's statement,  
then answer these questions:

- १ गीता कहाँ से है ? *Gītā kahā se hai?*
- २ क्या गीता शादी-शुदा है ? *kyā Gītā śādī-śudā hai?*
- ३ क्या राजू दिल्ली से है ? *kyā Rājū dillī se hai?*
- ४ क्या राजू डाक्टर है ? *kyā Rājū ḍākṭar hai?*
- ५ क्या यह घर दिल्ली में है ? *kyā yah ghar dillī mẽ hai?*
- ६ घर में कितने कमरे हैं ? *ghar mẽ kitne kamre hai?*
- ७ बड़े कमरे में क्या है ? *baṛe kamre mẽ kyā hai?*

- ८ कम्प्यूटर कहाँ है ? *kampyūṭar kahā hai?*  
 ९ किताबें कहाँ हैं ? *kitābē kahā hai?*  
 १० बगीचे में क्या है ? *bagīche mē kyā hai?*

### A word that hates to be misplaced

The little word भी *bhī* 'also, too' is simple enough in itself, but it's incredibly fussy about where it goes in the sentence — it insists on following the word it emphasizes. Look closely at the difference between these two statements, both of which could be translated as 'this cloth is cheap too', leaving the emphasis ambiguous in English:

यह कपड़ा भी सस्ता है ।

*yah kapṛā bhī sastā hai.* This cloth too is cheap [i.e. as well as the other cloth we were just looking at].

यह कपड़ा सस्ता भी है ।

*yah kapṛā sastā bhī hai.* This cloth is cheap too [i.e. in addition to its other advantages — colour, texture, or whatever].

### At school

- अध्यापक राम, तुम्हारी किताबें कहाँ हैं ?  
 राम जी, मेरी किताबें यहाँ मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं ।  
 अध्यापक तुम्हारी कुरसी पर क्या पड़ा है ?  
 राम जी, मेरी कुरसी पर मेरे क़लम हैं ।  
 अध्यापक तुम्हारे हाथों में क्या है ?  
 राम मेरे हाथों में कुछ नहीं है ।  
 अध्यापक आज तुम्हारी बहिन मीना कहाँ है ?  
 राम जी, वह घर पर है । वह बीमार है ।

- adhyāpak Rām, tumhārī kitābē kahā hai?*  
*Rām jī, merī kitābē yahā mez par paṛī hai.*  
*adhyāpak tumhārī kursī par kyā paṛā hai?*  
*Rām jī, merī kursī par mere qalam hai.*  
*adhyāpak tumhāre hāthō mē kyā hai?*  
*Rām mere hāthō mē kuch nahī hai.*

*adhyāpak*  
*Rām*

*āj tumhārī bahin Mīnā kahā hai?*  
*jī, vah ghar par hai. vah bīmār hai.*

Teacher

Ram, where are your books?

Ram

Sir, my books are lying here on the table.

Teacher

What's lying on your chair?

Ram

Sir, my pens are on my chair.

Teacher

What's in your hands?

Ram

There's nothing in my hands.

Teacher

Where is your sister Meena today?

Ram

Sir, she's at home. She's unwell.

## At home

राजू

गीता, मनोज कहाँ है ?

गीता

वह स्कूल पर है ।

राजू

और राम कहाँ है ?

गीता

वह भी स्कूल पर है ।

राजू

अच्छा ! और मीना ?

गीता

मीना बगीचे में बैठी है ।

राजू

मेरा भाई कहाँ है ?

गीता

मालूम नहीं !

*Rājū*

*Gītā, Manoj kahā hai?*

*Gītā*

*vah skūl par hai.*

*Rājū*

*aur Rām kahā hai?*

*Gītā*

*vah bhī skūl par hai.*

*Rājū*

*acchā! aur Mīnā?*

*Gītā*

*Mīnā bagīce mē baiṭhī hai.*

*Rājū*

*merā bhāī kahā hai?*

*Gītā*

*mālūm nahī!*

Raju

Geeta, where's Manoj?

Geeta

He's at school.

Raju

And where's Ram?

Geeta

He's at school too.


Raju

I see! And Meena?

Geeta            Meena's sitting in the garden.  
 Raju            Where's my brother?  
 Geeta            Don't know!

### Exercise 3a Translate into Hindi:

- 1 My books are lying on the table.
- 2 Your brother is sitting in the garden.
- 3 I am standing in the big room.
- 4 Your books are in the little cupboard.
- 5 His house is not far from here.
- 6 How many people are there in your family?
- 7 How much money does your husband have?
- 8 How is your wife today? And how are you?
- 9 The children aren't at home, they're at school.
- 10 Is this little girl your sister?

 **Exercise 3b** Role play. You are Geeta Sharma (a doctor, remember), at home in Agra with your husband and children; they're in the garden and your husband's indoors. Answer these questions for a local government survey. (Say 'no' to 19, 'yes' to 23.)

- ११ आपका पूरा नाम क्या है ?  
*āpkā pūrā nām kyā hai?*
- १२ क्या आप डाक्टर हैं ?  
*kyā āp dāktar hai?*
- १३ क्या आपके पति भी डाक्टर हैं ?  
*kyā āpke pati bhī dāktar hai?*
- १४ क्या आपके पति घर पर हैं ?  
*kyā āpke pati ghar par hai?*
- १५ क्या आप लोग दिल्ली से हैं ?  
*kyā āp log dillī se hai?*
- १६ आपके मकान में कितने कमरे हैं ?  
*āpke makān mē kitne kamre hai?*
- १७ आपके परिवार में कितने बच्चे हैं ?  
*āpke parivār mē kitne bacce hai?*

१८ क्या आपका छोटा लड़का आज स्कूल पर है ?

*kyā āpkā choṭā laṛkā āj skūl par hai?*

१९ क्या उसका स्कूल यहाँ से दूर है ?

*kyā uskā skūl yahā se dūr hai?*

२० आपके दूसरे बच्चे कहाँ हैं ?

*āpke dūsre bacce kahā hai?*

२१ क्या वह कुत्ता भी आपका है ?

*kyā vah kuttā bhī āpkā hai?*

२२ बहुत प्यारा है ! उसका नाम क्या है ?

*bahut pyārā hai! uskā nām kyā hai?*

२३ क्या आपके पास गाड़ी है ?

*kyā āpke pās gārī hai?*

२४ क्या आपके पास कम्प्यूटर है ?

*kyā āpke pās kamyūtar hai?*

धन्यवाद ! बहुत धन्यवाद ! *dhanyavād! bahut dhanyavād!*

## Glossary

अस्पताल *aspatāl* m. hospital

आज *āj* today; आजकल *ājkal*

nowadays, these days

कई *kai* several

कपड़ा *kaprā* m. cloth, garment

कम्प्यूटर *kamyūtar* m. computer

कराची *karācī* f. Karachi

काठमांडु *kāthmāṇḍu* m.

Kathmandu

कहाँ *kahā* where?

कितना *kitnā* how much/many?

किराया *kirāyā* m. rent; fare

कुछ *kuch* some; something; कुछ

और *kuch aur* some more;

कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī* nothing

कुल मिलाकर *kul milākar* in

total, all together

के पास *ke pās* near; in the possession of

को *ko* to

खड़ा *kharā* standing

खिड़की *khirki* f. window

गाड़ी *gārī* f. car; train, vehicle

घर *ghar* m. house, home

चूहा *cūhā* m. mouse, rat

छुट्टी *chutti* f. holiday; free time, time off

तक *tak* up to, until, as far as

तोता *totā* m. parrot

दफ़्तर *daftar* m. office

दिल्ली *dilli* f. Delhi

दुकान *dukān* f. shop

दूर *dūr* far, distant

धन्यवाद *dhanyavād* thank you

नया *nayā* (f. नई *naī*; m. pl. नए *nae*) new  
 नेपाल *nepāl* m. Nepal  
 पंखा *pankhā* m. fan  
 पड़ा *parā* lying  
 पति *pati* m. husband  
 पर *par* on (and 'at' in 'at home' etc.)  
 परिवार *parivār* m. family  
 पाकिस्तान *pākistān* m. Pakistan  
 पानी *pānī* m. water  
 पास *pās*, पास में *pās mē* nearby  
 पुराना *purānā* old (only for inanimates)  
 पेड़ *per* m. tree  
 पैसा *paisā* m. money  
 फर्श *farś* m. floor  
 फूल *phūl* m. flower  
 बगीचा *bagicā* m. garden  
 बाहर *bāhar* outside  
 बुढ़ा *būrhā* elderly, old (only for animates)  
 बैठा *baiṭhā* seated, sitting  
 भारत *bhārat* m. India

भी *bhī* also; even  
 मालूम नहीं *mālūm nahī* [I] don't know  
 मुंबई *mumbai* f. Mumbai, Bombay  
 में *mē* in  
 यहाँ *yahā* here  
 या *yā* or  
 लन्दन *landan* m. London  
 लेटा *leṭā* lying, lying down  
 रास्ता *rāstā* m. road  
 वहाँ *vahā* there  
 वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f. Varanasi, Banaras  
 श्री *śrī* Mr; श्रीमती *śrīmatī* Mrs  
 सब *sab* all  
 समय *samay* m. time  
 सस्ता *sastā* cheap  
 साइकिल *sāikil* f. bicycle  
 से *se* from  
 सोमवार *somvār* m. Monday  
 स्कूल *skūl* m. school  
 हजार *hazār* m. thousand  
 हाथ *hāth* m. hand



*pīje*

04

चाय पीजिए  
*cāy*

have some tea

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to make requests and give commands
- how to describe everyday events and habits

**Language points**

- imperative verbs
- imperfective present tense

## 1 Giving orders and making requests

Giving orders and making requests is easy in Hindi: but what you say depends on whom you're speaking to, because the imperative (command-giving) verb has different forms for तू *tū*, तुम *tum* and आप *āp* people. We're going to concentrate on the तुम *tum* and आप *āp* forms here. First, we have to define a couple of terms.

Dictionaries list verbs in their 'infinitive' form: बैठना *baiṭhnā* 'to sit'. Take away the -ना *-nā* ending and you are left with बैठ *baiṭh*, which is the basic building-block of the verb; it's called the 'verb stem'. Remember these terms, because we'll be using them quite often.

For commands to someone you call तुम *tum*, just add -o to the stem: बैठो *baiṭho* 'sit', etc.

For commands to someone you call आप *āp*, add -ie to the stem: बैठिए *baiṭhie* 'speak', etc. Because this is inherently polite, it more or less implies the sense 'please'.

As in English, the pronoun is optional: you can say either तुम बैठो *tum baiṭho* 'you sit', or just बैठो *baiṭho* 'sit'.

Spend some time getting to know these very common commands:

INFINITIVE	तुम <i>tum</i>	आप <i>āp</i>
बैठना <i>baiṭhnā</i> to sit	बैठो <i>baiṭho</i> sit	बैठिए <i>baiṭhie</i> please sit
बोलना <i>bolnā</i> to speak	बोलो <i>bolo</i> speak	बोलिए <i>bolie</i> please speak
जाना <i>jānā</i> to go	जाओ <i>jāo</i> go	जाइए <i>jāie</i> please go
आना <i>ānā</i> to come	आओ <i>āo</i> come	आइए <i>āie</i> please come
कहना <i>kahnā</i> to say	कहो <i>kaho</i> say	कहिए <i>kahie</i> please say
खाना <i>khānā</i> to eat	खाओ <i>khāo</i> eat	खाइए <i>khāie</i> please eat

Four of the commonest verbs are irregular (wouldn't you just know it?):

करना	करो	कीजिए
<i>karnā to do</i>	<i>karo do</i>	<i>kijie please do</i>
देना	दो	दीजिए
<i>denā to give</i>	<i>do give</i>	<i>dijie please give</i>
लेना	लो	लीजिए
<i>lenā to take</i>	<i>lo take</i>	<i>lijie please take</i>
पीना	पियो	पीजिए
<i>pīnā to drink</i>	<i>piyo drink</i>	<i>pījie please drink</i>

Commands to someone you call तू *tū* just use the verb stem — बैठ *baiṭh*, बोल *bol*, जा *jā*, आ *ā*, कह *kah*, खा *khā*, कर *kar*, दे *de*, ले *le*, पी *pī*. As their shortness suggests, these तू *tū* commands are very blunt (or, if you prefer, sharp!) — ‘Speak!’ ‘Sit!’; used out of context, they could easily give offence. Care needed here!

Commands are made negative by न *na* or मत *mat* ‘don’t’. The latter is blunter.

यहाँ न बैठिए ।

*yahā na baiṭhie*. Please don’t sit here.

कुछ मत बोलो !

*kuch mat bolo!* Don’t say anything!

### ▶ Practise what you’ve learnt

Here are some आप *āp* commands for you to change into तुम *tum* commands. You’ll find the new verbs in the glossary.

- मत जाइए ! आइए, बैठिए । *mat jāie! āie, baiṭhie*.
- बताइए, आप कैसे हैं ? *batāie, āp kaise hai?*
- समोसा खाइए, पानी पीजिए । *samosā khāie, pānī pījie*.
- यह दूसरा समोसा भी लीजिए । *yah dūsra samosā bhī lijie*.
- मोती को समोसा न दीजिए । *Motī ko samosā na dijie*.
- और खाइए ! *aur khāie!* [‘Have some more!’]
- खाली प्लेट मेज़ पर रखिए । *khālī plet mez par rakhie*.
- अरे ! सिग्रेट न पीजिए ! *are! sigreṭ na pījie!*
- और चाय लीजिए । *aur cāy lijie*. [‘Have some more tea.’]

## The infinitive as a command

The infinitive too can be used as a command: हिन्दी में बोलना ! *hindī mē bolnā!* 'Speak in Hindi!'. Such commands are often meant to be obeyed at some time in the future, or generally at all times, rather than immediately.

झूठ मत बोलना ।

*jhūth mat bolnā.* Don't tell lies.

घर में सिग्रेट न पीना ।

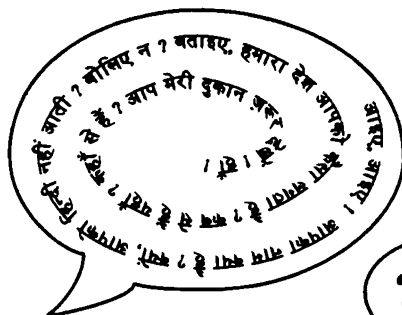
*ghar mē sigreṭ na pinā.* Don't smoke in the house.

आगरे से खत भेजना ।

*āgre se khat bhejnā.* Send [me] a letter from Agra.

## Some conversational gambits

When you're learning Hindi you may find that people speak quite fast — you'll need to ask them to repeat things or to speak slowly etc. This section gives you some useful phrases to help you out!



?????!

फिर से पूछिए ।

*phir se pūchie.* Please ask [me] again.

फिर से कहिए ।

*phir se kahie.* Please tell [me] again, say [it] again.

जोर से बोलिए ।

*zor se bolie.* Please speak loudly.

धीरे धीरे बोलिए ।

*dhīre dhīre bolie.* Please speak slowly.

हिन्दी में बोलिए ।

*hindī mē bolīe.* Please speak in Hindi.

हिन्दी में बोलिएगा ।

*hindī mē bolīegā.* Be so kind as to speak in Hindi.

This sentence adds *-gā* to the command: बोलिए *bolīe* becomes बोलिएगा *bolīegā*. This gives a particularly polite command.

मैं नहीं समझा ।

*mai nahī samjhā.* I don't/didn't understand. (male speaker)

मैं नहीं समझी ।

*mai nahī samjhi.* I don't/didn't understand. (female speaker)

These sentences use the past tense, introduced in Unit 10.1.

## 2 Telling, saying, speaking, asking

When using verbs like 'to tell' and 'to ask', you may want to specify the person being spoken to. Most 'saying, asking' verbs make this link with *से se*, and here's a list of the common ones that do so:

कहना *kahnā* to say, tell

बोलना *bolnā* to speak

बात करना *bāt karnā* to converse

पूछना *pūchnā* to ask

माँगना *māgnā* to ask for, demand

मिलना *milnā* to meet

राम से कहो ।

*Rām se kaho.* Tell Ram.

राम से बात करो, मनोज से नहीं ।

*Rām se bāt karo, Manoj se nahī.* Talk to Ram, not to Manoj.

मनोज से न पूछो, राम से पूछो ।

*Manoj se na pūcho, Rām se pūcho.* Don't ask Manoj, ask Ram.

राम से पैसा माँगो ।

*Rām se paisā māgo.* Ask Ram for money.

राम से मिलो ।

*Rām se milo.* Meet Ram.

But the verb बताना *batānā* 'to tell' uses को *ko* —

राम को बताओ । *Rām ko batāo*. Tell Ram.

### Practise what you've learnt

Using both तुम *tum* and आप *āp* forms, make up some requests and commands from the following lists. Make some of your examples negative by using न *na* or मत *mat*. Here's an example:

यह किताब ध्यान से पढ़िए

*yah kitāb dhyān se paṛhie*. Read this book carefully.

#### OBJECTS

समोसा *samosā* m. samosa

किताब *kitāb* f. book

हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi

पानी *pānī* m. water

खाना *khānā* m. food

और चाय *aur cāy* f. more tea

घर *ghar* home

मेरी बात *merī bāt* f. what I say, my words

यह *yah* this

ये *ye* these

#### ADVERBS

अब *ab* now

अभी *abhi* right now

जल्दी से *jaldī se* quickly

ज़ोर से *zor se* loudly

धीरे धीरे *dhīre dhīre* slowly

यहाँ *yahā* here

यहीं *yahī* right here

ध्यान से *dhyān se* carefully

फिर से *phir se* again

#### VERBS

कहना *kahnā* to say

खाना *khānā* to eat

चलाना *calānā* to drive (vehicle)

जाना	<i>jānā</i>	to go
देखना	<i>dekhnā</i>	to see, look at
पढ़ना	<i>parhnā</i>	to read
पीना	<i>pīnā</i>	to drink
पूछना	<i>pūchnā</i>	to ask
बताना	<i>batānā</i>	to tell
बात करना	<i>bāt karnā</i>	to talk, converse
बैठना	<i>baiṭhnā</i>	to sit
बोलना	<i>bolnā</i>	to speak
रखना	<i>rakhnā</i>	to put, to keep
सीखना	<i>sīkhnā</i>	to learn
सुनना	<i>sunnā</i>	to listen

### Did you know?

Like all the major languages of northern India, Hindi derives from Sanskrit, India's classical language. Sanskrit is a member of the Indo-European language family that includes Greek, Latin and the modern languages of Western Europe. So Hindi is a distant cousin of English, French, German etc.

## 3 Routine events

We now take a big step forward by learning how to describe present-tense events and actions — starting with the verb बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak' and समझना *samajhnā* 'to understand':

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ ।

*māi hindī boltā hū̃.* I speak Hindi. [male speaker]

मैं हिन्दी समझता हूँ ।

*māi hindī samajhtā hū̃.* I understand Hindi. [male speaker]

This is a present tense that describes actions that are done regularly or habitually. It is called the 'imperfective', and it consists of two parts. First, the word describing the action is बोलता *bolta*, which consists of the stem बोल *bol* plus the ending -ता *-tā*).

बोल + ता = बोलता      *bol + tā = boltā*

समझ + ता = समझता      *samajh + tā = samajhtā*

The second part is the verb 'to be' — here हैं *hū* — already familiar to us from मैं हैं *mai hū* 'I am'. Its purpose here is to show that the verb is in the present tense ('I speak', rather than 'I used to speak').

As you might expect, बोलता *boltā* changes to बोलते *bolte* in the masculine plural, and to बोलती *boltī* in the feminine; the part of the verb 'to be' also changes with the subject — वे बोलती हैं *ve boltī hai* etc.

मैं हिन्दी बोलती हूँ ।

*mai hindī boltī hū.* I speak Hindi. [female]

तुम हिन्दी बोलते हो ।

*tum hindī bolte ho.* You speak Hindi. [male]

तुम हिन्दी बोलती हो ।

*tum hindī boltī ho.* You speak Hindi. [female]

वह हिन्दी बोलता है ।

*vah hindī boltā hai.* He speaks Hindi.

वह हिन्दी बोलती है ।

*vah hindī boltī hai.* She speaks Hindi.

हम / आप / वे हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।

*ham/āp/ve hindī bolte hai.* We/you/they speak Hindi. [male]

हम / आप / वे हिन्दी बोलती हैं ।

*ham/āp/ve hindī boltī hai.* We/you/they speak Hindi. [female]

## Where do you live? What do you do?

Let's look at examples of this tense using other verbs:

आप कहाँ रहती हैं ?

*āp kahā rahtī hai?* Where do you live?

मैं दिल्ली में रहती हूँ ।

*mai dillī mai rahtī hū.* I live in Delhi.

आप क्या काम करती हैं ?

*āp kyā kām kartī hai?* What work do you do?

मैं संगीतकार हूँ; सितार बजाती हूँ ।

*mai sangītkār hū; sitār bajātī hū.* I'm a musician; I play the sitar.



क्या आपके पति भी सितार बजाते हैं ?

*kyā āpke pati bhī sitār bajāte hāī?* Does your husband play the sitar too?

जी नहीं, वे अंग्रेज़ी पढ़ाते हैं ।

*jī nahī, ve āngrezī parhāte hāī.* No, he teaches English.

आपकी बेटी क्या करती है ?

*āpkī betī kyā kartī hai?* What does your daughter do?

वह अभी छोटी है । वह स्कूल जाती है ।

*vah abhī choṭī hai. vah skūl jāti hai.* She's still young; she goes to school.

### What's this called?

The verb कहना *kahnā* 'to say' is useful in asking what something is called — a frequent event when learning a new language! Point to something and say:

इसको क्या कहते हैं ?

*isko kyā kahte hāī?* What's this called?

You'll get answers like:

इसको किताब कहते हैं ।

*isko kitāb kahte hāī.*

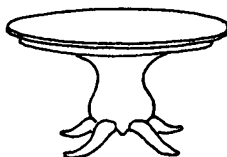
This is called a book.



इसको मेज़ कहते हैं ।

*isko mez kahte hāī.*

This is called a table.



The question literally means 'What do [they] call this?', leaving the 'they' unexpressed because it's an impersonal kind of question. (The word इसको *isko* 'this' will be explained in Unit 5.)

# Find the matching pairs of sentences

Each sentence numbered 1–7 matches up with one from the sequence A–G. Find the matching pairs. Answers below.

- 1 मनोज और राम सिनेमा जाते हैं ।  
*Manoj aur Rām sinemā jāte haĩ.*
  - 2 शर्मा जी अध्यापक हैं ।  
*Śarmā jī adhyāpak haĩ.*
  - 3 राम स्कूल जाता है ।  
*Rām skūl jātā hai.*
  - 4 कभी कभी मनोज और मीना चाय बनाते हैं ।  
*kabhī kabhī Manoj aur Mīnā cāy banāte haĩ.*
  - 5 गीता बहुत अच्छा खाना बनाती है ।  
*Gītā bahut acchā khānā banāti hai.*
  - 6 मीना बगीचे में बैठती है ।  
*Mīnā bagīce mẽ baiṭhtī hai.*
  - 7 तुम हमेशा हम से पैसा माँगते हो ।  
*tum hameśā ham se paisā māṅte ho.*
- A लेकिन वह बहुत ध्यान से नहीं पढ़ता ।  
*lekin vah bahut dhyān se nahī paṛhtā.*
  - B लेकिन हम को कुछ नहीं देते हो ।  
*lekin ham ko kuch nahī dete ho.*
  - C वे हिन्दी पढ़ाते हैं ।  
*ve hindī paṛhāte haĩ.*
  - D वे हिन्दी फ़िल्में देखते हैं ।  
*ve hindī filmē dekhte haĩ.*
  - E पर मनोज नहीं बनाता, सिर्फ़ खाता है !  
*par Manoj nahī banātā, sirf khātā hai!*
  - F वे काफी भी बनाते हैं ।  
*ve kāfī bhī banāte haĩ.*
  - G वह वहाँ बिल्ली से बात करती है ।  
*vah vahā billī se bāt kartī hai.*

Answers: 1D, 2C, 3A, 4F, 5E, 6G, 7B.

## Language about language

Because the tense introduced in this chapter describes events that haven't been completed, it's called the 'imperfective' present. The form बोलता *boltā* is called the 'imperfective participle'.

The verb 'to be' (हूँ *hū̃*, है *hai* etc.) as used here is called the 'auxiliary', because it helps complete the meaning of the verb by specifying its timeframe. (English uses auxiliaries too: 'will' in the future tense 'I will go' is an example.)

## Negative verbs

A final point here: the auxiliary can be dropped when the verb is in the negative — it's often optional, as shown by the brackets:

क्या तुम गोشت खाते हो ?

*kyā tum gošt khāte ho?* Do you eat meat?

नहीं, मैं गोشت नहीं खाता ( हूँ ) ।

*nahī̃, mai gošt nahī̃ khātā (hū̃).* No, I don't eat meat.

क्या वे शराब पीते हैं ?

*kyā ve śarāb pīte hai?* Do they drink alcohol?

नहीं, वे शराब नहीं पीते ( है ) ।

*nahī̃, ve śarāb nahī̃ pīte (hai).* No, they don't drink alcohol.

## ► Javed and Raju get to know each other

जावेद राजू जी, आप एक कालेज में पढ़ाते हैं, न ?

राजू जी हाँ, मैं इतिहास पढ़ाता हूँ ।

जावेद और आपकी पत्नी ? क्या वे भी काम करती हैं ?

राजू हाँ ज़रूर, हम दोनों काम करते हैं ।

जावेद वे क्या काम करती हैं ?

राजू वे अस्पताल में काम करती हैं । डाक्टर हैं ।

*Jāved Rājū jī, āp ek kālej mẽ parhāte hai, na?*

*Rājū jī hã, mai itihās parhātā hū̃.*

*Jāved aur āpkī patnī? kyā ve bhī kām kartī hai?*

*Rājū hã zarūr, ham donō kām karte hai.*

*Jāved ve kyā kām kartī hai?*

*Rājū ve aspatāl mẽ kām kartī hai. ḍākṭar hai.*

- Javed** Raju ji, you teach in a college, don't you?  
**Raju** Yes, I teach history.  
**Javed** And your wife? Does she work too?  
**Raju** Yes, of course, we both work.  
**Javed** What work does she do?  
**Raju** She works in a hospital. She's a doctor.

Notice that a pronoun can be dropped when its reference is clear from what's come before: डाक्टर हैं *daktar hai* [she] is a doctor. Look out for further examples of this in the second and third line below:

- जावेद** यह बताइए राजू जी, आप गोश्त खाते हैं ?  
**राजू** जी हाँ, कभी कभी खाता हूँ । और आप ?  
**जावेद** मैं भी खाता हूँ । लेकिन शराब नहीं पीता ।  
**राजू** आप शराब नहीं पीते ? मैं पीता हूँ, लेकिन बहुत कम ।  
**जावेद** क्या गीता जी भी पीती हैं ?  
**राजू** जी नहीं, वे नहीं पीतीं ।

- Jāved** *yah batāie Rājū jī, āp gośt khāte hai?*  
**Rājū** *jī hā, kabhī kabhī khātā hū. aur āp?*  
**Jāved** *mai bhī khātā hū. lekin śarāb nahī pītā.*  
**Rājū** *āp śarāb nahī pite? mai pītā hū, lekin bahut kam.*  
**Jāved** *kyā Gītā jī bhī pītī hai?*  
**Rājū** *jī nahī, ve nahī pītī.*

- Javed** Tell me this, Raju ji, do you eat meat?  
**Raju** Yes, sometimes I do ['I eat']. And you?  
**Javed** I do too. But I don't drink alcohol.  
**Raju** You don't drink? I do, but very little.  
**Javed** Does Geeta drink too?  
**Raju** No, she doesn't drink.

वे नहीं पीतीं *ve nahī pītī* — when पीती हैं *pītī hai* becomes negative it can drop the auxiliary हैं *hai*, leaving just वे नहीं पीतीं *ve nahī pītī*. The nasal from the dropped हैं *hai* has been made homeless by this, so it jumps onto the participle पीती *pītī* ! This only happens with the feminine plural, and only in this tense.

Now look back at the list of verbs in section 4.1 and make up sentences from as many as you can, with yourself as subject (e.g.

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hū̃*). Then do the same with other subjects such as 'she' or 'they'. Be sure to say your sentences *out loud*, with conviction; this will help you get used to this very important tense.

**Exercise 4a** Translate, using first तुम *tum* commands and then आप *āp* commands:

- 1 Don't drink alcohol in the house.
- 2 Listen carefully.
- 3 Send this letter to Manoj.
- 4 Go home.
- 5 Tell me his name.
- 6 Eat these two samosas.
- 7 Play the sitar.
- 8 Ask my neighbour.
- 9 Give this money to my wife.
- 10 Don't drive the car today.
- 11 Speak slowly.

**Exercise 4b** Fill the gap with the right postposition, then translate:

- १२ राम.....पूछिए । *Rām.....pūchie.*
- १३ बच्चों.....मत बताना । *baccō.....mat batānā.*
- १४ चाचा जी.....हिन्दी बोलो । *cācā jī.....hindī bolo.*
- १५ मनोज.....बात कीजिए । *Manoj.....bāt kijie.*
- १६ गीता.....पैसा माँगना । *Gitā.....paisā māgnā.*

**Exercise 4c** Translate all the variations shown in these sentences:

- 17 My brother/sister lives in Delhi.
- 18 I/we understand Hindi.
- 19 The boy/girl drives the car very fast.
- 20 My husband/wife speaks Hindi.
- 21 Who [male/female] speaks English?

## Glossary

अभी *abhi* right now; still  
 अरे *are* hey! oh!  
 आना *ānā* to come  
 और *aur* more  
 इतिहास *itihās* m. history  
 कभी *kabhī* ever; कभी कभी *kabhī kabhī* sometimes  
 कम *kam* little, less  
 करना *karnā* to do  
 कहना *kahnā* to say  
 काफी *kāfi* f. coffee  
 काम *kām* work; काम करना *kām karnā* to work  
 कालेज *kālej* m. college  
 खत *khat* m. letter  
 (correspondence)  
 खाना<sup>1</sup> *khānā* m. food  
 खाना<sup>2</sup> *khānā* to eat  
 गाना<sup>1</sup> *gānā* m. song, singing  
 गाना<sup>2</sup> *gānā* to sing  
 गोश्त *gośt* m. meat  
 चलाना *calānā* to drive  
 चाय *cāy* f. tea  
 जाना *jānā* to go  
 ज़ोर से *zor se* with force, loudly  
 झूठ *jhūth* m. a lie  
 तबला *tablā* m. tabla (drum)  
 देखना *dekhnā* to look, to see  
 देना *denā* to give  
 धीरे धीरे *dhire dhire* slowly  
 ध्यान *dhyān* m. attention; ध्यान से *dhyān se* attentively  
 न *na* don't; not  
 पढ़ना *parhṇā* to read, to study

पढ़ाना *parhānā* to teach  
 पीना *pīnā* to drink; to smoke  
 पूछना *pūchnā* to ask  
 प्लेट *plet* f. plate  
 फिर *phir*; फिर से *phir se* again  
 फ़िल्म *film* f. film  
 बजाना *bajānā* to play (music)  
 बताना *batānā* to tell  
 बनाना *banānā* to make  
 बात *bāt* f. thing said, idea; बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk, converse  
 बैठना *baiṭhnā* to sit  
 बोलना *bolnā* to speak  
 भेजना *bhejnā* to send  
 मत *mat* don't  
 माँगना *māṅnā* to ask for, demand  
 मिलना *milnā* to meet  
 यहीं *yahī* right here  
 रखना *rakhnā* to put, place, keep  
 लेना *lenā* to take  
 शराब *śarāb* f. alcoholic drink, liquor  
 संगीत *saṅgīt* m. music  
 संगीतकार *saṅgītkār* m. musician  
 समझना *samajhnā* to understand  
 समोसा *samosā* m. samosa  
 सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* m. cigarette  
 सिनेमा *sinemā* m. cinema  
 सीखना *sīkhnā* to learn  
 सुनना *sunnā* to hear, to listen  
 हमेशा *hamesā* always

# 05

*kyā*

आपको क्या चाहिए ?

*āpko*

what do you want?

**In this unit you will learn**

- to talk about likes and needs
- expressions for 'to get' and 'to know'

**Language points**

- oblique-case expressions
- imperfective of 'to be'

## 1 Obliques again

Just when you thought you'd got things straight, we go oblique again! This time it's with the pronouns. To say 'to me', 'from her' etc., we need to use a postposition, which means that the pronoun must become oblique. (Look back to Unit 3 if you're uncertain about the use of obliques.)

The good news is that हम *ham*, आप *āp* and तुम *tum* don't change at all in the oblique:

हम को	<i>ham ko</i>	to us
आप को	<i>āp ko</i>	to you
तुम को	<i>tum ko</i>	to you

The bad news is that the others do change — like this:

DIRECT	OBLIQUE + को <i>ko</i>
मैं <i>maĩ</i>	मुझ को <i>mujh ko</i> to me
तू <i>tū</i>	तुझ को <i>tujh ko</i> to you
यह <i>yah</i>	इस को <i>is ko</i> to him, her, it, this
वह <i>vah</i>	उस को <i>us ko</i> to him, her, it, that
ये <i>ye</i>	इन को <i>in ko</i> to them, these
वे <i>ve</i>	उन को <i>un ko</i> to them, those
कौन <i>kaun</i>	किस को <i>kis ko</i> to whom (singular)
कौन <i>kaun</i>	किन को <i>kin ko</i> to whom (plural)

उस को ये चीज़ें दीजिए ।

*us ko ye cizē dijīe.* Please give these things to him/her.

उन को मेरा पैसा दो ।

*un ko merā paisā do.* Give my money to them.

मुझ को बताइए ।

*mujh ko batāīe.* Please tell me.

तुम मुझ को कुछ नहीं देती हो ।

*tum mujh ko kuch nahī detī ho.* You give me nothing.



Pronoun + postposition are usually written together as one word (उसको *usko*), though on the page opposite they were written as two (उस को *us ko*), to show you more clearly what's going on.

### ► Geeta talks to her children

Geeta is getting Manoj and Ram to help in the house. First, some new words:

कौनसा *kaunsā* which?

जो *jo* which, who

साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean

अख़बार *akhbār* m. newspaper



मनोज बेटा, ये किताबें तुम अलमारी में रखो। कौनसी किताबें? हाँ ये, जो मेरी मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं। मीना कहाँ है? उसको बुलाओ। अच्छा मीनू, तुम यहाँ हो? तुम यह कमरा साफ़ करो। राम, तुम पिताजी से पूछो कि अख़बार कहाँ है। उनसे कहो कि चाचाजी बैठे हैं।

*Manoj betā, ye kitābē tum almārī mẽ rakho. kaunsi kitābē? hā ye, jo merī mez par paṛī hai. Mīnā kahā hai? usko bulāo. acchā Mīnū, tum yahā ho? tum yah kamrā sāf karo. Rām, tum pitājī se pūcho ki akhbār kahā hai. unse kaho ki cācāji baiṭhe hai.*

Manoj, son, put these books in the cupboard. Which books? Yes these, which are lying on my table. Where's Meena? Call her. Oh, Meena, you're here? You clean this room. Ram, ask father where the newspaper is. Tell him that Uncle is sitting [waiting].

### Did you know?

At the level of everyday conversation, Hindi and Urdu are virtually identical — though Urdu is written in the Persian script (modified to represent Indian retroflex consonants). All the grammar taught in this book, and nearly all the vocabulary used here, is 'Urdu' as much as it is 'Hindi'.

## 2 What do you like, what do you want?

### ► Liking things

In English, we can say 'I like London'; the subject of this is 'I'. But we could also say 'London appeals to me', which makes 'London' the subject. Hindi has many such constructions. They work like this:

मुझको दिल्ली पसंद है ।

*mujhko dillī pasand hai.* I like Delhi.

हमको दिल्ली पसंद है ।

*hamko dillī pasand hai.* We like Delhi.

These sentences translate literally as 'Delhi is pleasing to me/us'; the word दिल्ली *dillī* is the subject of the verb है *hai* 'is', with the 'me/us' expressed in the oblique. Here are some more examples.

क्या राम को यह जगह पसंद है ?

*kyā Rām ko yah jagah pasand hai?* Does Ram like this place?

हमको वह आदमी पसंद नहीं है ।

*hamko vah ādmī pasand nahī hai.* We don't like that man.

मेरे दोस्त को ये तस्वीरें पसंद नहीं हैं ।

*mere dost ko ye tasvīrē pasand nahī hai.* My friend doesn't like these pictures.

### IMPORTANT!

#### GRAMMATICAL HEALTH WARNING

Constructions using को *ko* can  
damage your grammar

Take care: as you learn more Hindi you will see that this switch from English 'I' to Hindi मुझ को *mujh ko* 'to me' is very common. The focus of 'I' sentences is the person who experiences, but मुझको *mujhko* sentences have the *experience itself* as the focus. We can call these 'मुझको *mujhko*' constructions.

### ► Needing and wanting things

Another मुझको *mujhko* construction expresses 'I need' or 'I want', using the word चाहिए *cāhie* — literally 'is wanted'. There's no है *hai* used with चाहिए *cāhie*.

तुमको क्या चाहिए ?

*tumko kyā cāhie?* What do you want/need?

मुझको काफी चाहिए ।

*mujhko kāfi cāhie.* I want/need coffee.

हमको भी काफी चाहिए ।

*hamko bhī kāfi cāhie.* We want/need coffee too.

किसको चाय चाहिए ?

*kisko cāy cāhie?* Who wants/needs tea?

राजू को चाय चाहिए ।

*Rājū ko cāy cāhie.* Raju wants/needs tea.

Remember that किस *kis* is the oblique of कौन *kaun* 'who?', as in किसको *kisko* 'to whom?'.

## ▶ Knowing things

A similar construction means 'I know', using the word मालूम *mālūm* — literally 'known'. A difference from the चाहिए *cāhie* construction is that है *hai* is used here (though it can be dropped in the negative).

मुझको मालूम है ।

*mujhko mālūm hai.* I know.

मुझको नहीं मालूम / मुझको मालूम नहीं ।

*mujhko nahī mālūm / mujhko mālūm nahī.* I don't know.

किसको मालूम है ?

*kisko mālūm hai?* Who knows?

उनको मालूम है कि मुझको चाबी चाहिए ।

*unko mālūm hai ki mujhko cābī cāhie.* They know that I want/need a key.

हमको मालूम है कि तुम यहाँ हो ।

*hamko mālūm hai ki tum yahā ho.* We know that you're here.

मुझको मालूम है कि तुम कहाँ हो ।

*mujhko mālūm hai ki tum kahā ho.* I know where you are.

उनको मालूम है कि मुझको क्या चाहिए ।

*unko mālūm hai ki mujhko kyā cāhie.* They know what I want.

## ▶ Pratap goes shopping

Pratap, a visitor from England, is shopping in Delhi. He's forgotten the Hindi for some of the things he needs, but luckily for him, the shopkeeper knows some English and is able to help him out. We join them in the middle of their conversation.

- प्रताप मुझको टोर्च भी चाहिए ।  
 दुकानदार "टोर्च" नहीं, "टार्च" ! यह लीजिए । और ?  
 प्रताप मुझको ... क्या कहते हैं उस को ? ... एक छोटी किताब ... मैं कुछ लिखना चाहता हूँ ...  
 दुकानदार अच्छा, आपको कापी चाहिए ।  
 प्रताप हाँ, कापी ! एक क़लम भी दीजिए ।  
 दुकानदार कैसा क़लम चाहिए ?  
 प्रताप काला नहीं ... ब्लू ...  
 दुकानदार यह लीजिए, नीला क़लम । और ?  
 प्रताप मुझको वह चीज़ भी चाहिए ...  
 दुकानदार कौनसी चीज़ ? यह डिब्बा ?  
 प्रताप नहीं नहीं, वह लाल चीज़ जो डिब्बे पर पड़ी है ।  
 दुकानदार अच्छा, चाकू ! आपको चाकू चाहिए । लीजिए ।

- Pratāp mujhko ṭorc bhī cāhie.*  
*dukāndār 'ṭorc' nahī, 'ṭārc'! yah lijie. aur?*  
*Pratāp mujhko... kyā kahte hāi us ko?... ek choṭī kitāb... maī kuch likhnā cāhtā hū...*  
*dukāndār acchā, āp ko kāpī cāhie.*  
*Pratāp hā, kāpī! ek qalam bhī dijie.*  
*dukāndār kaisā qalam cāhie?*  
*Pratāp kālā nahī... blū...*  
*dukāndār yah lijie, nilā qalam. aur?*  
*Pratāp mujhko vah ciz bhī cāhie...*  
*dukāndār kaunsī ciz? yah ḍibbā?*  
*Pratāp nahī nahī, vah lāl ciz jo ḍibbe par paṛī hai.*  
*dukāndār acchā, cāqū! āp ko cāqū cāhie. lijie.*

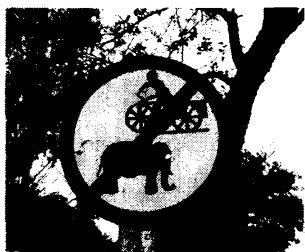
- Pratap** I need a torch too.  
**Shopkeeper** Not 'torc', 'tārc'! What else?  
**Pratap** I... what's it called... a little book... I want to write something.  
**Shopkeeper** Oh, you need an exercise book.  
**Pratap** Yes, an exercise book! Give me a pen too.  
**Shopkeeper** What kind of pen do you want?  
**Pratap** Not black... 'blue'...  
**Shopkeeper** Here you are, a blue pen. What else?  
**Pratap** I need that thing too...  
**Shopkeeper** Which thing? This box?  
**Pratap** No no, that red thing that's lying on the box.  
**Shopkeeper** Oh, a penknife! You need a penknife. Here you are.

### 3 Availability — 'to get, to find'

Besides meaning 'to meet', मिलना *milnā* also means 'to be available', and is the normal way to express the meaning 'to get, to find, to receive'. The subject here is not the person who gets or receives something, but the thing that's available or received.

इस दुकान में अच्छे जूते मिलते हैं ।

*is dukān mẽ acche jūte milte haī.* You can get good shoes in this shop. (Good shoes are available in this shop.)



दिल्ली में सब कुछ मिलता है ।

*dillī mẽ sab kuch miltā hai.*

You can get everything in Delhi.

हाथी भी मिलते हैं !

*hāthī bhī milte haī!*

You can even find elephants!

Notice that the sense of 'you' in 'you can get' is dropped, because the situation's an impersonal one, describing *general* availability.

सस्ते कपड़े कहाँ मिलते हैं ?

*saste kapṛe kahā milte haī?* Where can you get cheap clothes?

अच्छी साड़ियाँ कहाँ मिलती हैं ?

*acchī sārīyā kahā miltī haī?* Where can you get good saris?

## Practise what you've learnt

Match up items with locations, as in this example:

समोसे ढाबे में मिलते हैं ।

*samosa dhābe mẽ milte haĩ.* Samosas are available in a café.

### WHAT'S AVAILABLE

समोसे *samosa* m. pl. samosas

सस्ता खाना *sastā khānā* m. cheap food

डाक टिकटें *ḍāk ṭikatē* f. pl. stamps

ताज़ा फल *tāzā phal* m. fresh fruit

अच्छा खाना *acchā khānā* m. good food

सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* m. pl. cigarette

सुंदर कपड़े *sundar kapṛe* m. pl. lovely clothes

अच्छे कमरे *acche kamre* m. pl. good rooms

### WHERE TO FIND IT/THEM

डाक घर *ḍāk ghar* m. post office

मेरा कमरा *merā kamrā* m. my room

छोटी दुकान *choṭī dukān* f. small shop

यहाँ *yahā* here

ढाबा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe

भारत *bhārat* m. India

यह होटल *yah hoṭal* m. this hotel/restaurant

वह दुकान *vah dukān* f. that shop

## The general and the particular

Look closely at these two sentences:

बनारसी साड़ियाँ बहुत अच्छी होती हैं ।

*banārāsī sāṛiyā bahut acchī hotī haĩ.* Banarasi saris are very good.

ये साड़ियाँ बहुत अच्छी हैं ।

*ye sāṛiyā bahut acchī haĩ.* These saris are very good.

The participle होता *hotā* (from होना *honā* 'to be') is used in a statement that relates to a whole class of things: it's a *general* statement. Thus the first sentence above is about *all* saris from Banaras (a centre of fine sari making), while the second one is a *specific* one about a *particular* selection of saris.

## 4 Revision!

By now you should be reasonably confident in making basic sentences, using the verb 'to be' (है *hai* etc.) and the habitual tense of other verbs (मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hū̃*). The distinction between आप *āp* and तुम *tum* should be second nature, especially in making requests, and you should be able to make words agree with their subjects in number, gender and case. You can locate things using postpositions like में *mē* and पर *par*, and should always remember that nouns and pronouns that 'carry' postpositions must be in the oblique (कमरे में *kamre mē*, उस पर *us par*). You should be able to express 'need' using चाहिए *cāhie*, and मिलना *milnā* as 'to get' should be familiar too. You know that many constructions follow the format of 'X is pleasing to me' ('*mujhko* constructions') rather than 'I like X'. Look back now at anything you're unsure of.

### Some hints on learning

- Listen to the recording until its dialogues and phrases are coming out of your ears! Try to catch the *music* of the language.
- Read *aloud*; and when reading longish sentences, break them up into smaller units, repeating each part until you're familiar with both its meaning and its construction.
- Read sentences *critically*: put yourself into the position of a teacher, explaining how each phrase is built up and why words are in the order and form in which you find them.
- If you have someone to practise with, act out the dialogues.
- You'll learn words and constructions much more thoroughly by using them yourself rather than just reading them passively. Write a Hindi diary, starting by noting 'habitual' things that you do every day, then gradually extending your range as new tenses are introduced; or write some dialogues of your own.

### Raju visits a hotel

This section brings a revision dialogue in two parts. Visiting a small town for a teachers' conference, Raju tries his luck at the local hotel. There's no new grammar, but here are some useful new words:

कोई *koī* some, any, a

अच्छा-सा *acchā-sā* goodish,  
decent

दिखाना *dikhānā* to show

दिन *din* m. day

के लिए *ke lie* for

यानी *yānī* that is to say  
 शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday  
 फ़ोन *fon* m. phone  
 शहर *śahar* m. town

ऐसा *aisā* such, of this kind  
 किराया *kirāyā* m. rent; fare  
 सौ *sau* m. hundred  
 रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee

- शंकर आइए साहब, आपको क्या चाहिए ?  
 राजू मुझको कमरा चाहिए । कोई अच्छा-सा कमरा दिखाइए ।  
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा । आपको कैसा कमरा चाहिए ?  
 राजू मुझको बड़ा कमरा चाहिए ।  
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा । कितने दिनों के लिए चाहिए ?  
 राजू चार दिनों के लिए, यानी शुक्रवार तक ।  
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा । आज से शुक्रवार तक हमारा एक बहुत अच्छा कमरा खाली है ।  
 राजू क्या कमरे में फ़ोन है ? फ़ोन चाहिए ।  
 शंकर जी हाँ, है । बहुत अच्छा कमरा है । इस शहर में ऐसे कमरे मुश्किल से मिलते हैं ।  
 राजू किराया कितना है ?  
 शंकर सिर्फ़ सात सौ रुपये ।  
 राजू कमरा दिखाइए ।  
 शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब । आइए, मैं कमरा दिखाता हूँ ।

- Śankar** *āie sāhab, āpko kyā cāhie?*  
**Rājū** *mujhko kamrā cāhie. koī acchā-sā kamrā dikhāie.*  
**Śankar** *bahut acchā. āpko kaisā kamrā cāhie?*  
**Rājū** *mujhko barā kamrā cāhie.*  
**Śankar** *bahut acchā. kitne dinō ke lie cāhie?*  
**Rājū** *cār dinō ke lie, yānī śukravār tak.*  
**Śankar** *bahut acchā. āj se śukravār tak hamārā ek bahut acchā kamrā khālī hai.*  
**Rājū** *kyā kamre mẽ fon hai? fon cahie.*  
**Śankar** *jī hā, hai. bahut acchā kamrā hai. is śahar mẽ aise kamre muškil se milte hai.*



**Rājū** kirāyā kitnā hai?  
**Śankar** sirf sāt sau rupaye.  
**Rājū** kamrā dikhāie.  
**Śankar** bahut acchā sāhab. āie, maī kamrā dikhātā hū.

**Shankar** Please come [in], sir, what do you want?  
**Raju** I need a room. Show me some decent room.  
**Shankar** Very good. What kind of room do you want?  
**Raju** I want a big room.  
**Shankar** Very good. How many days do you want it for?  
**Raju** For four days — that is, until Friday.  
**Shankar** Very good. We have a very good room vacant from today until Friday.  
**Raju** Is there a phone in the room? There needs to be a phone.  
**Shankar** Yes, there is. It's a very good room. Such rooms are hard to find in this town.  
**Raju** How much is the rent?  
**Shankar** Only seven hundred rupees.  
**Raju** Show me the room.  
**Shankar** Very good, sir. Come, I'll show [you] the room.

(In this last line, Shankar's sentence में कमरा दिखाता हूँ *maī kamrā dikhātā hū* shows how the present tense can refer to something just about to be done.)

All seems to be going fine so far, and Shankar is obviously eager to please. But it's when he shows Raju the room that the problems start. Do you notice a change in tone in the way Raju addresses Shankar? (Look out for the pronouns.) But before we move on to the second part, some more new words:

ऊपर *ūpar* up, upstairs

दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door

खोलना *kholnā* to open

करवाना *karvānā* to get done,  
caused to be done (by  
someone else)

काम करना *kām karnā* to work,  
to function

चालू करना *cālū karnā* to turn  
on, make work

घूमना *ghūmnā* to turn, revolve

लाइट *lāiṭ* f. electricity,  
electrical power

बिजली *bijlī* f. electricity

शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious  
(mainly used in the formula  
शुभ नाम *śubh nām* 'good  
name')

कोई दूसरा *koī dūsrā* another,  
some other one

The encounter continues:

(दोनों आदमी ऊपर जाते हैं । शंकर एक दरवाज़ा खोलता है ।)

शंकर आइए जी ।

राजू यह कमरा साफ़ नहीं है ।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब । मैं कमरा अभी साफ़ करवाता हूँ ।

राजू क्या यह पुराना पंखा काम करता है ?

शंकर जी हाँ, पंखा काम करता है । बहुत अच्छा पंखा है । आजकल ऐसे पंखे नहीं मिलते हैं ।

राजू चालू करो ।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा साहब ।

(शंकर स्विच को “ऑन” करता है [turns on the switch] लेकिन पंखा घूमता नहीं ।)

राजू पंखा घूमता नहीं ।

शंकर जी हाँ, क्योंकि लाइट नहीं है — बिजली नहीं है ।

राजू तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ?

शंकर जी, मुझको शंकर कहते हैं । और आपका शुभ नाम ?

राजू मेरा नाम शर्मा है । श्री राजकुमार शर्मा ।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा नाम है सर । मुझको आपका नाम बहुत पसंद है ।

राजू शंकर, तुम “बहुत अच्छा” बहुत कहते हो । लेकिन यह कमरा बहुत अच्छा नहीं है । मुझ को पसंद नहीं है । कोई दूसरा कमरा दिखाओ ।

शंकर बहुत अच्छा शर्मा जी । आइए ।

(donō ādmī ūpar jāte hai. Śankar ek darvāzā kholtā hai.)

Śankar āie jī.

Rājū yah kamrā sāf nahī hai.

Śankar bahut acchā sāhab. mai kamrā abhī sāf karvātā hū.

Rājū kyā yah purānā pankhā kām kartā hai?

Śankar jī hā, pankhā kām kartā hai. bahut acchā pankhā hai. ājkal aise pankhe nahī milte hai.

**Rājū** cālū karo.  
**Śankar** bahut acchā sāhab.

(Śankar svis ko 'ān' kartā hai [turns on the switch] lekin pankhā ghūmtā nahī.)

**Rājū** pankhā ghūmtā nahī.  
**Śankar** jī hā, kyōki lāiṭ nahī hai — bijli nahī hai.  
**Rājū** tumhārā nām kyā hai?  
**Śankar** jī, mujhko Śankar kahte hai. aur āpkā śubh nām?  
**Rājū** merā nām Śarmā hai. Śrī Rājumār Śarmā.  
**Śankar** bahut acchā nām hai sar. mujhko āpkā nām bahut pasand hai.  
**Rājū** Śankar, tum 'bahut acchā' bahut kahte ho. lekin yah kamrā bahut acchā nahī hai. mujhko pasand nahī hai. koī dūsarā kamrā dikhāo.  
**Śankar** bahut acchā Śarmā jī. āie.

(Both men go upstairs. Shankar opens a door.)

**Shankar** Please come in, sir.  
**Raju** This room isn't clean.  
**Shankar** Very good, sir. I'll get the room cleaned at once.  
**Raju** Does this old fan work?  
**Shankar** Yes, the fan works. It's a very good fan. You can't get fans like this these days.  
**Raju** Turn it on.  
 (Shankar switches on the fan, but the fan doesn't turn.)  
**Raju** The fan doesn't turn.  
**Shankar** Yes, sir [i.e. he agrees that it doesn't], because there's no 'light' — no electricity.  
**Raju** What's your name?  
**Shankar** Sir, I'm called Shankar. And what is your good name?  
**Raju** My name is Sharma. Mr Rajkumar Sharma.  
**Shankar** It's a very good name, sir. I like your name very much.  
**Raju** Shankar, you say 'very good' very much. But this room isn't very good. Show me some other room.  
**Shankar** Very good, Sharma ji. Please come.

In the first part of the dialogue, Raju had been calling Shankar आप āp (as is apparent from such commands as दिखाइए dikhāiē; but in the second part, he calls Shankar तुम tum — the drop in honorific level indicating his declining patience!

## Quantities

Expressing quantities or amounts in Hindi is simplicity itself:

एक किलो चावल

*ek kilo cāval* one kilo of rice

दो चम्मच चीनी

*do cammac cīnī* two spoons of sugar

तीन कप चाय

*tīn kap cāy* three cups of tea

There's no 'of' between the amount and the measured substance.

**▶ Exercise 5a** You're doing some shopping in the market. Reply to the shopkeeper's questions:

१ आइए ! आज आपकी तबियत कैसी है ?

*āie! āj āpkī tabiyat kaisī hai?*

२ घर में सब लोग ठीक हैं ?

*ghar mē sab log ṭhik hai?*

३ आपको क्या चाहिए ?

*āpko kyā cāhie ?*

४ कितना चाहिए ?

*kitnā cāhie?*

५ आपको और क्या चाहिए ?

*āpko aur kyā cāhie?*

६ साबुन वगैरह चाहिए?

*sābun vagairah cāhie?*

७ चाय, कॉफी, बिस्कुट...?

*cāy, kāfī, biskut...?*

८ आपका घर कहाँ है ?

*āpkā ghar kahā hai?*

९ क्या ये चीज़ें भी आपकी हैं ?

*kyā ye cīzē bhī āpkī hai?*

१० आपकी गाड़ी बहुत दूर खड़ी है ?

*āpkī gārī bahut dūr kharī hai?*

**Exercise 5b** Translate into Hindi:

- 11 I need three samosas.
- 12 They don't like this house, they like the small house.
- 13 I don't like this room, show me another room.
- 14 Where do you live? We live in Old Delhi.
- 15 Your house isn't very far from my house. Come tomorrow.
- 16 I know that [ कि *ki* ] my teacher doesn't live here.
- 17 I know where your teacher lives.
- 18 Houses in Delhi are quite expensive.
- 19 Grandfather speaks very beautiful Hindi.
- 20 We don't want these black shoes.

**Glossary**

आधा <i>ādhā</i> m. half	क्यों <i>kyō</i> why?
ऊपर <i>ūpar</i> up, upstairs	क्योंकि <i>kyōki</i> because
ऐसा <i>aisā</i> such, of this kind	खोलना <i>kholnā</i> to open
कमीज़ <i>qamīz</i> f. shirt	घूमना <i>ghūmnā</i> to turn, revolve
किलो <i>kilo</i> m. kilo, kilogram	चम्मच <i>cammac</i> m. spoon
करवाना <i>karvānā</i> to get done (by someone else), to cause to be done	चाकू <i>cāqū</i> m. knife, penknife
कल <i>kal</i> yesterday; tomorrow	चाबी <i>cābī</i> f. key
काम करना <i>kām karnā</i> to work, to function	चालू करना <i>cālū karnā</i> to turn on
काला <i>kālā</i> black	चावल <i>cāval</i> m. rice
कि <i>ki</i> that (conjunction)	चाहना <i>cāhnā</i> to want, wish
किराया <i>kirāyā</i> m. rent; fare	चाहिए <i>cāhie</i> (is) wanted, needed
कुरता <i>kurtā</i> m. kurta	चीज़ <i>cīz</i> f. thing
के लिए <i>ke lie</i> for	चीनी <i>cīnī</i> f. sugar
कोई <i>koī</i> some, any, a; कोई दूसरा <i>koī dūsarā</i> some other, another	जगह <i>jagah</i> f. place
कौनसा <i>kaunsā</i> which?	जुकाम <i>zūkām</i> m. head cold
	जूता <i>jūtā</i> m. shoe
	जो <i>jo</i> who, which; the one who/which
	टार्च <i>ṭārc</i> m. torch, flashlight

टिकिया *tikiyā* f. cake (of soap)  
 डाक *dāk* f. post; डाक घर *dāk ghar* m. post office; डाक की टिकट *dāk kī ṭikaṭ* f. stamp  
 डिब्बा *ḍibbā* m. box  
 ढाबा *dhābā* m. roadside cafe  
 तबियत *tabiyat* f. health, disposition  
 ताज़ा *tāzā* m. fresh  
 तो *to* so, then  
 दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door  
 दिखाना *dikhānā* to show  
 दिन *din* m. day  
 नीला *nīlā* blue  
 पढ़ना *parhṇā* to read; to study  
 पर *par* but  
 पसंद *pasand* pleasing (यह मुझको पसंद है *yah mujhko pasand hai* I like this)  
 फल *phal* m. fruit  
 फलवाला *phalvālā* m. fruitseller  
 फ़ोन *fon* m. phone; फ़ोन करना *fon karnā* to phone  
 बिजली *bijlī* f. electricity  
 बिस्कुट *biskut* m. biscuit  
 बुज़ार *bukhār* m. fever  
 मालूम *mālūm* (is) known

मिलना *milnā* to meet, to be available  
 मुश्किल *muškil* difficult; मुश्किल से *muškil se* barely, hardly  
 यानी *yānī* in other words, that is to say  
 रहना *rahnā* to live, to stay  
 रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee  
 लाइट *lāiṭ* f. light, electric power  
 लाल *lāl* red  
 बग़ैरह *vagairah* etc., and so on  
 शहर *śahar* m. town, city  
 शायद *śāyad* maybe, perhaps  
 साबुन *sābun* m. soap  
 शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday  
 शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious  
 सब कुछ *sab kuch* everything  
 -सा *-sā* '-ish' (suffix that qualifies an adjective, as in बड़ा-सा *barā-sā* 'biggish')  
 साड़ी *sārī* f. sari  
 साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean  
 सौ *sau* m. hundred  
 हाथी *hāthī* m. elephant  
 होटल *hoṭal* m. hotel, restaurant, café

# 06

*kyā*

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to talk about relationships
- how to ask about people's ages
- how to say 'I can' and 'let me'

**Language points**

- possessives
- verb stem and infinitive

आप क्या काम करते हैं ?

*āp*

what work do you do?

## 1 Possession and 'to have'

You already know that मेरा *merā* means 'my, mine', आपका *āpkā* means 'your, yours', उसका *uskā* means 'his, her/hers, its', and हमारा *hamārā* means 'our, ours'. So much for showing possession with pronouns; now we need to see how possession works with names and nouns, as in 'Ram's friend' or 'my son's name'.

The phrase राम का कुत्ता *Rām kā kuttā* means 'Ram's dog'; मीना का कुत्ता *Minā kā kuttā* means 'Meena's dog'. So the little word का *kā* works like the apostrophe 's' in English. Some more examples:

मनोज का दोस्त	<i>Manoj kā dost</i>	Manoj's friend
गीता का पति	<i>Gītā kā pati</i>	Geeta's husband
राजू का बेटा	<i>Rājū kā beṭā</i>	Raju's son

This is a very important feature of the language and you should practise it thoroughly! Make some phrases of your own from the items provided:

डाक्टर *dāktar*

पिता जी *pitā jī*

पड़ोसी *parosī*

विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī*

मेरी पत्नी *merī patnī*



कमरा *kamrā*

भाई *bhāī*

चाचा *cācā*

नाम *nām*

पैसा *paisā*

You'll have made phrases like मेरी पत्नी का पैसा *merī patnī kā paisā* 'my wife's money'. Great! Now look carefully at these phrases:

लड़के का दोस्त	<i>laṛke kā dost</i>	the boy's friend
लड़के की बहिन	<i>laṛke kī bahin</i>	the boy's sister
लड़के के माँ-बाप	<i>laṛke ke mā-bāp</i>	the boy's parents

Two things have happened: लड़का *laṛkā* has become oblique, and का *kā* has changed like an adjective to agree with the following word.

So का *kā* is a postposition that works like an adjective! This didn't show up earlier (in राम का कुत्ता *Rām kā kuttā* etc.) because non-inflecting masculine words had been cunningly chosen there. But



from now on we'll have to keep an eye on this का *kā* business. For practice, make up phrases from the following lists, remembering to use oblique versions of words from the left-hand column, and to make का *kā* agree with the word chosen from the right-hand column:

वह आदमी *vah ādmī*

मेरा दोस्त *merā dost*

यह लड़का *yah laṛkā*

फलवाला *phalvālā*

उसका बेटा *uskā beṭā*

ये लोग *ye log*

चाबी *cabī*

बहिन *bhāī*

दो भाई *do bhāī*

माता *mātā*

कपड़े *kapṛe*

गाड़ी *gārī*

का/की/के

*kā kī ke*

### Do you have brothers and sisters?

Some time back we saw that Hindi doesn't have a verb 'to have', and that ownership of goods and chattels is indicated by के पास *ke pās*:

उसके पास दो चाबियाँ हैं ।

*uske pās do cābiyāṁ haī.* He/she has two keys.

But look at the following and notice the difference:

उसके दो भाई हैं ।

*uske do bhāī haī.* He/she has two brothers.

उसकी दो बहिनें हैं ।

*uski do bahinē haī.* He/she has two sisters.

Yes, describing the 'ownership' or relatives involves का *kā* (or a pronoun like मेरा *merā*, or आपका *āpkā*) rather than के पास *ke pās*. The same applies for parts of the body:



रावण के दस सिर हैं ।

*Rāvaṇ ke das sir haī.*

Rāvaṇ has ten heads.

मेरा एक भाई है । उसके दो मकान हैं ।

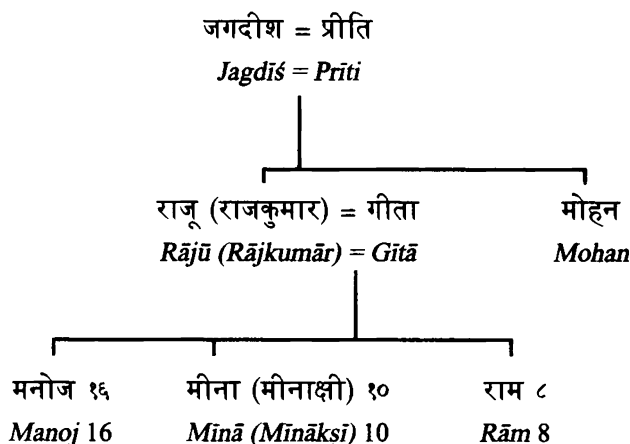
*merā ek bhāī hai. uske do makān hai.* I have one brother. He has two houses.

मेरी कोई बहिन नहीं ।

*merī koī bahin nahī.* I don't have any sister(s).

## 2 The Sharma family

Now let's spend some quality time with the Sharmas. Here's their family tree, to remind you of the family relationships.



You have to sort out who's who. Test yourself by covering up the answers on the right of the page, then check your answers.

मनोज का छोटा भाई कौन है ?

*Manoj kā choṭā bhāī kaun hai?*

राम

*Rām*

राम और मनोज की बहिन कौन है ?

*Rām aur Manoj kī bahin kaun hai?*

मीना

*Mīnā*

बच्चों की माँ का नाम क्या है ?

*baccō kī mā kā nām kyā hai?*

गीता

*Gītā*

बच्चों के बाप का नाम क्या है ?

*baccō ke bāp kā nām kyā hai?*

राजू

*Rājū*

राजू और गीता की बेटी का नाम क्या है ?

*Rājū aur Gītā kī beṭī kā nām kyā hai?*

मीना

*Mīnā*

बच्चों के दादा का नाम क्या है ?

*baccō ke dādā kā nām kyā hai?*

जगदीश

*Jagdīs*

बच्चों की दादी का नाम क्या है ?

*baccō kī dādī kā nām kyā hai?*

प्रीति

*Prīti*

मीना का पूरा नाम क्या है ?

*Mīnā kā pūrā nām kyā hai?*

मीनाक्षी शर्मा

*Mīnākṣī Śarmā*

बच्चों के चाचा का नाम क्या है ?

*baccō ke cācā kā nām kyā hai?*

मोहन

*Mohan*

राजू के पिता का नाम क्या है ?

*Rājū ke pitā kā nām kyā hai?*

जगदीश

*Jagdīs*

And a final question:

राजू के बच्चों के कुत्ते का नाम क्या है ?

*Rājū ke baccō ke kutte kā nām kyā hai?*

मोती

*Moti*

## ► How old are you?

Another use of का-के-की *kā-ke-kī* is to give people's ages. It's used with the word साल *sāl* m. 'year':

मनोज सोलह साल का है ।

*Manoj solah sāl kā hai.* Manoj is sixteen ('is of 16 years').

मीना दस साल की है ।

*Mīnā das sāl kī hai.* Meena is ten.

गीता कितने साल की है ?

*Gītā kitne sāl kī hai?* How old is Geeta?

राम कितने साल का है ?

*Rām kitne sāl kā hai?* How old is Ram?

राम आठ साल का है ।

*Rām āṭh sāl kā hai.* Ram is eight.

The word for 'age' is उम्र *umra* (f.), often pronounced 'umar'.

आपकी कितनी उम्र है ?

*āpkī kitnī umra hai?* How old are you?

### Someone is here

The word कोई *koī* 'any' also means 'anyone' or 'someone' (and कोई नहीं *koī nahī* means 'no one'). कोई *koī* can also refer to inanimates, as in कोई दुकान *koī dukān* 'some shop (or other)'. Its oblique form is किसी *kisī*, as in किसी का बेटा *kisī kā betā* 'someone's son'.

Don't confuse किसी *kisī* with किस *kis*, which is the oblique of कौन *kaun* and of क्या *kyā*: किसको *kisko* 'to whom/what?', किसका भाई *kiskā bhāī* 'whose brother?'

कोई है ?

*koī hai?* Anyone there?

घर में कोई नहीं है ।

*ghar mẽ koī nahī hai.* There's nobody in the house.

किसी के घर में कोई चूहा रहता था ।

*kisī ke ghar mẽ koī cūhā rahtā thā.* In somebody's house there lived a certain mouse.

Here's a very useful little phrase:

कोई बात नहीं ।

*koī bāt nahī.* Never mind, it doesn't matter, don't mention it.

Used with a number, कोई *koī* means 'about', just as 'some' does in English:

कोई बारह गाड़ियाँ

*koī bārah gāriyāṁ* some twelve cars

As we've already seen, कुछ *kuch* means 'some' (कुछ पैसा *kuch paisā* some money) or 'something'. It doesn't change in the oblique.

क्या मेज़ पर कुछ है ?

*kyā mez par kuch hai?* Is there something on the table?

हमको कुछ दूध चाहिए ।

*hamko kuch dūdh cāhie.* We need some milk.

घर में कुछ नहीं है ।

*ghar mẽ kuch nahī hai.* There's nothing in the house.

कछ लोगों के पास कछ नहीं है ।

## ► Manoj introduces Pratap to his father

83

What work do you do?

06

मनोज प्रताप, मेरे पिताजी से मिलो ।<sup>1</sup>

प्रताप नमस्ते जी ।

राजू हलो प्रताप, क्या हाल है ?<sup>2</sup>

प्रताप ठीक है, शुक्रिया ।

राजू तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है प्रताप ?

प्रताप मैं इक्कीस साल का हूँ ।

राजू तुम्हारे कितने भाई और बहिन हैं ?

प्रताप मेरा एक भाई है, मेरी कोई बहिन नहीं है ।

*Manoj Pratāp, mere pitājī se milo.<sup>1</sup>*

*Pratāp namaste jī.*

*Rājū halo Pratāp, kyā hāl hai? <sup>2</sup>*

*Pratāp ṭhik hai, śukriyā.*

*Rājū tumhārī umr kitnī hai Pratāp?*

*Pratāp maī ikkīs sāl kā hū.*

*Rājū tumhāre kitne bhāī aur bahinē hai?*

*Pratāp merā ek bhāī hai, merī koī bahin nahī hai.*

Manoj Pratap, meet my father.

Pratap Hello ji.

Raju Hello, Pratap, how's things?

Pratap Fine, thank you.

Raju How old are you, Pratap?

Pratap I'm twenty-one.

Raju How many brothers and sisters do you have?

Pratap I have one brother, I don't have any sister(s).

<sup>1</sup> मिलना *milnā* 'to meet' uses the linking word से *se* 'with' — पिताजी से मिलो *pitājī se milo* 'Meet (with) Father'.

<sup>2</sup> क्या हाल है? *kyā hāl hai?* 'How's things?' (lit. 'what's the condition?') This is a very common way of asking how someone is — a more colloquial equivalent to तुम कैसे हो? *tum kaise ho?* 'How are you?'

### ► Some questions for you

आपके कितने भाई हैं ?

*āpke kitne bhāī hai?*

आपकी कितनी बहिनें हैं ?

*āpkī kitnī bahinē hai?*

क्या आपके घर में कोई कुत्ता है ?

*kyā āpke ghar mẽ koī kuttā hai?*

### ► Practise what you've learnt

We're going to have another look at the present-tense verbs that we met earlier. Match the subject with the activity:

फलवाला

*phalvālā* fruit-seller

अध्यापिका

*adhyāpikā* teacher (female)

लेखक

*lekhak* writer

दर्जी

*darzī* tailor

विद्यार्थी

*vidyārthī* student

ट्रेन

*tren* train

डाक्टर

*dāktar* doctor

दुकानदार

*dukāndār* shopkeeper

किताबें लिखता है ।

*kitābē likhtā hai.*

कालेज में पढ़ता है ।

*kālej mẽ parhṭā hai.*

फल बेचता है ।

*phal bectā hai.*

मरीजों का इलाज करता है ।

*marizō kā ilāj kartā hai.*

कालेज में पढ़ाती है ।

*kālej mẽ parhātī hai.*

माल बेचता है ।

*māl bectā hai.*

कपड़े बनाता है ।

*kapre banātā hai.*

तेज़ चलती है ।

*tez caltī hai.*

### ► 3 You can go

'You can go' is आप जा सकते हैं *āp jā sakte hai*. This features the special verb सकना *saknā* — special because it never stands alone, but always follows the stem of the main verb (here जा *jā* from जाना *jānā* 'to go').

आप मेरी हिन्दी समझ सकते हैं ?

*āp merī hindī samajh sakte hai?* You can understand my Hindi?

मैं यह काम नहीं कर सकता ।

*mai yah kām nahī kar saktā.* I can't do this work.

यह कैसे हो सकता है ?

*yah kaise ho sakta hai?* How can this be?

Now turn these 'I do' sentences into 'I can do' sentences, following this example:

मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ ।

*mai hindī boltā hū.*

I speak Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी बोल सकता हूँ ।

*mai hindī bol saktā hū.*

I can speak Hindi.

१ हम सिनेमा जाते हैं । *ham sinemā jāte hai.*

२ चाचा जी घर पर रहते हैं । *cācā jī ghar par rahte hai.*

३ मैं अध्यापक से पूछता हूँ । *mai adhyāpak se pūchtā hū.*

४ बच्चे बगीचे में खेलते हैं । *bacce bagīche mẽ khelte hai.*

५ मैं अखबार पढ़ती हूँ । *mai akhbār parh̄tī hū.*

६ हम बच्चों को सब कुछ बताते हैं । *ham baccō ko sab kuch batāte hai.*

७ तुम शराब नहीं पीते हो । *tum śarāb nahī pīte ho.*

८ वह कुछ नहीं कहता है । *vah kuch nahī kahtā hai.*

## ► There's nobody in the house

Manoj is talking to Pratap. He thinks they're alone!

मनोज एक सिग्रेट पियो प्रताप ! घर में कोई नहीं है ।

प्रताप नहीं, मैं सिग्रेट नहीं पीता । तुम पी सकते हो ।

मनोज हाँ मैं रोज़ दो-तीन सिग्रेट पीता हूँ ।

प्रताप ये सिग्रेट तुम्हारे हैं ?

मनोज नहीं, ये मेरे बाप के हैं ।

प्रताप उनके सिग्रेट क्यों पीते हो ?

**मनोज** मेरे पास पैसे नहीं हैं। मैं सिग्रेट नहीं खरीद सकता।  
**राजू** (दूसरे कमरे से) मनोज ! ओ मनोज ! तुम कहाँ हो ?  
**प्रताप** तुम्हारे पिताजी की आवाज़ !  
 ( राजू कमरे में आता है )

**राजू** अरे, यह क्या ? वह तुम्हारे हाथ में क्या है मनोज ?

**मनोज** पिताजी ! देखिए, यह प्रताप का सिग्रेट है ...

**राजू** मनोज, बकवास मत कर। प्रताप, तुम जा सकते हो।

**मनोज** लेकिन ... लेकिन ...

*Manoj ek sigreṭ piyo Pratāp! ghar mẽ koī nahī hai.*

*Pratāp nahī, maī sigreṭ nahī pītā. tum pī sakte ho.*

*Manoj hā maī roz do-tin sigreṭ pītā hū.*

*Pratāp ye sigreṭ tumhāre hai?*

*Manoj nahī, ye mere bāp ke hai.*

*Pratāp unke sigreṭ kyō pīte ho?*

*Manoj mere pās paise nahī hai. maī sigreṭ nahī kharid saktā.*

*Rājū (dūsre kamre se) Manoj! O Manoj! tum kahā ho?*

*Pratāp tumhāre pitājī kī āvāz!*

*(Rājū kamre mẽ ātā hai)*

*Rājū are, yah kyā? vah tumhāre hāth mẽ kyā hai Manoj?*

*Manoj pitājī! dekhie, yah Pratāp kā sigreṭ hai.*

*Rājū Manoj, bakvās mat kar. Pratāp, tum jā sakte ho.*

*Manoj lekin... lekin...*

**Manoj** Have a cigarette, Pratap! there's no one in the house.

**Pratap** No, I don't smoke. You can.

**Manoj** Yes, I smoke two or three cigarettes every day.

**Pratap** These cigarettes are yours?

**Manoj** No, they're my dad's.

**Pratap** Why do you smoke his cigarettes?

**Manoj** I don't have any money. I can't buy cigarettes.

**Raju** [from another room] Manoj! Oh Manoj! Where are you?

**Pratap** Your father's voice!

[Raju comes into the room.]

**Raju** Hey, what's this? What's that in your hand, Manoj?



**Manoj** Father! Look, this is Pratap's cigarette...

**Raju** Manoj, don't talk nonsense. Pratap, you can go.

**Manoj** But... but...

### ► True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī* 'correct', सच *sac* 'true') or wrong (गलत *galat*)? Answers below.

- |  | सही<br><i>sahī</i>       | गलत<br><i>galat</i>      |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| १ प्रताप सिग्रेट पीना चाहता है ।<br><i>Pratāp sigreṭ pīnā cāhtā hai.</i>                         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ मनोज सोचता है कि राजू घर पर नहीं है ।<br><i>Manoj soctā hai ki Rājū ghar par nahī hai.</i>     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ मनोज के पास उसके पिता के सिग्रेट हैं ।<br><i>Manoj ke pās uske pitā ke sigreṭ hai.</i>         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ मनोज हमेशा सच बोलता है ।<br><i>Manoj hameśā sac boltā hai.</i>                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ राजू के सिग्रेट प्रताप के हाथ में हैं ।<br><i>Rājū ke sigreṭ Pratāp ke hāth mẽ hai.</i>        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ राजू कहता है कि दोनों लड़के जा सकते हैं ।<br><i>Rājū kahtā hai ki donō larke jā sakte hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: Only 2 and 3 are true.

## 4 Let me go!

'Let me go' is मुझको जाने दो *mujhko jāne do*. The sense 'to let, to allow' uses the verb देना *denā*, whose literal meaning is 'to give'; it's like saying 'give me [permission] to go'. As you can see in मुझको जाने दो *mujhko jāne do*, it's used with the infinitive of the main verb. The infinitive ends -e in this construction (here, the infinitive जाना *jānā* changes to oblique जाने *jāne*), and the person who is 'allowed to do' takes को *ko*.

हम बच्चों को खेलने देते हैं ।

*ham baccō ko khelne dete hai.* We let the kids play.

पर हम उनको सड़क पर खेलने नहीं देते ।

*par ham unko sarak par khelne nahī dete.* But we don't let them play on the road.

हमको सोचने दीजिए ।

*hamko socne dijie.* Please let us think.

मनोज को बाहर जाने दो ।

*Manoj ko bāhar jāne do.* Let Manoj go out.

### ▶ Manoj has a dream

Manoj is dreaming. In this dream, his mother is talking to his father, trying to persuade him to go easy on Manoj and to let him do all the things he wants to do:

मनोज का सपना ।

गीता — “मनोज के बाप, मनोज को सिग्रेट पीने दो, उसको शराब भी पीने दो । वह बहुत अच्छा लड़का है; वह स्कूल में बहुत ध्यान से पढ़ता है । उसको गाड़ी क्यों नहीं चलाने देते हो ? और हाँ, छुट्टियों में उसको अमरीका जाने दो !”



*Manoj kā sapnā*

*Gītā — ‘Manoj ke bāp, Manoj ko sigreṭ pine do, usko śarāb bhī pine do. vah bahut acchā laṛkā hai; vah skūl mē bahut dhyān se paṛhtā hai. usko gāṛī kyō nahī calāne dete ho? aur hā, chuṭṭiyō mē usko amṛikā jāne do!’*

### Manoj's dream

Geeta — ‘Manoj's father, let Manoj smoke, and let him drink too. He's a very good boy; he studies very hard at school. Why don't you let him drive the car? Oh and yes, let him go to America in the holidays!’

## Turning 'I want to' into 'let me'

Here you have to convert the 'I want to' sentences into 'let me' sentences, following the example:

मैं घर जाना चाहता हूँ ।	मुझको घर जाने दीजिए / दो ।
<i>maī ghar jānā cāhtā hū.</i>	<i>mujhko ghar jāne dījie / do</i>
I want to go home.	Let me go home.

- १ मैं अमरीका जाना चाहता हूँ ।  
*maī amrikā jānā cāhtā hū.*
- २ मैं गाड़ी चलाना चाहती हूँ ।  
*maī gārī calānā cāhtā hū.*
- ३ मैं खाना खाना चाहता हूँ ।  
*maī khānā khānā cāhtā hū.*
- ४ मैं काम करना चाहती हूँ ।  
*maī kām karnā cāhtī hū.*
- ५ मैं आपसे बात करना चाहता हूँ ।  
*maī āpse bāt karnā cāhtā hū.*

Continue doing the same with sentences 6–10. These feature people other than 'I', as in this example:

वह सोना चाहता है ।	उसको सोने दीजिए / दो ।
<i>vah sonā cāhtā hai.</i>	<i>usko sone dījie / do</i>
He wants to sleep.	Let him sleep.

- ६ वह सिग्रेट पीना चाहता है ।  
*vah sigreṭ pīnā cāhtā hai.*
- ७ हम अध्यापक से कुछ कहना चाहते हैं ।  
*ham adhyāpak se kuch kahnā cāhte hai.*
- ८ वह हिन्दी सीखना चाहती है ।  
*vah hindī sīkhnā cāhtī hai.*
- ९ बच्चे समोसे खाना चाहते हैं ।  
*bacce samose khānā cāhte hai.*
- १० हम यहाँ रहना चाहते हैं ।  
*ham yahā rahnā cāhte hai.*

Repeating formulas like this is a very efficient way of learning new expressions. Say them over and over again, out loud. And try making up new examples, choosing any new verbs from the glossary.

**Exercise 6a** Answer these questions about occupations:

- १ फलवाला क्या बेचता है ? *phalvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- २ अखबारवाला क्या बेचता है ? *akhbārvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- ३ दूधवाला क्या बेचता है ? *dūdhvālā kyā bectā hai?*
- ४ अध्यापक क्या करता है ? *adhyāpak kyā kartā hai?*
- ५ स्कूल में बच्चे क्या करते हैं ? *skūl mẽ bacce kyā karte hai?*
- ६ घर पर बच्चे क्या करते हैं ? *ghar par bacce kyā karte hai?*
- ७ ड्राइवर क्या करता है ? *drāivar kyā kartā hai?*
- ८ दुकानदार क्या करता है ? *dukāndār kyā kartā hai?*

**Exercise 6b** Answer these questions addressed to you:

- ९ आप कहाँ रहते हैं / रहती हैं ?  
*āp kahā̃ rahte hai / rahti hai?*
- १० आप क्या काम करते हैं / करती हैं ?  
*āp kyā kām karte hai / karti hai?*
- ११ क्या आप सितार बजाते हैं / बजाती हैं ?  
*kyā āp sitār bajāte hai / bajāti hai?*
- १२ आप कौनसा अखबार पढ़ते / पढ़ती हैं ?  
*āp kaunsā akhbār paṛhte hai / paṛhti hai?*
- १३ आप कितनी भाषाएँ बोलते हैं / बोलती हैं ?  
*āp kitnī bhāṣāẽ bolte hai / bolti hai?*

**Exercise 6c** Translate the following:

- 14 Jagdish reads Manoj's newspaper.
- 15 My two brothers work in a big office.
- 16 My sister drives my brother's car.
- 17 He only speaks Hindi, he doesn't speak English.
- 18 Our teachers teach three languages.
- 19 His children play cricket in the garden.

- 20 Our parents don't eat meat.  
 21 Where do you work? Where do you live?  
 22 What does your younger ('little') brother do?  
 23 How many languages does your mother speak?

## Glossary

अखबार *akhbār* m. newspaper

अखबारवाला *akhbārvālā* m.

newspaper seller

अध्यापिका *adhyāpikā* f. teacher

आवाज़ *āvāz* f. voice; sound

इलाज *ilāj* m. cure, treatment

उम्र *umra, umar* f. age

ओ o oh!

का-की-के *kā-kī-ke* (shows possession, like English 's)

कोई *koī* any, some; somebody;

कोई नहीं *koī nahī* nobody

किसी *kisī* oblique of कोई *koī*

क्रिकेट *kriket* m. cricket

खरीदना *kharīdnā* to buy

खेलना *khelnā* to play (a game)

ट्रेन *tren* f. train

ड्राइवर *drāivar* m. driver

दर्जी *darzī* m. tailor

दादा *dādā* m. grandfather  
(father's father)

दादी *dādī* f. grandmother  
(father's mother)

दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.  
shopkeeper

दूध *dūdh* m. milk

दूधवाला *dūdhvālā* m. milkman

देना *denā* to give; to allow to,  
let (with oblique infinitive:  
हमको जाने दो *hamko jāne do*  
'Let us go')

बकवास *bakvās* f. nonsense, idle  
chatter

बच्चा *baccā* m. child

बाप *bāp* m. dad

बेचना *becnā* to sell

भाषा *bhāṣā* f. language

मरीज़ *mariz* m. patient

माँ *mā* f. mother; माँ-बाप *mā-bāp* m. pl. parents

माल *māl* m. goods, stuff

रोज़ *roz* every day

लिखना *likhnā* to write

लेखक *lekhak* m. writer

सकना *saknā* to be able (with  
verb stem: तुम जा सकते हो  
*tum jā sakte ho* 'You can  
go')

सच *sac* m. truth; adj. true

सड़क *ṣarak* f. road, street

सपना *sapnā* m. dream; सपना  
देखना *sapnā dekhnā* to  
dream, to have a dream

साल *sāl* m. year

सोचना *socnā* to think

सोना *sonā* to sleep

हाल *hāl* m. condition, state (in  
क्या हाल है ? *kyā hāl hai?*  
'How's things? How are  
you?')

# 07

भूत-काल

*bhūt-kāl*

the past

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to talk about memories and routine events in the past
- how to add nuance to what you say

**Language points**

- past imperfective tenses
- direct objects
- use of emphatics

## 1 In the past

So far, we've been working in the present all the time. Moving into the past is very easy. It involves these words from the verb 'to be':

	was	were
MASCULINE	था <i>thā</i>	थे <i>the</i>
FEMININE	थी <i>thī</i>	थी <i>thī</i>

We can use this tense in two ways. Firstly, here's 'was/were' alone:

कल सोमवार था ।

*kal somvār thā.* Yesterday was Monday.

कल आप घर पर थे ।

*kal āp ghar par the.* Yesterday you were at home.

कल वह बीमार थी ।

*kal vah bīmār thī.* Yesterday she was ill.

कल प्रीति जी कहाँ थीं ?

*kal Prīti jī kahā thī?* Where was Priti ji yesterday?

Unlike है *hai* and हैं *hai*, था-थे-थी-थीं *thā-the-thī-thī* distinguish gender as well as number, so we know that the second sentence above refers to males (or one male, honorific plural), and the third to a female.

The second use is in the 'imperfective' tense used for routine actions, and introduced in section 4.3. Simply changing है *hai* to था *thā* converts present into past — 'I used to...'.

PRESENT	PAST
मैं यहाँ रहता हूँ ।	मैं यहाँ रहता था ।
<i>maī yahā rahtā hū.</i>	<i>maī yahā rahtā thā.</i>
I live here.	I used to live here.

दादा जी वाराणसी में रहते थे ।

*dādā jī vārāṇasī mẽ rahte the.* Grandpa used to live in Varanasi.

वे एक दुकान में काम करते थे ।

*ve ek dukān mẽ kām karte the.* He used to work in a shop.

उनकी बहिनें घर में खेलती थीं ।

*unkī bahinē ghar mē kheltī thī.* His sisters used to play at home.

उनके भाई स्कूल जाते थे ।

*unke bhāī skūl jāte the.* His brothers used to go to school.

वे बहुत ध्यान से पढ़ते थे ।

*ve bahut dhyān se parhte the.* They used to study very hard.

## ► Memories of Varanasi

Jagdish Sharma is in nostalgic mood and has begun writing some memories of his childhood. There are notes to help you follow what he's written, and later there'll be some questions for you to answer.

किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge

ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time

कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage

आँगन *āgan* m. courtyard

नदी *nadī* f. river

शाम *sām* f. evening

नाव *nāv* f. boat

सैर *sair* f. trip

याद *yād* f. memory

ठंडा *thandā* cold; ठंडा-सा

*thandā-sā* coldish

हवा *havā* f. air, breeze

चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow

छत *chat* f. roof

हम लोग<sup>1</sup> वाराणसी में रहते थे । हमारा घर गंगा<sup>2</sup> के किनारे पर था । बड़ा-सा<sup>3</sup> घर था । हम तीन भाई थे, और चार बहिनें । हम तीनों<sup>4</sup> लड़के स्कूल जाते थे; लड़कियाँ घर पर रहती थीं । उस ज़माने में बहुत कम लड़कियाँ स्कूल जाती थीं । पैसे की कमी थी, और लोग यह सोचते थे कि औरतों की जगह घर में है ।

पिताजी स्कूल में पढ़ाते थे — लेकिन हमारे स्कूल में नहीं । उनका स्कूल हमारे घर से काफी दूर था । वे साइकिल से स्कूल जाते थे । सब लोग उनको “मास्टर जी”<sup>5</sup> कहते थे । हम उनको “पापा” कहते थे और माताजी को “माँ” कहते थे ।<sup>6</sup>

कितना सुंदर मकान था हमारा ! कोई बगीचा नहीं था, लेकिन हम बच्चे लोग आँगन में खूब खेलते थे । कभी कभी हम सड़कों पर या नदी के किनारे पर भी खेलते थे । शाम को हम नदी पर नाव में सैर करते थे । ठंडी-सी हवा चलती थी । रात को हम छत पर सोते थे । मुझको उन दिनों की यादें बहुत आती हैं ।<sup>7</sup>





ham log<sup>1</sup> vārānasi mẽ rahte the. hamārā ghar gangā<sup>2</sup> ke kināre par thā. baṛā-sa<sup>3</sup> ghar thā. ham tīn bhāī the, aur cār bahinē. ham tinō<sup>4</sup> laṛke skūl jāte the; laṛkiyā ghar par rahtī thī. us zamāne mẽ bahut kam laṛkiyā skūl jāti thī. paise ki kami thī, aur log yah socte the ki auratō ki jagah ghar mẽ hai.

pitājī skūl mẽ paṛhāte the — lekin hamāre skūl mẽ nahī. unkā skūl hamāre ghar se kāfī dūr thā. ve sāikil se skūl jāte the. sab log unko ‘māstar jī’<sup>5</sup> kahte the. ham unko ‘pāpā’ kahte the aur mātājī ko ‘mā’ kahte the.<sup>6</sup>

kitnā sundar makān thā hamārā! koī bagīcā nahī thā, lekin ham bacce log āgan mẽ khūb khelte the. kabhī kabhī ham saṛakō par yā nadī ke kināre par bhī khelte the. sām ko ham nadī par nāv mẽ sair karte the. thaṇḍī-sī havā calti thī. rāt ko ham chat par sote the. mujhko un dinō kī yādē bahut atī hai.<sup>7</sup>

We used to live in Varanasi. Our house was on the bank of the Ganges. It was a biggish house. We were three brothers and four sisters. All three of us boys used to go to school; the girls used to stay at home. In those days very few girls went to school. Money was short, and people used to think that women’s place was in the home.

Father taught in a school — but not in our school. His school was quite far from our house. He used to go to school by bicycle. Everyone called him ‘Master jī’. We called him ‘Papa’ and we called mother ‘Ma’.

What a beautiful house we had! There wasn't a garden, but we children used to play to our hearts' content in the courtyard. Sometimes we would play on the roads or on the riverbank. In the evening we used to take a ride in a boat on the river. A cool breeze would blow. At night we used to sleep on the roof. I think of those days a lot.

### Notes

- 1 हम लोग *ham log* 'we, we people, we guys' — the word लोग *log* can indicate a group; compare बच्चे लोग *bacche log* 'the children, the kids'.
- 2 गंगा *gangā* — like all rivers (and the word for 'river', नदी *nadī*), the Ganges is feminine.
- 3 The suffix -सा -सी -से *-sā -sī -se* is similar to '-ish' in English: बड़ा-सा घर *barā-sā ghar* 'a biggish house', अच्छी-सी गाड़ी *acchī-sī gārī* 'quite a good car', अच्छे-से लोग *acche-se log* 'quite decent people'.
- 4 तीनों *tinō* — 'all three'; this is a special 'inclusive' use of the oblique plural. Compare दोनों *donō* 'both', चारों *cārō* 'all four'.
- 5 'Master ji' is a title used for schoolmasters (and for tailors — masters of their craft).
- 6 When a plural subject comprises both males and females, as here, the verb is masculine.
- 7 Literally 'memories of those days come to me a lot' — a typical मुझको *mujhko* expression.

### Some question about Jagdish's memories

- 1 जगदीश जी किस शहर में रहते थे ?  
*Jagdis ji kis shahar me rahte the?*
- 2 उनके परिवार में कितने बच्चे थे ?  
*unke parivar me kitne bacche the?*
- 3 क्या उनकी बहिनें स्कूल जाना नहीं चाहती थीं ?  
*kyā unki bahinē skūl jānā nahī cahtī thī?*
- 4 जगदीश के पिता का स्कूल कहाँ था ?  
*Jagdis ke pitā kā skūl kahā thā?*
- 5 क्या जगदीश के पिता जी पैदल स्कूल जाते थे ?  
*kyā Jagdis ke pitā jī paidal skūl jāte the?*

**Did you know?**

Modern Hindi has developed within the last 200 years or so on the basis of a dialect called Khari Boli (खड़ी बोली), whose original home is the region around Delhi. Many other dialects are still spoken within the 'Hindi belt' of northern India; two of them, Braj Bhasha (ब्रजभाषा) and Awadhi (अवधी), were important literary languages between about AD 1500 and 1850, and poetry from this period is still well-loved today.

**2 Getting specific**

The word को *ko* means 'to':

यह खत गीता को दो ।

*yah khat Gītā ko do.* Give this letter to Geeta.

टिकट मुझको दीजिए ।

*ṭikaṭ mujhko dījie.* Please give the ticket to me.

हम बच्चों को पैसे देते हैं ।

*ham baccō ko paise dete hāi.* We give money to the children.

In these sentences the 'thing given' (e.g. the letter) is the direct object and the recipient (e.g. Geeta) is the indirect object. It's the recipient who is marked with को *ko*.

Usually, को *ko* isn't needed at all with a direct object. In the following, the direct objects are फल *phal* 'fruit' and पानी *pānī* 'water' respectively:

फल खाओ, पानी पियो ।

*phal khāo, pānī piyo.* Eat fruit, drink water.

The meaning here is a general one — 'any fruit, any water'. But if a more specific fruit/water is meant, को *ko* is added (and 'the' is used in English):

फल को खाओ, पानी को पियो ।

*phal ko khāo, pānī ko piyo.* Eat the fruit, drink the water.

The contrast between having को *ko* and not having it isn't always this clearcut: but in general को *ko* tends to be added to an object that's in some way specific or individualized. For this reason, references to people (and other specific creatures such as animals!) normally do take को *ko* —

बच्चों को घर में बुलाओ ।

*baccō ko ghar mẽ bulāo.* Call the children inside the house.

मोती को मत मारो !

*Motī ko mat māro!* Don't hit Moti!

उन लोगों को देखो !

*Un logō ko dekho!* Look at those people!

Marking an object with को *ko* doesn't necessarily change the meaning much at all. The two sentences यह खत पढ़ो *yah khat parho* and इस खत को पढ़ो *is khat ko parho* both translate as 'read this letter', even though the second version suggests a greater focus on the individual letter (and maybe a closer scrutiny of it also).

### 3 A shortcut

The word को *ko* is a multi-purpose tool; we saw some of its uses in Unit 5. Whereas English expressions about a person tend to have that person as the grammatical subject (as if individuals were the centre of the universe of experience), Hindi prefers to have the *experience itself* as the subject:

आपको बुखार है ।

*āpko bukhār hai.* You have a fever.

तुमको जुकाम है ।

*tumko zukām hai.* You have a cold.

मुझको मालूम है कि आपको क्या चाहिए।

*mujhko mālūm hai ki āpko kyā cāhie* I know what you need.

किसको मालूम है कि यह क्या है ?

*kisko mālūm hai ki yah kyā hai?* Who knows what this is?

उनको नए जूते चाहिए ।

*unko nae jūte cāhie.* They need new shoes.

हमको यह तस्वीर पसंद है ।

*hamko yah tasvīr pasand hai.* We like this picture.

मुझको लिखने का शौक है ।

*mujhko likhne kā śauq hai.* I'm fond of writing

उनको संगीत का शौक है ।

*unko sangīt kā śauq hai.* They are keen on music.

This type of construction, with its heavy reliance on *ko*, is so common that the 'pronoun + *ko*' combination has an alternative short form: for example, *मुझको mujhko* has the alternative *मुझे mujhe*. Only *आपको āpko* refuses to be shortened. These pairs of forms are completely interchangeable: it makes no difference at all which member of a pair you choose to use.

मुझको <i>mujhko</i>	=	मुझे <i>mujhe</i>
हमको <i>hamko</i>	=	हमें <i>hamē</i>
तुझको <i>tujhko</i>	=	तुझे <i>tujhe</i>
तुमको <i>tumko</i>	=	तुम्हें <i>tumhē</i>
इसको <i>isko</i>	=	इसे <i>ise</i>
इनको <i>inko</i>	=	इन्हें <i>inhē</i>
उसको <i>usko</i>	=	उसे <i>use</i>
उनको <i>unko</i>	=	उन्हें <i>unhē</i>
किसको <i>kisko</i>	=	किसे <i>kise</i>
किनको <i>kinko</i>	=	किन्हें <i>kinhē</i>

Remember that *किस kis* (singular) and *किन kin* (plural) are the oblique forms of *कौन kaun* 'who' and *क्या kyā* 'what':

किसे मालूम है कि राम कहाँ है ?

*kise mālūm hai ki Rām kahā hai?* Who knows where Ram is?

तुम पत्र किन्हें लिखते हो?

*tum patr kinhē likhte ho?* To whom [plural] do you write letters?

The main point to bear in mind here is that many expressions in Hindi are based on a *मुझको mujhko* pattern rather than a *मैं māi* pattern. You need to develop the skill of using both types of sentences, switching freely between one and the other. For example, these two sentences have the same meaning:

मुझे मालूम है कि वह कौन है ।

*mujhe mālūm hai ki vah kaun hai.* I know who he is.

मैं जानता हूँ कि वह कौन है ।

*māi jāntā hū ki vah kaun hai.* I know who he is.

When getting to grips with the मुझको *mujhko* pattern, think of the individual as being subjected to the effects of experiences from the world around him or her:

मुझे हिन्दी आती है ।  
*mujhe hindī ātī hai.*

मुझे मालूम है कि तुम कौन हो ।  
*mujhe mālūm hai ki tum kaun ho.*



मुझे तुम्हारा चेहरा बहुत पसंद है !  
*mujhe tumhārā cehrā bahut pasand hai!*

मुझे गाने का बहुत शौक है ।  
*mujhe gāne kā bahut śauq hai.*

### ▶ Raju recalls some childhood experiences

While reading this passage, look out for two things in particular: 'used to' verbs describing habitual things in the past, and the numerous constructions using को *ko*.

बचपन में मुझे पत्र लिखने का बहुत शौक था । कभी कभी मैं प्रधान मंत्री को भी पत्र लिखता था । मुझे मालूम नहीं था कि उन्हें मेरे पत्र पसंद थे कि नहीं, क्योंकि वे जवाब नहीं देते थे । एक समय मेरा छोटा भाई कई महीनों तक बीमार था । उसे बहुत बुखार था इसलिए हमें बहुत चिंता थी । मुझको मालूम था कि उसे दवा की ज़रूरत थी लेकिन हमारे पास पैसे कहाँ थे । लोग कहते थे कि प्रधान मंत्री बहुत दयालु आदमी हैं । इस लिए . . .

आदरणीय प्रधान मंत्री जी ।

सादर नमस्ते । मुझे मालूम है कि आपको बहुत काम है लेकिन हमें बहुत चिंता है क्योंकि मेरे छोटे भाई को बुखार है । हमारे पास पैसे नहीं हैं । क्या आप कुछ कर सकते हैं ? हमको आप पर पूरा भरोसा है ।

शुभकामनाओं सहित

आपका राजकुमार शर्मा

*bacpan mẽ mujhe patr likhne kã bahut śauq thā. kabhī kabhī maī pradhān mantrī ko bhī patr likhtā thā. mujhe mālūm nahī thā ki unhẽ mere patr pasand the ki nahī, kyōki ve javāb nahī dete the. ek samay merā choṭā bhāī kār mahīnō tak bīmār thā. use bahut bukhār thā islie hamẽ bahut cintā thī. mujhko mālūm thā ki use davā kī zarūrat thī lekin hamāre pās paise kahā the. log kahte the ki pradhān mantrī bahut dayālu admī haī. is lie...*

*ādarāṇīy pradhān mantrī jī,*

*sādar namaste. mujhe mālūm hai ki āpko bahut kām hai lekin hamẽ bahut cintā hai kyōki mere choṭe bhāī ko bukhār hai. hamāre pās paise nahī haī. kyā āp kuch kar sakte haī? hamko āp par pūrā bharosā hai.*

*śubhkāmnāō sahit*

*āpkā Rājkmār Śarmā.*

In childhood I was very fond of writing letters. Sometimes I would even write letters to the Prime Minister. I didn't know if he liked my letters or not, because he used not to reply. One time my younger brother was ill for several months. He had a high fever and so we were very worried. I knew that he needed medicine but we didn't have the money [literally 'where was the money?']. People used to say that the Prime Minister was a very kindly man. So...

Dear [literally 'respected'] Prime Minister ji,

Respectful greetings. I know that you have a lot of work but we are very anxious because my younger brother has fever. We don't have any money. Can you do something? We have full trust in you.

With best wishes, yours, Rajkumar Sharma.

See Unit 8 for the Prime Minister's reply!

## 4 Adding emphasis

Three little words can add various kinds of subtle emphasis to a Hindi sentence. We have already met भी *bhī* 'also, even', and we saw how fussy it was about its position in the word order (see 3.2). We now add the other two — ही *hī* 'only' etc., and तो *to* 'as for...'. All three follow the words or phrases that they emphasize, but they are *not* postpositions (see 3.2), so they don't involve any change of case.

Firstly, भी *bhī* means 'also', 'even', etc.; it gives an *inclusive* emphasis. Look out for the effect of भी *bhī* in these sentences:

अजय पतला है; वह लंबा भी है ।

*Ajay patlā hai; vah lambā bhī hai.* Ajay is thin; he's *tall* too.

अजय पतला है; विजय भी पतला है ।

*Ajay patlā hai; Vijay bhī patlā hai.* Ajay is thin; *Vijay* is thin too.

In the first sentence, भी *bhī* emphasizes लंबा *lambā*; in the second it emphasizes the name विजय *Vijay*. Where does the emphasis fall in the following?

मुझे बुखार है । मुझे जुकाम भी है ।

*mujhe bukhār hai. mujhe zukām bhī hai.* I've got a fever. I've got a cold too.

मुझे बुखार है । तुम्हें भी बुखार है ।

*mujhe bukhār hai. tumhē bhī bukhār hai.* I've got a fever.

You've got a fever too.

Yes, it's on जुकाम *zukām* and तुम्हें *tumhē* respectively. So you see again how sensitive the position of भी *bhī* is. The same applies with our second emphatic word, ही *hī*, which means 'only', or stresses what's just been said; it gives an *exclusive* emphasis.



मैं चाय ही पीता हूँ ।

*mai cāy hī pītā hū̃.* I only drink tea (nothing but tea).

मैं ही चाय पीता हूँ ।

*mai hī cāy pītā hū̃.* Only I drink tea (or 'I drink tea').

यह चाय बहुत ही अच्छी है !

*yah cāy bahut hī acchī hai!* This tea is really good!

Thirdly: तो *to* emphasizes one thing by implying a contrast to another; this *contrastive* emphasis may be 'explicit', in the sense that it can name both parts of the contrast:

अजय तो ठीक है, पर विजय थोड़ा पागल है ।

*Ajay to ṭhik hai, par Vijay thora pāgal hai.* Ajay's OK, but Vijay's a bit crazy.

...or it may be merely implied, leaving a 'but...' hanging in the air:

अजय तो ठीक है ।

*Ajay to ṭhik hai.* Ajay's OK (implication: 'but that other guy...').

कमीज़ तो काफी सुंदर है ।

*qamīz to kāfī sundar hai.* The shirt's quite nice (implication: 'but the jacket's a nightmare!').

कमीज़ सुंदर तो है ।

*qamīz sundar to hai.* The shirt is quite nice (implication: 'but have you seen the price ticket?').

Finally, notice how ही *hī* merges with certain words:

यह <i>yah</i>	यही <i>yahī</i>	this very one, the same one
इस <i>is</i>	इसी <i>isī</i>	this very one, the same one
वह <i>vah</i>	वही <i>vahī</i>	that very one, the same one
उस <i>us</i>	उसी <i>usī</i>	that very one, the same one
यहाँ <i>yahā</i>	यहीं <i>yahī</i>	right here, in this very place
वहाँ <i>vahā</i>	वहीं <i>vahī</i>	right there, in that very place

For now, it's enough to get a general understanding of how these emphatic words operate: they'll gradually become more familiar.

**Exercise 7a** Convert the sentences in Exercise 6c into the past tense (e.g. 'Jagdish used to read Manoj's newspaper') and translate into Hindi.

**Exercise 7b** Translate the following, bringing out the emphasis given by *तो to* and *ही hī*.

- ११ जगदीश जी के परिवार में लड़के ही स्कूल जाते थे ।  
*Jagdīś jī ke parivār mẽ lar̥ke hī skūl jāte the.*
- १२ उनका स्कूल उनके घर से बहुत ही दूर था ।  
*unkā skūl unke ghar se bahut hī dūr thā.*
- १३ स्कूल में बच्चे ही नहीं, सब लोग उन्हें "मास्टर जी" कहते थे ।  
*skūl mẽ bacce hī nahī, sab log unhẽ 'māstar jī' kahte the.*
- १४ उनकी नौकरी में तनख्वाह तो बहुत अच्छी नहीं थी ।  
*unkī naukari mẽ tankhvāh to bahut acchī nahī thī.*
- १५ जगदीश की माँ हिन्दी ही बोलती थीं ।  
*Jagdīś kī mā hīndī hī boltī thī.*
- १६ उस ज़माने में बच्चे तो बहुत खुश थे ।  
*us zamāne mẽ bacce to bahut khuś the.*
- १७ बगीचा तो नहीं था, लेकिन खेलने की जगहें बहुत थीं ।  
*bagicā to nahī thā, lekin khelne kī jagahẽ bahut thī.*
- १८ बच्चे लोग तो छत पर ही सोते थे ।  
*bacce log to chat par hī sote the.*
- १९ बचपन में तो राजू को पत्र लिखने का शौक था ।  
*bacpan mẽ to Rājū ko patr likhne kā śauq thā.*
- २० प्रधान मंत्री दयालु तो थे लेकिन उन्हें बहुत काम होता था ।  
*pradhān mantrī dayālu to the lekin unhẽ bahut kām hotā thā.*

**Exercise 7c** Write a passage of 100 words or so about childhood memories — yours or imagined ones. Try to use a wide range of vocabulary and constructions; remember that you can always supplement your vocabulary from the glossaries at the back of the book.

- अंग्रेज़ी *āgrezī* f. English (language); and adj.  
 आँगन *āṅgan* m. courtyard  
 आदरणीय *ādaraniy* 'respected' (used for 'Dear...' in formal correspondence)  
 इसलिए *islīe* so, because of this  
 कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage  
 किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge  
 खूब *khūb* a lot, freely  
 गंगा *gangā* f. Ganges  
 गरमी *garmī* f. heat; गरमियों *garmiyā* f. pl. summer  
 चलना *calnā* to move, blow, flow  
 चिंता *cintā* f. anxiety  
 चेहरा *cehrā* m. face  
 छत *chat* f. roof  
 ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time  
 ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need  
 जवाब *javāb* m. answer, reply; जवाब देना *javāb denā* to reply  
 जानना *jānnā* to know  
 ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f. life  
 टिकट *ṭikaṭ* f./m. ticket; stamp  
 ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* cold  
 तनज़ाह *tankhvāh*, तनज़ाह *tankhāh* f. pay, wages  
 तो *to* as for...  
 थोड़ा *thorā* (a) little  
 दयालु *dayālu* compassionate, kind  
 दवा *davā* f. medicine  
 नदी *nadī* f. river  
 नाव *nāv* f. boat  
 नौकरी *naukarī* f. job, employment  
 पत्र *patr* m. letter (correspondence)  
 पसंद आना *pasand ānā* to appeal to, to be liked  
 पागल *pāgal* mad, crazy  
 पापा *pāpā* m. papa, father  
 पैदल *paidal* on foot  
 प्रधान मंत्री *pradhān mantrī* m. prime minister  
 बचपन *bacpan* m. childhood  
 भरोसा *bharosā* m. trust, reliance  
 महीना *mahinā* m. month  
 मारना *mārnā* to hit, beat, strike  
 मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work  
 मेहनती *mehntī* hard-working  
 याद *yād* f. memory  
 शाम *sām* f. evening  
 शुभकामना *śubhkāmnā* f. good wish  
 शौक *śauq* m. liking, hobby, interest  
 सहित *sahit* with (formal)  
 सादर *sādar* respectful  
 सैर *sair* f. trip  
 हवा *havā* f. air, breeze  
 ही *hī* only (emphatic)

*h*

*ā*

क्या हो रहा है ?

*k*

what's happening?

08

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to make comparisons
- a tense for describing what's going on right now
- how to say *how* things happen

**Language points**

- comparatives and superlatives
- continuous tenses
- adverbs and postpositions

## 1 Comparisons: bigger and smaller

English has two main ways of showing comparisons, firstly as in 'harder' (using an '-er' comparative word) and secondly as in 'more difficult' (using 'more' with the ordinary adjective). Hindi prefers this second type. The word for 'more' is ज़्यादा *zyādā* or और *aur*.

यह होटल ज़्यादा/और अच्छा है ।

*yah hoṭal zyādā/aur acchā hai.* This hotel is better.

वह होटल ज़्यादा/और महँगा है ।

*vah hoṭal zyādā/aur mahāgā hai.* That hotel is more expensive.

When comparing one thing directly to another, the word से *se* 'than' is used, and the ज़्यादा/और *zyādā/aur* can be dropped:

दिल्ली आगरे से बड़ी है ।

*dillī āgre se barī hai.* Delhi is bigger than Agra.

आगरा दिल्ली से छोटा है ।

*āgrā dillī se choṭā hai.* Agra is smaller than Delhi.

'Less' is कम *kam* —

यह कमरा कम अच्छा है ।

*yah kamrā kam acchā hai.* This room is less good.

यह किताब (उस किताब से) कम अच्छी है ।

*yah kitāb (us kitāb se) kam acchī hai.* This book is less good (than that book).

वह होटल (ताज से) कम महँगा है ।

*vah hoṭal (tāj se) kam mahāgā hai.* That hotel is less pricey (than the Taj).

Superlatives follow the model of सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* 'best of all':

यही दवा सबसे अच्छी है ।

*yahī davā sabse acchī hai.* This medicine is the best.

मनोज सबसे बड़ा लड़का है ।

*Manoj sabse barā larḳā hai.* Manoj is the biggest/eldest boy.

राम सबसे छोटा लड़का है ।

*Rām sabse choṭā larḳā hai.* Ram is the smallest/youngest boy.

## ▶ Four children

Answer the questions about these four siblings, shown in age order (Shiv is the eldest).



शिव m.  
Śiv



रीता f.  
Rītā



ओम m.  
Om



शंकर m.  
Śankar

- १ क्या ओम शंकर से बड़ा है ?  
*kyā Om Śankar se barā hai?*
- २ कितने बच्चे रीता से छोटे हैं ?  
*kitne bacce Rītā se choṭe hai?*
- ३ सबसे बड़ा लड़का कौन है ?  
*sabse barā larṅkā kaun hai?*
- ४ सबसे छोटा लड़का कौन है ?  
*sabse choṭā larṅkā kaun hai?*
- ५ ओम कितने बच्चों से बड़ा है ?  
*Om kitne baccō se barā hai?*
- ६ क्या रीता शिव से बड़ी है ?  
*kyā Rītā Śiv se barī hai?*
- ७ क्या रीता ओम से छोटी है ?  
*kyā Rītā Om se choṭī hai?*
- ८ क्या रीता शंकर से छोटी है ?  
*kyā Rītā Śankar se choṭī hai?*
- ९ आपको किस बच्चे की तस्वीर सबसे ज़्यादा पसंद है ?  
*āpko kis bacce kī tasvīr sabse zyādā pasand hai?*

## 2 Continuous tense: '-ing' verbs

'I speak Hindi' (मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *maī hindī boltā hū̃*) describes something that's done regularly or habitually; but 'I am speaking Hindi' describes something that's going on *at the time*. In Hindi, the '-ing' sense is conveyed like this:

मैं हिन्दी बोल रहा हूँ ।

*maī hindī bol rahā hū̃.* I am speaking Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी बोल रहा था ।

*maī hindī bol rahā thā.* I was speaking Hindi.

This is called the 'continuous' tense. It has three elements:

- A the verb stem बोल *bol* (or सीख *sīkh*, कर *kar*, लिख *likh*, कह *kah* etc.) supplies the basic meaning;
- B रहा-रही-रहे *rahā-rahī-rahe* delivers the '-ing' aspect;
- C the auxiliary verb 'to be' (हूँ *hū̃*, है *hai*, था *thā* etc.) confirms the timeframe, i.e. past or present.

Some more examples:

वह रो रही है ।

*vah ro rahī hai.* She is crying.

पिताजी क्यों मुस्करा रहे हैं ?

*pitāji kyō muskarā rahe hai?* Why is Father smiling?

तुम क्यों हँस रहे हो ?

*tum kyō hās rahe ho?* Why are you laughing?

मेरी बहिन कोई हिन्दी फ़िल्म देख रही थी ।

*merī bahin koī hindī film dekh rahī thī.* My sister was watching some Hindi film.

क्या तुम तमिल सीख रहे हो ?

*kyā tum tamil sikh rahe ho?* Are you learning Tamil?

दादी जी गुजराती में कुछ पत्र लिख रही थीं ।

*dādi jī gujarātī mē kuch patr likh rahī thī.* Grandma was writing some letters in Gujarati.

## Geeta phones home

Listen in on a phone conversation between Geeta and Raju with *lots* of verbs in the continuous tense. Here's the new vocabulary:

सहेली *saheli* f. girl's or

woman's female friend

के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the  
company of

कब *kab* when?

देर *der* f. a while, period of time

रात का खाना *rāt kā khānā* m.

dinner

मदद *madad* f. help

आज रात (को) *āj rāt (ko)* tonight

लाना *lānā* to bring

बाप रे बाप *bāp re bāp* Oh God!

गीता हलो राजू, मैं गीता बोल रही हूँ ।<sup>1</sup>

राजू कहाँ से बोल रही हो ?<sup>2</sup>

गीता ताज होटल से ।

राजू तुम क्या कर रही हो वहाँ ?

गीता मैं कुछ सहेलियों के साथ चाय पी रही हूँ !

राजू बच्चे क्या कर रहे हैं ?

गीता वे तो यहाँ बगीचे में खेल रहे हैं ।

राजू तो क्या मनोज भी खेल रहा है ?

गीता नहीं, वह किसी लड़की से बात कर रहा है ।

राजू ओहो ! तुम लोग घर कब आ रहे हो ?<sup>3</sup>

गीता हम अभी आ रहे हैं, थोड़ी देर में । क्यों ?

राजू क्योंकि मैं रात का खाना बना रहा हूँ । मुझे मदद चाहिए ।

गीता क्यों ? आज रात को कोई आ रहा है ?

राजू हाँ, जावेद आ रहा है । उसके कुछ दोस्त<sup>4</sup> भी आ रहे हैं ।

गीता बाप रे बाप ! अच्छा, मैं अभी आती हूँ ।

राजू वहाँ ताज में ज्यादा पैसा मत खर्च करना !

*Gītā halo Rājū, mai Gītā bol rahī hū̃. <sup>1</sup>*

*Rājū kahā se bol rahī ho? <sup>2</sup>*

*Gītā tāj hoṭal se.*

*Rājū tum kyā kar rahī ho vahā?*

*Gītā mai kuch sahelīyō ke sāth cāy pī rahī hū̃!*



**Rājū** *bacce kyā kar rahe hai?*  
**Gītā** *ve to yahā bagīce mẽ khel rahe hai.*  
**Rājū** *to kyā Manoj bhī khel rahā hai?*  
**Gītā** *nahī, vah kisī laṛkī se bāt kar rahā hai.*  
**Rājū** *oho! tum log ghar kab ā rahe ho?*<sup>3</sup>  
**Gītā** *ham abhī ā rahe hai, thoṛī der mẽ. kyō?*  
**Rājū** *kyōki mai rāt kā khānā banā rahā hū. mujhe madad cāhie.*  
**Gītā** *kyō? āj rāt ko koī ā rahā hai?*  
**Rājū** *hā, Jāved ā rahā hai. uske kuch dost*<sup>4</sup> *bhī ā rahe hai.*  
**Gītā** *bāp re bāp! acchā, mai abhī āti hū.*  
**Rājū** *vahā tāj mẽ zyādā paisā mat kharc karnā!*

**Geeta** Hello, Raju, this is Geeta speaking.  
**Raju** Where are you speaking from?  
**Geeta** From the Taj Hotel.  
**Raju** What are you doing there?  
**Geeta** I'm having tea with some friends!  
**Raju** What are the children doing?  
**Geeta** They're playing in the garden here.  
**Raju** So is Manoj playing too?  
**Geeta** No, he's talking to some girl.  
**Raju** Oho! When are you all coming home?  
**Geeta** We're just coming in a little while. Why?  
**Raju** Because I'm making dinner. I need help.  
**Geeta** Why? Is someone coming tonight?  
**Raju** Yes, Javed's coming. Some of his friends are coming too.  
**Geeta** Oh my God! OK, I'm just coming.  
**Raju** Don't spend too much money there in the Taj!

1 This is the usual way of announcing yourself on the phone — 'I Geeta am speaking', i.e. 'This is Geeta'.

2 Remember that a pronoun (here तुम *tum*) can be dropped when context makes it clear who is meant.

3 The continuous tense can be used for the immediate future (as in English) — 'when are you coming home?'.

4 उसके कुछ दोस्त *uske kuch dost* — 'some friends of his'. Note the word order.

## Practise what you've learnt

Look at each picture below, then choose a verb from the list to describe who's doing what. Here's the first answer to show you the format: 1. जावेद पत्र लिख रहा है *Jāved patr likh rahā hai* 'Javed is writing a letter.' Keep an eye on gender and number!

खाना तैयार करना *khānā taiyār karnā* to prepare food

शराब पीना *śarāb pīnā* to drink (alcohol)

ताश खेलना *tāś khelnā* to play cards

पत्र लिखना *patr likhnā* to write a letter

दौड़ना *dauṛnā* to run

बरतन माँजना *bartan mājnā* to wash dishes

सोना *sonā* to sleep

फ़ोन पर बात करना *fon par bāt karnā* to talk on the phone



जावेद  
*Jāved*



दो लड़कियाँ  
*do laṛkiyā*



कोई आदमी  
*koī ādmī*



कुत्ता  
*kuttā*



सीता  
*Sītā*



गीता और राजू  
*Gītā aur Rājū*



राम  
*Rām*



उषा  
*Uṣā*

## ▶ The verbs we've met so far

Now that we're more than halfway through the book, here's a summary of all the verb forms we've seen so far, listed by unit and section. Our example verb here is बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak'.

	GRAMMAR	EXAMPLES
1.2	होना <i>honā</i> 'to be'	है <i>hai</i> , हैं <i>hai</i>
4.1	infinitive	बोलना <i>bolnā</i>
4.1	stem	बोल <i>bol</i>
4.1	command	बोल, बोलो, बोलिए <i>bol, bolo, bolie</i>
4.3	imperfective participle	बोलता <i>boltā</i>
4.3	imperfective present	वह बोलता है <i>vah boltā hai</i>
7.1	imperfective past	वह बोलता था <i>vah boltā thā</i>
8.2	continuous present	वह बोल रहा है <i>vah bol rahā hai</i>
8.2	continuous past	वह बोल रहा था <i>vah bol rahā thā</i>

Now is the time to look back if you need to revise any of these!

## 3 Raju is reading 'his own' newspaper

Consider this statement: 'Javed is sitting in Raju's house; Raju is reading his newspaper.' Hmm: 'his' is ambiguous here — is Raju reading his *own* newspaper or Javed's? Hindi has no such ambiguity, because the pronoun अपना *apnā* replaces उसका *uskā* whenever the sense 'his/her own' is meant:

राजू अपना अखबार पढ़ रहा है ।

*Rājū apnā akhbār parh rahā hai.* Raju is reading his (own) paper.

राजू उसका अखबार पढ़ रहा है ।

*Rājū uskā akhbār parh rahā hai.* Raju is reading his (someone else's) paper.

अपना *apnā* is not restricted to 'his/her', it can mean 'my', 'our', 'your' and so on.

मैं अपना काम कर रहा हूँ ।

*mai apnā kām kar rahā hū.* I am doing my work.

हम अपना काम कर रहे हैं ।

*ham apnā kām kar rahe hai.* We are doing our work.

तुम अपना काम करो !

*tum apnā kām karo.* Do your work!

अपना पैसा लीजिए ।

*apnā paisā lijie.* Please take your money.

When to use अपना *apnā* is a vexing question for all learners of Hindi. As a rule of thumb, it has to be used whenever the 'possessor' is the subject of the main verb. The subjects in the next two sentences (using धोना *dhonā* 'to wash') are मैं *maī* 'I' and वे *ve* 'they' respectively:

मैं अपने कपड़े धो रहा हूँ ।

*maī apne kapṛe dho rahā hū.* I'm washing my clothes.

वे अपने कपड़े नहीं धोते ।

*ve apne kapṛe nahī dhote.* They don't wash their (own) clothes.

## ▶ Revising with Gopal and Jagdish

The difference between the continuous and imperfective tenses should be reasonably clear by now. Here's a dialogue to remind you of the imperfective. A young lad called Gopal comes timidly to Jagdish Sharma's shop looking for work.

नौकरी *naukarī* f. job

पास में *pās mē* nearby

मेहनती *mehnatī* hard-working

जानना *jānnā* to know

ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need; मुझको X

थोड़ा *thorā* a little

की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X kī*

अँग्रेज़ी *āgrezī* f. English

*zarūrat hai* 'I need X'

(language)

मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work

तनखाह *tankhāh* f. pay, wages

गोपाल नमस्ते शर्माजी ।

जगदीश नमस्ते । क्या चाहिए बेटा ?

गोपाल जी, मुझको आपकी दुकान में नौकरी चाहिए ।

जगदीश हाँ, मुझको एक मेहनती लड़के की ज़रूरत तो है ।

गोपाल मैं बहुत मेहनत करता हूँ शर्मा जी !

जगदीश तुम्हारी उम्र कितनी है ?

गोपाल जी, मैं सोलह साल का हूँ ।

जगदीश      कहौं रहते हो ?  
 गोपाल      पास में । हमारा घर यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।  
 जगदीश      क्या तुम पढ़ना-लिखना जानते हो ?  
 गोपाल      जी हाँ, और मुझे थोड़ी अँग्रेजी भी आती है ।  
 जगदीश      ठीक है, कल से आना ।  
 गोपाल      बहुत शुक्रिया । शर्माजी, एक बात बताइए ।  
 जगदीश      बोलो, क्या बात है ?  
 गोपाल      तनख्वाह ... ?  
 जगदीश      यह तुम अभी मत पूछो !

*Gopāl*      *namaste Śarmājī.*  
*Jagdish*      *namaste. kyā cāhie beṭā?*  
*Gopāl*      *jī, mujhko āpkī dukān mẽ naukārī cāhie.*  
*Jagdish*      *hā, mujhko ek mahnatī larke kī zarūrat to hai.*  
*Gopāl*      *maī bahut mehnat kartā hū Śarmā jī!*  
*Jagdish*      *tumhārī umr kitnī hai?*  
*Gopāl*      *jī, maī solah sāl kā hū.*  
*Jagdish*      *kahā rahte ho?*  
*Gopāl*      *pās mẽ. hamārā ghar yahā se dūr nahī hai.*  
*Jagdish*      *kyā tum paṛhnā-likhnā jānte ho?*  
*Gopāl*      *jī hā, aur mujhe thoṛī āgrezī bhī ātī hai.*  
*Jagdish*      *ṭhik hai, kal se ānā.*  
*Gopāl*      *bahut śukriyā. Śarmājī, ek bāt batāie.*  
*Jagdish*      *bolo, kyā bāt hai?*  
*Gopāl*      *tankhvāh...?*  
*Jagdish*      *yah tum abhī mat pūcho!*

*Gopal*      Hello Sharma ji.  
*Jagdish*      Hello. What do you want, son?  
*Gopal*      Sir, I need a job in your shop.  
*Jagdish*      Yes, I do need a hard-working lad.  
*Gopal*      I work very hard, Sharma ji!  
*Jagdish*      How old are you?  
*Gopal*      Sir, I'm sixteen.  
*Jagdish*      Where d'you live?

**Gopal** Nearby. Our house isn't far from here.

**Jagdish** Do you know how to read and write?

**Gopal** Yes, and I know a little English too.\*

**Jagdish** All right, come from tomorrow.

**Gopal** Thank you very much. Sharma ji, please tell me one thing.

**Jagdish** Speak, what is it?

**Gopal** The wages...?

**Jagdish** Don't ask this just now!

\*Literally 'a little English comes to me'. This is a common usage with languages: मुझे उर्दू आती है *mujhe urdū āti hai* 'I know Urdu'; मेरे भाई को चार भाषाएँ आती हैं *mere bhāi ko cār bhāṣāē āti hai* 'my brother knows four languages'. Used with an infinitive verb, this construction means 'knowing how to do something', 'having a skill': मुझे खाना बनाना आता है *mujhe khānā banānā ātā hai*, 'I know how to cook.'

### True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (गलत *galat*)?

Answers below.

- |  | सही<br><i>sahī</i>       | गलत<br><i>galat</i>      |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| १ गोपाल दुकान में कुछ खरीदना चाहता है ।<br><i>Gopāl dukān mẽ kuch <u>kharīdnā</u> cāhtā hai.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ गोपाल दुकान में काम करना चाहता है ।<br><i>Gopāl dukān mẽ kām karnā cāhtā hai.</i>              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ गोपाल को मेहनत करना पसंद नहीं है ।<br><i>Gopāl ko mehnat karnā pasand nahī hai.</i>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ जगदीश को एक लड़के की ज़रूरत है ।<br><i>Jagdīs ko ek lar̥ke kī zarūrat hai.</i>                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ जगदीश गोपाल के बाप से मिलना चाहता है ।<br><i>Jagdīs Gopāl ke bāp se milnā cāhtā hai.</i>       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ गोपाल तनखाह के बारे में जानना चाहता है ।<br><i>Gopāl tan̄khāh ke bāre mẽ jānnā cāhtā hai.</i>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: 2, 4, 5 and 6 are true.

## The PM writes back

Ah, here's the Prime Minister's reply to the letter that Raju wrote when he was little. (For reasons of confidentiality we can't show the signature.)

प्रिय राजू,

तुम जानते हो कि प्रधान मंत्री का जीवन कैसा होता है ?

वह अपने लिए तो कुछ नहीं कर सकता है लेकिन दूसरों के लिए कुछ कर सकता है। तुम अपने भाई की चिंता न

करो। मैं अपने ही डाक्टर से तुम्हारे भाई के लिए कुछ

दवा भिजवा रहा हूँ। अपने अगले पत्र में उसका हाल

लिखना। और अपनी तबियत का भी ध्यान रखना।

तुम्हारा (...)

*priy Rajū,*

*tum jānte ho ki pradhān mantrī kā jīvan kaisā hotā hai?*

*vah apne lie to kuch nahī kar saktā hai lekin dūsrō*

*ke lie kuch kar saktā hai! tum apne bhāi kī cintā na*

*karo. maī apne hī dākṭar se tumhāre bhāi ke lie kuch*

*davā bhijvā rahā hū. apne agle patr mẽ uskā hāl*

*likhnā. aur apnī tabiyat kā bhī dhyān rakhnā.*

*tumhārā (...)*

Dear Raju,

Do you know what a Prime Minister's life is like? He can't do anything for himself but he can do something for others! Don't worry about your brother. I'm getting some medicine sent by my very own doctor. In your next letter write how he is. And take care of your own health too!

Yours (...)

## 4 These days, in and out, up and down

Here are some sentences with adverbs (words or phrases like 'quickly' or 'these days', that describe the *manner* or *context* in which something happens). Look carefully at the words in bold:

इन दिनों तुम क्या कर रहे हो ?

*in dinō tum kyā kar rahe ho?* What are you doing these days?

उस दिन हम काम कर रहे थे ।

*us din ham kām kar rahe the.* That day, we were working.

पिछले हफ्ते मेरी तबियत ख़राब थी ।

*pichle hafte merī tabiyat kharāb thī.* I was unwell last week.

वह अगले महीने घर जा रहा है ।

*vah agle mahīne ghar jā rahā hai.* He's going home next month.

Notice anything? The words in bold print are in the oblique case — as if followed by invisible postpositions. This is usual with adverbs of time; here you have to forget the hard-learned rule that the oblique case is only used when a postposition requires it! Think of the time-words as being haunted by the ghosts of dropped postpositions.

These next sentences involve destinations — 'Agra', 'your house':

हम आगरे जा रहे हैं ।

*ham āgre jā rahe hāi.* We're going to Agra.

वे आपके घर आ रहे हैं ।

*ve āpke ghar ā rahe hāi.* They're coming to your house.

Here the obliques (आगरे *āgre*, oblique of आगरा *āgrā*; and आपके घर *āpke ghar*, oblique of आपका घर *āpkā ghar*) are again haunted by the ghosts of postpositions. To put it another way, the oblique case alone is the equivalent for the English 'to' in these sentences. It's significant that both sentences involve verbs of motion.

Finally, we find something very similar happening in the following sentences, which use आना *ānā* or जाना *jānā* with a sense of purpose:

वे आपसे मिलने आ रहे हैं ।

*ve āpse milne ā rahe hāi.* They're coming to meet you.

हम फ़िल्म देखने जा रहे हैं ।

*ham film dekhne jā rahe hāi.* We're going to see a film.



These sentences have a sense of *purpose* or *intention* which is expressed by the मिलने *milne* and देखने *dekhne* (infinitives ending -e) — as if here too some postposition had been dropped.

## ▶ About adverbs and postpositions

Now here are some more sentences using adverbs. These ones (again shown in bold text) describe place:

मनोज बाहर खड़ा है ।

Manoj **bāhar** kharā hai. Manoj is standing outside.

मीना अंदर बैठी है ।

Mīnā **andar** baiṭhī hai. Meena is sitting inside.

ऊपर देखो ।

**ūpar** dekho. Look up.

नीचे आओ ।

**nīce** āo. Come down.

The thing to notice here is that adverbs and postpositions work differently from each other. Let's take the pair बाहर *bāhar* and के बाहर *ke bāhar*, both meaning 'outside', as an example. बाहर *bāhar* on its own is an adverb that means 'outside' without reference to any other place: वह बाहर खड़ा है *vah bāhar kharā hai* 'he's standing outside'. But के बाहर *ke bāhar* is a postposition that means 'outside in relation to something': मकान के बाहर *makān ke bāhar* 'outside the house'. There are many such pairings: for example, the adverb ऊपर *ūpar* means 'up, upstairs' (ऊपर जाओ *ūpar jāo* 'go up' or 'go upstairs'), while the postposition के ऊपर *ke ūpar* means 'on top of, above' (मेज़ के ऊपर *mez ke ūpar* 'on top of the table').

हमारे मकान के बाहर

*hamāre makān ke bāhar* outside our house

इस कमरे के अंदर

*is kamre ke andar* inside this room

अलमारी के ऊपर

*almāri ke ūpar* on top of the cupboard

इस मेज़ के नीचे

*is mez ke nīce* under this table

There are many such postpositions consisting of two (or even three) words. Grammarians (who are always fond of long names for short things!) call them 'compound postpositions'.

के नज़दीक	<i>ke nazdīk</i>	near
के पास	<i>ke pās</i>	near; in the possession of
के अलावा	<i>ke alāvā</i>	as well as
के यहाँ	<i>ke yahā</i>	at the place of, at X's place
के लिए	<i>ke lie</i>	for
की तरफ़ / ओर	<i>kī taraf / or</i>	towards
की तरह	<i>kī tarah</i>	like

When using these with the pronouns मैं *maī* (मेरे *mere*), तू *tū* (तेरे *tere*), तुम *tum* (तुम्हारे *tumhāre*), हम *ham* (हमारे *hamāre*) and अपना *apnā* (अपने *apne*) the के/की *ke/kī* component is absent:

उनके यहाँ	<i>unke yahā</i>	at their place
मेरे यहाँ	<i>mere yahā</i>	at my place
मकान की ओर	<i>makān kī or</i>	towards the house
हमारी ओर	<i>hamārī or</i>	towards us

You'll find many more of these compound postpositions listed in the Hindi-English glossary under के *ke* and की *kī*.

### Practise what you've learnt

Make up phrases (such as मेरे घर के पीछे *mere ghar ke pīche* 'behind my house') from the following, remembering to make the first column oblique:

कौन <i>kaun</i> [oblique किस <i>kis</i> 'whom']	के लिए <i>ke lie</i> for
मेरा दोस्त <i>merā dost</i>	के बाद <i>ke bād</i> after
वह बड़ा पेड़ <i>vah barā per</i>	की तरह <i>kī tarah</i> like
सोमवार <i>somvār</i>	के पहले <i>ke pahle</i> before
हमारा स्कूल <i>hamārā skūl</i>	के पीछे <i>ke pīche</i> behind
यह होटल <i>yah hoṭal</i>	की तरफ़ <i>kī taraf</i> towards

पुराना स्टेशन *purānā sṭeśan*      के नज़दीक *ke nazdik* near  
मेरा घर *merā ghar*      के नीचे *ke nīce* under, below  
ये लोग *ye log*      के यहाँ *ke yahā* at the place of  
तुम्हारा घर *tumhārā ghar*      के चारों ओर *ke cārō* all around

### Exercise 8a Translate:

- 1 You are not cleverer than them. (clever: होशियार *hośiyār*)
- 2 I (f.) am older than my brother but younger than you.
- 3 My other sister is the cleverest.
- 4 Some people say that Hindi is easier than English.
- 5 Mother thinks that my sister is more beautiful than me.
- 6 Father knows more than Mother but he can't say anything.
- 7 Their house is bigger and more beautiful than ours.
- 8 I am cleverer than you.
- 9 Your language is more difficult than my language.

### Exercise 8b Rewrite these sentences in the continuous tense, translating the rewritten version. (Raju is speaking throughout.)

मैं रेडियो सुनता हूँ ।      मैं रेडियो सुन रहा हूँ ।  
*mai reḍiyo suntā hū̃.      mai reḍiyo sun rahā hū̃.*  
I listen to the radio.      I am listening to the radio.

१० हम लोग अपने दोस्तों को खाना खाने बुलाते हैं ।  
*ham log apne dostō ko khānā khāne bulāte haĩ.*

११ मैं खाना तैयार करता हूँ ।  
*mai khānā taiyār kartā hū̃.*

१२ वे लोग शाम को आते हैं ।  
*ve log śām ko āte haĩ.*

१३ वे अपने बच्चों और दोस्तों को भी लाते हैं ।  
*ve apne baccō aur dostō ko bhī lāte haĩ.*

१४ मेरी पत्नी कहती है कि उनके बच्चे मोती को मारते हैं ।  
*merī patnī kahtī hai ki unke bacce Motī ko mārtē haĩ.*

१५ दादी जी हमारी मदद नहीं करती हैं, सिर्फ रेडियो सुनती हैं ।  
*dādī jī hamārī madad nahī kartī haĩ, sirf reḍiyo suntī haĩ.*

- १६ हमारा कुकर ['cooker'] ठीक से काम नहीं करता ।  
*hamārā kukar ['cooker'] ṭhīk se kām nahī kartā.*
- १७ हमारे दोस्त कहते हैं कि बाथरूम में पानी नहीं आ रहा है ।  
*hamāre dost kahte hāi ki bāthrūm mē pānī nahī ā rahā hai.*

**Exercise 8c** Answer the questions:

- १८ अपने खाली समय में आप क्या करते/करती हैं ?  
*apne khālī samay mē āp kyā karte/kartī hāi?*
- १९ आपको घर पर रहना या बाहर जाना ज़्यादा पसंद है ?  
*āpko ghar par rahnā yā bāhar jānā zyādā pasand hai?*
- २० आप हिन्दी क्यों सीख रहे/रही हैं ?  
*āp hindī kyō sikh rahe/rahī hāi?*
- २१ क्या हिन्दी अँग्रेज़ी से ज़्यादा आसान है ?  
*kyā hindī āgrezī se zyādā āsān hai?*
- २२ क्या आपके कुछ दोस्त भी हिन्दी बोलते हैं ?  
*kyā āpke kuch dost bhī hindī bolte hāi?*
- २३ आज आप क्या कर रहे/रही हैं ?  
*āj āp kyā kar rahe/rahī hāi?*
- २४ आप अपनी छुट्टियों में कहाँ जाते/जाती हैं ?  
*āp apnī chuttiyō mē kahā jāte/jātī hāi?*
- २५ अभी आप क्या सोच रहे/रही हैं ?  
*abhi āp kyā soc rahe/rahī hāi?*

- अंदर *andar* inside  
 अगला *aglā* next  
 अपना *apnā* one's own (my, your, his etc.)  
 आज रात को *āj rāt ko* tonight;  
 आज शाम को *āj sām ko* this evening  
 कब *kab* when?  
 की ओर *kī or* towards  
 की तरफ *kī taraf* towards  
 की तरह *kī tarah* like  
 के अंदर *ke andar* inside  
 के अलावा *ke alāwā* as well as  
 के ऊपर *ke ūpar* above, on top of  
 के नज़दीक *ke nazdīk* near  
 के नीचे *ke nice* below, under  
 के बाहर *ke bāhar* outside  
 के यहाँ *ke yahā* at the place of  
 के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the company of  
 खर्च *kharc m.* expenditure; खर्च करना *kharc karnā* to spend  
 गुजराती *f. Gujarati*  
 ज़रूरत *zarūrat f.* need; मुझको X की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X kī zarūrat hai* I need X  
 जीवन *jīvan m.* life  
 ज़्यादा *zyādā* more, much  
 तमिल *tamil f.* Tamil  
 ताश *m.* playing cards  
 तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared;  
 तैयार करना *taiyār karnā* to prepare  
 थोड़ी देर *thoṛī der f.* a little while  
 दुखी *dukhī* sad  
 दौड़ना *dauṛnā* to run  
 धोना *dhonā* to wash  
 ध्यान रखना *dhyān rakhnā* to pay attention to, look after  
 नीचे *nice* down, downstairs  
 पास में *pās mē* nearby  
 पिछला *pichlā* previous, last  
 प्रिय *priy* dear; 'Dear...' (in informal correspondence)  
 बरतन *bartan m.* dish, utensil  
 बाप रे बाप ! *bāp re bāp!* Oh God!  
 भिजवाना *bhijvānā* to have sent, to cause to be sent  
 मदद *madad f.* help; किसी की मदद करना *kisī kī madad karnā* to help someone  
 माँजना *mājnā f.* to scour, clean  
 मुस्कराना *muskarānā* to smile  
 रात *rāt f.* night; रात का खाना *rāt kā khānā m.* dinner  
 लगना *lagnā* to seem  
 लाना *lānā* to bring  
 रोना *ronā* to cry, weep  
 लाना *lānā* to bring  
 सबसे *sabse* of all (in superlatives, e.g. सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* best, best of all)  
 सही *sahī* correct, true  
 सहेली *sahelī f.* female's female friend  
 हँसना *hāsnā* to laugh  
 हफ़्ता *haftā m.* week  
 होशियार *hoṣiyār* clever

# 09

भविष्य में

*bhavisya*

in the future

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to talk about the future
- how to use 'if' expressions
- how to express doubts and possibilities

**Language points**

- future tenses
- conditional clauses
- subjunctive mood

## 1 The future tense

The future is quite simple in Hindi. We'll begin with 'I will do' and 'you will do', which together will give lots of potential for practice. You already know that 'to do' is करना *karnā*, stem कर *kar* — now here are the future forms:

मैं करूँगा / करूँगी *mai karūgā / karūgī* I will do

आप करेंगे / करेंगी *āp karēge / karēgī* You will do

So the future ending for मैं *mai* is -*ūgā* / -*ūgī*, and the आप *āp* ending is -*ēge* / -*ēgī*.

### What will you do tomorrow?

This pair of dialogues uses the future tense of the verbs रहना *rahnā* 'to stay' and जाना *jānā* 'to go'.

राजू कल आप क्या करेंगे ?

जावेद कल मैं काम करूँगा । आप क्या करेंगे ?

राजू मैं घर पर रहूँगा ।

जावेद आप घर पर क्यों रहेंगे ? काम पर नहीं जाएँगे ?

राजू नहीं, काम पर नहीं जाऊँगा । कल छुट्टी है ।

*Rāju kal āp kyā karēge?*

*Jāved kal mai kām karūgā. āp kyā karēge?*

*Rāju mai ghar par rahūgā.*

*Jāved āp ghar par kyō rahēge? kām par nahī jāēge?*

*Rāju nahī, kām par nahī jāūgā. kal chutti hai.*

गीता कल आप क्या करेंगी ?

उषा कल मैं काम करूँगी । आप क्या करेंगी ?

गीता मैं घर पर रहूँगी ।

उषा आप घर पर क्यों रहेंगी ? काम पर नहीं जाएँगी ?

गीता नहीं, काम पर नहीं जाऊँगी । कल छुट्टी है ।

*Gita kal āp kyā karēgī?*

*Usha kal mai kām karūgī. āp kyā karēgī?*

*Gita mai ghar par rahūgī.*

**Uṣā** āp ghar par kyō rahēgi? kām par nahī jāēgi?

**Gītā** nahī, kām par nahī jāūgi. kal chuṭṭī hai.

**Raju/Geeta** What will you do tomorrow?

**Javed/Usha** Tomorrow I'll work. What will you do?

**Raju/Geeta** I shall stay at home.

**Javed/Usha** Why will you stay at home? Won't you go to work?

**Raju/Geeta** No, I won't go to work. Tomorrow's a holiday.

### ▶ Practise what you've learnt

These questions are for you to answer:

- १ आज रात को आप क्या खाएँगे / खाएँगी ? (खाना to eat)  
āj rāt ko āp kyā khāēge/khāēgi? khānā
- २ ... और क्या पिएँगे / पिएँगी ? (पीना to drink)  
... aur kyā piēge/piēgi? pīnā
- ३ आज आप क्या करेंगे / करेंगी ? (करना to do)  
āj āp kyā karēge/karēgi? karnā
- ४ कल सुबह आप कहाँ जाएँगे / जाएँगी ? (जाना to go)  
kal subah āp kahā jāēge/jāēgi? jānā
- ५ परसों आप किससे मिलेंगे / मिलेंगी ? (मिलना to meet)  
parsō āp kisse milēge/milēgi? milnā

The future with 'they' and 'we' is the same as with आप āp — it ends -ēge / -ēgi.

वे लोग खाना बनाएँगे ।

ve log khānā banāēge. Those people will make food.

ये लोग बीयर लाएँगे ।

ye log biyar lāēge. These people will bring beer.

हम लोग सिर्फ खाएँगे और पियेंगे !

ham log sirf khāēge aur piyēge! We will just eat and drink!

The future tense with 'he, she, it' (and also तू tū 'you') has the ending -ega / -egi —

वह घर जाएगा ।

vah ghar jāegā. He will go home.



वह घर आएगी ।

*vah ghar āegī. She will come home.*

कल कौनसा दिन होगा ?

*kal kaunsā din hogā? What day will it be tomorrow?*

कल सोमवार होगा ।

*kal somvār hogā. Tomorrow will be Monday.*

Finally, the future with तुम *tum* has the ending *-oge / -ogī* —

राजू, तुम चाय पियोगे ?

*Rājū, tum cāy piyoge? Raju, will you have tea?*

गीता, तुम मेरे साथ चलोगी ?

*Gītā, tum mere sāth calogī? Geeta, will you come with me?*

So here's the future tense in all its glory, shown in the verb बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak'.

मैं बोलूंगा / बोलूंगी

*mai bolūgā / bolūgī*

तू बोलेगा / बोलेगी

*tū bolegā / bolegī*

हम बोलेगे / बोलेंगी

*ham bolēge / bolēgī*

तुम बोलोगे / बोलेगी

*tum bologe / bologī*

आप बोलेंगे / बोलेंगी

*āp bolēge / bolēgī*

यह, वह बोलेगा / बोलेगी

*yah, vah bolegā / bolegī*

ये, वे बोलेंगे / बोलेंगी

*ye, ve bolēge / bolēgī*

Once you've become familiar with the form of बोलना *bolnā*, practise the future by using it in other everyday verbs.

### Reported speech and 'would'

In 'reported speech', the future tense gives the sense 'would':

राजू कह रहा था कि वह नाश्ता तैयार करेगा ।

*Rājū kah rahā thā ki vah nāstā taiyār karega. Raju was saying that he would get breakfast ready.*

गीता कह रही थी कि वह आराम करेगी ।

*Gītā kah rahī thī ki vah ārām karegī. Geeta was saying that she would rest.*

मनोज और राम कह रहे थे कि वे जल्दी नहीं उठेंगे ।

*Manoj aur Rām kah rahe the ki ve jaldī nahī̃ uthēge.* Manoj and Ram were saying that they wouldn't get up early.

मोती सोच रहा था कि क्या मुझे भी नाश्ता मिलेगा?

*Motī soc rahā thā ki kyā mujhe bhī nāśtā milegā?* Moti was wondering if he'd get breakfast too.

## ► The days ahead

Manoj is helping Pratap with his Hindi by asking about the coming week.

**मनोज** प्रताप, तुम हफ्ते के दिनों के नाम बताओगे ?

**प्रताप** हाँ, ये हैं — सोमवार, मंगलवार, बुधवार, फिर ... फिर ...

**मनोज** गुरु...

**प्रताप** हाँ ! गुरुवार या बृहस्पतिवार, शुक्रवार, शनिवार, रविवार ।

**मनोज** शाबाश ! कल कौनसा दिन होगा ?

**प्रताप** कल मंगलवार होगा ।

**मनोज** परसों तुम क्या करोगे ?

**प्रताप** परसों, यानी बुधवार को, मैं पिताजी से मिलने जाऊँगा ।

**मनोज** गुरुवार को तुम कहाँ जाओगे ?

**प्रताप** गुरुवार को मैं घर पर रहूँगा ।

**मनोज** शुक्रवार को तुम क्या करोगे ?

**प्रताप** शुक्रवार को मैं अपनी पढ़ाई करूँगा ।

**मनोज** और शनिवार को तुम आराम करोगे ?

**प्रताप** नहीं, शनिवार को मैं बाहर जाऊँगा और मजे करूँगा !

*Manoj* Pratāp, tum hafte ke dinō ke nām batāoge?

*Pratāp* hā, ye hai — somvār, mangalvār, budhvār, phir... phir...

*Manoj* guru...

*Pratāp* hā! guruvār yā bṛhaspativār, śukravār, śanivār, ravivār.

*Manoj* śābāś! kal kaunsā din hogā?

*Pratāp* kal mangalvār hogā.

**Manoj** *parsō tum kyā karoge?*

**Pratāp** *parsō, yānī budhvār ko, māi pitājī se milne jāūgā.*

**Manoj** *gurvār ko tum kahā jāoge?*

**Pratāp** *gurvār ko māi ghar par rahūgā.*

**Manoj** *śukravār ko tum kyā karoge?*

**Pratāp** *śukravār ko māi apnī parhāi karūgā.*

**Manoj** *aur śanivar ko tum ārām karoge?*

**Pratāp** *nahī, śanivār ko māi bāhar jāūgā aur maze karūgā!*

**Manoj** Pratap, will you tell [me] the names of the days of the week?

**Pratap** Yes, they are... *somvār, mangalvār, budhvār*, then... then...

**Manoj** *guru...*

**Pratap** Yes! *gurvār* or *bṛhaspativār, śukravār, śanivār, ravivār*.

**Manoj** Bravo! What day will it be tomorrow?

**Pratap** Tomorrow will be Tuesday.

**Manoj** What will you do the day after tomorrow?

**Pratap** The day after tomorrow, that is on Wednesday, I'll go to meet Father.

**Manoj** Where will you go on Thursday?

**Pratap** On Thursday I'll stay at home.

**Manoj** What will you do on Friday?

**Pratap** On Friday I'll do my studying.

**Manoj** And on Saturday you'll rest?

**Pratap** No, on Saturday I'll go out and enjoy myself!

### **Geeta's diary**

Your next task is to fill Geeta's appointment diary for the coming week, based on what she tells you below (notice that she sometimes uses abbreviation for the names of the days). Write the activity using an infinitive verb — Monday has already been completed as an example of the format to use.

आज सोम है; आज मैं घर पर रहूँगी । कल, यानी मंगल को, हम लोग दिल्ली जाएँगे । परसों, यानी बुध को, हम अपने मकान के लिए कुछ चीजें खरीदने जाएँगे । गुरुवार को हम घर वापस आएँगे । शुक्रवार को मैं आराम करूँगी । शनिवार की रात को हम सीता के यहाँ जाएँगे । रविवार को मैं अगले हफ्ते की तैयारियाँ करूँगी ।

āj som hai; āj māī ghar par rahūgi. kal, yāni mangal ko, ham log dillī jāēge. parsō, yāni budh ko, ham apne makān ke lie kuch cizē kharīdne jāēge. guruvār ko ham ghar vāpas āēge. śukravār ko māī ārām karūgi. śanivār kī rāt ko ham Sītā ke yahā jāēge. ravivār ko māī agle hafte kī taiyāriyā karūgi.

Today is Monday; today I'll stay at home. Tomorrow, i.e. on Tuesday, we'll go to Delhi. The day after, i.e. on Wednesday, we'll go to buy some things for our house. On Thursday we'll come back home. On Friday I'll rest. On Saturday night we'll go to Sita's. On Sunday I'll get ready for next week.



सोमवार <i>somvār</i>	घर पर रहना <i>ghar par rahnā</i>
मंगलवार <i>mangalvār</i>	
बुधवार <i>budhvār</i>	
गुरुवार <i>guruvār</i>	
शुक्रवार <i>śukravār</i>	
शनिवार <i>śanivār</i>	
रविवार <i>ravivār</i>	

## 2 Ifs and maybes

The sentence आप घर जाएँगे *āp ghar jāēge* means 'you'll go home'. It's a positive statement of something that is clear, certain, definite. But if we remove the last syllable of जाएँगे *jāēge*, we are left with आप घर जाएँ *āp ghar jāē* — which means 'you should go home' (suggestion) or 'you might go home' (possibility) or even 'you may go home' (permission). We've cut off the *certainly* of the verb with its last syllable.

This form of the verb is called the 'subjunctive': it expresses a sense of uncertainty, possibility, permission, suggestion, and similar indefinite, imagined or tentative senses. As we've just seen, it's formed by lopping off the last syllable of the future tense; the distinction between masculine and feminine is lost as a result. You'll often find words like अगर *agar* 'if', शायद *śāyad* 'maybe, perhaps' or ज़रूर *zarūr* 'of course' lurking nearby. All the verbs in this next dialogue are in the subjunctive.

## ► Javed calls on Raju

जावेद मैं अंदर आऊँ ?

राजू जी हाँ, जी हाँ, आप ज़रूर आएँ !

जावेद मैं कहाँ बैठूँ ?

राजू आप इधर बैठें । मैं चाय बनाऊँ ?

जावेद अगर आप चाहें । या हम बाहर जाएँ ?

राजू नहीं, हम घर पर ही रहें ।

*Jāved* *mai andar āū?*

*Rājū* *jī hā, jī hā, āp zarūr āē.*

*Jāved* *mai kahā baiṭhū?*

*Rājū* *āp idhar baiṭhē. mai cāy banāū?*

*Javed* *agar āp cāhē. yā ham bāhar jāē?*

*Rājū* *nahī, ham ghar par hī rahē.*

*Javed* May I come in?

*Raju* Yes yes, of course you may come in! [Do come in!]

*Javed* Where should I sit?

*Raju* Please sit over here. Should I make tea?

*Javed* If you wish. Or should we go out?

*Raju* No, let's stay at home.

Sentences involving an 'if' are quite likely to use a subjunctive verb, but verb forms such as a future tense are also possible:

अगर वह "हाँ" कहे तो हम शादी करेंगे ।

*agar vah 'hā' kahe to ham śādī karēge.* If she says 'yes', then we'll marry. (Subjunctive *kahe* — don't count on her agreement.)

अगर वह “हाँ” कहेगी तो हम शादी करेंगे ।

*agar vah 'hā' kahegi to ham śādī karēge.* If she says 'yes', then we'll marry. (Future *kahegi* — book the photographer!)

These two sentences show how Hindi pairs an अगर *agar* clause with a तो *to* clause: 'If X, then Y'.

### A suggestion or a command?

A subjunctive verb blurs the boundary between a suggestion and a command, offering a nicely diplomatic way of getting someone to comply with your wishes:

आप थोड़ी देर बैठे रहें ।

*āp thoṛī der baiṭhe rahē.* Kindly remain seated for a while.

कृपया गिलास में हाथ न धोएँ ।

*kṛpayā gilās mē hāth na dhoē.* Please do not wash your hands in the tumbler. (Restaurant sign.)

### I want to... / I want you to...

Look closely at the difference between the following pair of sentences. How many people are involved in each one?

मैं कुछ कहना चाहता हूँ ।

*mai kuch kahnā cāhtā hū.* I want to say something.

मैं चाहता हूँ कि आप कुछ कहें ।

*mai cāhtā hū ki āp kuch kahē.* I want you to say something.

The first sentence involves 'Person A' doing both the wanting and the speaking; the construction uses चाहना *cāhnā* 'to want' with an infinitive verb (here कहना *kahnā* 'to say'). The second involves 'Person A' wanting 'Person B' to do something: the construction uses चाहना *cāhnā* 'to want' with a subjunctive verb (here कहें *kahē*). The two clauses are linked by कि *ki* 'that'. Here are two more examples:

मैं चाहता हूँ कि वे यहाँ रहें ।

*mai cāhtā hū ki ve yahā rahē.* I want them to stay here.

वे चाहते हैं कि मैं यहाँ रहूँ ।

*ve cāhte hai ki mai yahā rahū.* They want me to stay here.

## ▶ Practise what you've learnt

Over to you. Make sentences by combining a phrase from the left-hand list with a phrase from the right-hand list, giving meanings such as 'I want you to rest'. All the verbs in the right-hand list are subjunctive.

मैं चाहता हूँ कि ... <i>mai cāhtā hū ki ...</i>	... आप आराम करें । <i>... āp ārām karē.</i>
हम चाहते थे कि ... <i>ham cāhte hai ki ...</i>	... तुम हमारे यहाँ ठहरो । <i>... tum hamāre yahā̃ thahro.</i>
वे चाहते हैं कि ... <i>ve cahte hai ki ...</i>	... तुम्हारा दोस्त भी आए । <i>... tumhārā dost bhī āe.</i>
वह चाहता है कि ... <i>vah cāhtā hai ki ...</i>	... तुम जाने की तैयारियाँ करो । <i>... tum jāne kī taiyāriyā̃ karo.</i>
मैं चाहती थी कि ... <i>mai cāhtī thī ki ...</i>	... वह अपना काम करे । <i>... vah apnā kām kare.</i>
मेरी बहिन चाहती है कि ... <i>merī bahin cāhtī hai ki ...</i>	... तुम खाना बनाओ । <i>... tum khānā banāo.</i>

## 3 So that, in order that

The conjunction (or 'linking word') ताकि *tāki* means 'so that, in order that', and is always followed by a subjunctive verb:

मैं उठूँगा ताकि दूसरे लोग बैठें । <i>mai uṭhūgā tāki dūsre log baiṭhē.</i>	I'll get up so that others may sit.
अभी आइए ताकि हम काम शुरू करें । <i>abhi āie tāki ham kām śurū karē.</i>	Come right now so that we can start work.
जल्दी उठो ताकि देरी न हो । <i>jaldī uṭho tāki derī na ho.</i>	Get up early so that there won't be any delay.
हम धीरे धीरे बोलेंगे ताकि वे हमारी बात समझें । <i>ham dhīre dhīre bolēge tāki ve hamārī bāt samjhē.</i>	We'll speak slowly so that they understand what we say.

### Did you know?

The official Indian name for India is भारत *bhārat* or भारतवर्ष *bhāratvarṣ*. Many people use हिन्दुस्तान *hindustān* instead, though this can sometimes be taken to imply 'northern India' only. The word हिन्द *hind* is now mostly limited to formulas such as जय हिन्द ! *jay hind!* ('Victory to India!' — once used as a nationalistic greeting) and to terms such as हिन्द महासागर *hind mahāsāgar* 'Indian Ocean'. Another common option is इंडिया *iṇḍiyā*, whose retroflex consonants show that it has been re-imported through English.

Words such as 'India', 'Hindi' and 'Hindu' all derive from the name of the Indus river; its Sanskrit name is सिंधु *sindhu*, but the Sanskrit 's' becomes 'h' in Persian. The word हिन्दी *hindī* is itself Persian in origin.

## 4 How long does it take?

To say 'how long something takes', Hindi uses the versatile verb लगना *lagnā*, here referring to the 'time taken':

एक घंटा लगता है ।

*ek ghaṇṭā lagtā hai.* It takes one hour.

दस मिनट लगते हैं ।

*das minaṭ lagte hai.* It takes ten minutes.

दो दिन लगेंगे ।

*do din lagēge.* It'll take two days.

Notice how the verb agrees with the unit of time — 'one hour' (singular) 'ten minutes' (plural), etc. To specify the *action done* within the particular time frame, add an infinitive plus में *mē*, as in किताब लिखने में *kitāb likhne mē* 'in writing the book':

किताब लिखने में एक साल लगेगा ।

*kitāb likhne mē ek sāl lagegā.* It'll take a year to write the book.

घर जाने में दो घंटे लगते हैं ।

*ghar jāne mē do ghaṇṭe lagte hai.* It takes two hours to get home.

यह काम ख़त्म करने में मुझे डेढ़ घंटा लगेगा ।

*yah kām khatm karne mē mujhe ḍeṛh ghaṇṭā lagegā.* It'll take me an hour and a half to finish this work.





**Exercise 9a** Match up the अगर *agar* (1–6) and तो *to* (A–F) clauses to make meaningful sentences, then translate them.

135

in the future

60

- १ अगर सब्जी-मंडी आज बंद हो ...  
*agar sabzī-maṇḍī āj band ho ...*
- २ अगर तुम्हें रास्ता नहीं मालूम ...  
*agar tumhẽ rāstā nahī mālūm ...*
- ३ अगर आप किसी शब्द का मतलब नहीं जानते ...  
*agar āp kisi śabd kā matlab nahī jānte ...*
- ४ अगर गोलचक्कर पर पुलिसवाला न मिले ...  
*agar golcakkār par pulisvālā na mile...*
- ५ अगर होटल में कमरा न मिले ...  
*agar hoṭal mẽ kamrā na mile ...*
- ६ अगर आप उस तंग गली में मुड़ेगे ...  
*agar āp us tang galī mẽ muṛēge ...*

- A ... तो आप मेरे यहाँ रहें ।  
... *to āp mere yahā rahē.*
- B ... तो थाने पर जाओ ।  
... *to thāne par jāo.*
- C ... तो शब्दकोश में देखिए ।  
... *to śabdkoś mẽ dekhie.*
- D ... तो नक्शा खरीदना ।  
... *to naqśā kharīdnā.*
- E ... तो कल सुबह को सब्जी लेना ।  
... *to kal subah ko sabzī lenā.*
- F ... तो बायें हाथ पर ढाबा दिखाई देगा ।  
... *to bāyē hāth par dhābā dikhāi degā.*

**Exercise 9b** You have just arrived at a hotel where you will be staying for several days. Do as instructed:

- 7 Tell the hotel receptionist that you need a room for two people and that you will stay for three days.

- 8 Say that some friends will come to meet you this evening.
- 9 Ask what will be available for breakfast (नाश्ते में *nāšte mē*).
- 10 Ask whether dinner will be available as well.
- 11 Ask how long it will take to go on foot from the hotel to the cinema.
- 12 Tell the receptionist that you would like to phone London; ask if you can phone from your room.
- 13 Say that next week you will go to Agra and Delhi.
- 14 Ask if your friends can eat with you in the hotel tonight.

### Exercise 9c Translate into Hindi:

- 15 Tomorrow is Saturday, so we'll go out.
- 16 We were thinking that we would go to the cinema.
- 17 My brother was saying that he would stay at home.
- 18 If you wish, come with us.
- 19 We'll go early so that we can get good seats [सीट *sīt* f.].
- 20 If it's raining we'll go by car.

### Glossary

अगर <i>agar</i> if	गिलास <i>gilās</i> m. tumbler
आराम <i>ārām</i> m. rest; आराम करना <i>ārām karnā</i> to rest	गुस्वार <i>guruvar</i> m. Thursday
इधर <i>idhar</i> here, over here; इधर-उधर <i>idhar-udhar</i> here and there, hither and thither	गोलचक्कर <i>golcakkār</i> m. roundabout
इमारत <i>imārat</i> f. building	घंटा <i>ghaṇṭā</i> m. hour
उठना <i>uṭhnā</i> to get up, rise	ठंड <i>ṭhaṇḍ</i> f. cold; ठंड लगना <i>ṭhaṇḍ lagnā</i> to feel cold
उधर <i>udhar</i> there, over there	थहरना <i>ṭhaharnā</i> to stay, remain
कृपया <i>kṛpayā</i> please (formal)	ताकि <i>tāki</i> so that, in order that
ओर <i>or</i> f. side, direction	तैयारी <i>taiyārī</i> f. preparation
के चारों तरफ़ <i>ke cārō taraf</i> all around	देरी <i>derī</i> f. delay
के सामने <i>ke sāmne</i> opposite	नक्शा <i>naqṣā</i> m. map, plan
गली <i>galī</i> f. lane, narrow street	नाश्ता <i>nāštā</i> m. breakfast
	पढ़ाई <i>parhāī</i> f. studies, studying

परसों *parsō* two days away  
(day after tomorrow; day  
before yesterday)

पहुँचना *pahūcnā* to reach, arrive  
पुलिसवाला *pulisvālā* m.  
policeman

बंद *band* closed, shut

बीयर *bīyar* f. beer

बुधवार *budhvar* m. Wednesday

बेहतर *behtar* better

मंगलवार *maṅgalvār* f. Tuesday

मज़ा *mazā* m. enjoyment, fun;  
मज़े करना *maze karnā* to enjoy  
oneself, have fun

मतलब *matlab* m. meaning

मुड़ना *murnā* to turn

रविवार *ravivār* m. Sunday

लगना *lagnā* time to be taken;  
घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक  
घंटा लगता है *ghar jāne mē 10*  
*minat lagte hai / ek ghaṇṭā*  
*lagtā hai* It takes 10 minutes  
/ one hour to get home

वापस *vāpas* 'back' in वापस  
आना/जाना/देना *vāpas*  
*ānā/jānā/denā* to  
come/go/give back

शनिवार *śanivār* m. Saturday

शब्द *śabd* m. word

शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m. dictionary

शादी *śādī* f. wedding,  
marriage; शादी करना *śādī*  
*karnā* to marry

शाबाश *śābāś* bravo

शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday

सब्ज़ी *sabzī* f. vegetable(s);  
सब्ज़ी मंडी *sabzī maṇḍī* f.  
vegetable market

सब्ज़ीवाला *sabzivālā* m.  
vegetable seller

सुबह *subah* f. morning

*hua?*

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to describe past events
- how to link connected actions in a sequence

**Language points**

- perfective tenses
- transitivity
- absolutes

10

क्या हुआ ?

*kyā*

what happened?

## 1 The past tense

139

What happened?

10

So far we've seen two kinds of past tense: 'imperfective' (describing *routine or habitual events* of the 'I used to' type), and 'continuous' (describing *actions in progress* of the 'I was doing' type). Here's an example of each to remind you:

मैं दौड़ता था ।

*mai daurtā thā.* I used to run.

मैं दौड़ रहा था ।

*mai daur rahā thā.* I was running.

The new tense we're going to look at now is this:

मैं दौड़ा ।

*mai daurā.* I ran.

This describes a *completed* action in the past, and is called the 'perfective' tense. It uses a 'perfective participle' consisting of verb stem plus *-ā / -e / -ī / -ī̃*. Thus दौड़ा *daurā* 'ran', बोला *bolā* 'spoke', हँसा *hāsā* 'laughed', उठा *uthā* 'got up', पहुँचा *pahūcā* 'arrived', and so on.

Look carefully at the verb endings in the following three sentences, making sure you can see how they agree with their subjects (for example, the first one is feminine singular to agree with 'Meena'):

मीना घर पहुँची ।

*Minā ghar pahūncī.* Meena arrived home.

फिर मनोज और राज पहुँचे ।

*phir Manoj aur Rājū pahūce.* Then Manoj and Raju arrived.

बाद में गीता और सीता पहुँचीं ।

*bād mē Gītā aur Sītā pahūcī̃.* Later Geeta and Sita arrived.

Before going any further, practise using the verbs बोलना *bolnā* and उठना *uthnā* (or any others given above) with a range of different subjects, paying attention to the agreements of gender and number.

### Coming and going

You're probably thinking this is all too easy. And you're right: it's time to introduce an exception! The participle from जाना *jānā* 'to go' is गया / गए / गई / गई — *gayā / gae / gai / gaĩ*. (Don't confuse this with गाया *gāyā* etc., from गाना *gānā* to sing.)

मीना स्कूल गई, मनोज बाहर गया, राजू और राम बाज़ार गए,  
गीता और सीता सिनेमा गई ।

*Mīnā skūl gaī, Manoj bāhar gayā, Rājū aur Rām bāzār gae, Gītā aur Sītā sinemā gaī.* Meena went to school, Manoj went out, Raju and Ram went to the market, Geeta and Sita went to the cinema.

Participles for the verb आना *ānā* 'to come' are आया, आए, आई, आई *āyā, āe, āī, āī*. Notice how the masculine singular आया *āyā* has a 'y' between the stem and the ending. All verbs with -ā stems do this.

### What happened then?

The perfective from होना *honā* 'to be, to happen' is हुआ, हुए, हुई, हुई *huā, hue, huī, huī*, 'happened'.

तब क्या हुआ ?

*tab kyā huā ?* What happened then?

एक दुर्घटना हुई ।

*ek durghaṭṇā huī.* An accident happened. (There was an accident.)

### Practise what you've learnt

This is all quite easy to understand, but you'll only really learn it when you use it. So make up some short subject-plus-verb sentences using Meena and anyone else (as in the long sentence at the top of this page) as subjects, combined with the following verbs:

आना	<i>ānā</i>	to come
जाना	<i>jānā</i>	to go
उठना	<i>uṭhnā</i>	to get up
दौड़ना	<i>daurnā</i>	to run
पहुँचना	<i>pahūcnā</i>	to arrive
हँसना	<i>hāsnā</i>	to laugh

Now answer these questions with the data supplied on the right:

- |   |                               |              |
|---|-------------------------------|--------------|
| १ | मनोज कहाँ गया ?               | घर           |
|   | <i>Manoj kahā gayā?</i>       | <i>ghar</i>  |
| २ | राजू और राम कहाँ गए ?         | बाहर         |
|   | <i>Rājū aur Rām kahā gae?</i> | <i>bāhar</i> |

३	सीता कहाँ गई ? <i>Sītā kahā̃ gai?</i>	दिल्ली <i>dilli</i>
४	क्या हुआ ? <i>kyā huā?</i>	कुछ नहीं <i>kuch nahī</i>
५	मीना कब पहुँची ? <i>Mīnā kab pahūcī?</i>	कल <i>kal</i>
६	दादीजी कब आई ? <i>dādiji kab āī?</i>	परसों <i>parsō</i>
७	मनोज कब आया ? <i>Manoj kab āyā?</i>	मंगलवार को <i>mangalvār ko</i>

## 2 Transitivity

In the perfective, Hindi verbs follow two different patterns depending on whether they are 'intransitive' or 'transitive'. A transitive verb describes an action done to an object, as in 'We drank coffee' (in which the drinking was a process done by us to the coffee). We can test its transitivity by asking a question about the object: 'What did we drink?'. By contrast, an *intransitive* verb simply describes an action occurring, with no object being involved, as in 'we arrived', or 'I got up'; here we can't make questions like 'What did we arrive' or 'What did I get up', so these verbs don't pass the transitivity test.

The Hindi verbs we've used so far in this unit have all been intransitive; but it's time now to move on transitive verbs, which behave differently in the past tense. Look very closely at the constructions of the following four sentences (a hint: किताब *kitāb* is feminine, अखबार *akhbār* is masculine):

राजू ने किताब पढ़ी ।

*Rājū ne kitāb paṛhī.* Raju read a book.

राजू ने दोनों किताबें पढ़ीं ।

*Rājū ne donō kitābē paṛhī.* Raju read both books.

गीता ने अखबार पढ़ा ।

*Gītā ne akhbār paṛhā.* Geeta read a newspaper.

गीता ने दोनों अखबार पढ़े ।

*Gītā ne donō akhbār paṛhe.* Geeta read both newspapers.

Well, you should have noticed that the verbs agree with the 'book/books' and 'newspaper/newspapers' rather than with their readers! And also that the readers have sprouted an untranslatable postposition, *ne*. This is how transitive verbs always operate in the perfective. A verb that has no object for the verb to agree with stays in the masculine singular:

राम ने खाया । मीनू ने खाया ।

*Rām ne khāyā. Mīnū ne khāyā. Ram ate. Meenu ate.*

Because we're not told *what* they ate, the verb stays as खाया *khāyā*.

### ► What happened at the party?

There was a party at the Sharmas' house. Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verb supplied on the right. The agreement of the verb will be with the *subject* if there's no *ne* construction, but with the *object* if there *is* a *ने ne* construction. Answers below.

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| १ गीता ने बढ़िया खाना ...                | बनाना to make  |
| <i>Gītā ne baṛhiyā khānā ...</i>         | <i>banānā</i>  |
| २ मीना की दो सहेलियाँ पार्टी में ...     | आना to come    |
| <i>Mīnā kī do saheliyāṅ pāṛṭī mẽ ...</i> | <i>ānā</i>     |
| ३ मनोज के कई दोस्त भी ...                | आना to come    |
| <i>Manoj ke kāi dost bhī ...</i>         | <i>ānā</i>     |
| ४ गीता की सहेली ने सितार ...             | बजाना to play  |
| <i>Gītā kī saheli ne sitār...</i>        | <i>bajānā</i>  |
| ५ फिर मोती ज़ोर से ...                   | भौंकना to bark |
| <i>phir Moti zor se ...</i>              | <i>bhaūknā</i> |
| ६ राजू ने पाँच समोसे ...                 | खाना to eat    |
| <i>Rājū ne pāc samose ...</i>            | <i>khānā</i>   |
| ७ सब लोग बड़ी देर तक ...                 | रहना to stay   |
| <i>sab log baṛī der tak ...</i>          | <i>rahnā</i>   |
| ८ दूसरे दिन बच्चे देर से ...             | उठना to get up |
| <i>dūsre din bacce der se ...</i>        | <i>uṭhnā</i>   |

**Answers:** 1 बनाया *banāyā*; 2 आई *āī*; 3 आए *āe*; 4 बजाया *bajāyā*; 5 भौका *bhaūkā*; 6 खाए *khāe*; 7 रहे *rahe*; 8 उठे *uṭhe*.



# How many did you see?

Make up sentences on the model of मैंने एक मकान देखा *maïne ek makān dekhā* 'I saw one house', to reflect the following objects:

1



2



3



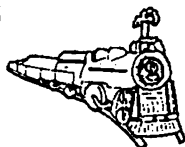
4



5



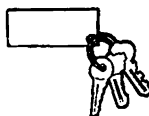
6



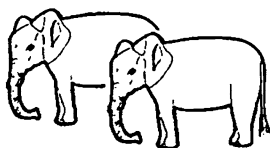
7



8



9



10



11



12



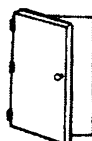
13



14



15



16



Check the back of the book for the answers.

## Some special pronouns...

Some pronouns have special oblique forms for the *ने ne* construction:

PRONOUN	USUAL OBLIQUE	SPECIAL FORM + ने <i>ne</i>
मैं <i>mai</i>	मुझ <i>mujh</i>	मैंने <i>maine</i>
तू <i>tū</i>	तुझ <i>tujh</i>	तूने <i>tūne</i>
ये <i>ye</i>	इन <i>in</i>	इन्होंने <i>inhōne</i>
वे <i>ve</i>	उन <i>un</i>	उन्होंने <i>unhōne</i>

## And some special verbs

Some very common verbs have irregular participles:

करना <i>karnā</i> 'to do': किया, किए, की, कीं <i>kiyā, kie, kī, kī</i> 'did'
देना <i>denā</i> 'to give': दिया, दिए, दी, दीं <i>diyā, die, dī, dī</i> 'gave'
लेना <i>lenā</i> 'to take': लिया, लिए, ली, लीं <i>liyā, lie, lī, lī</i> 'took'
पीना <i>pinā</i> 'to drink': पिया, पिए, पी, पीं <i>piyā, pie, pī, pī</i> 'drank'

## What did Geeta see?

Now answer the questions using the data supplied on the right (with which the verb must agree!):

१ गीता ने क्या देखा ? <i>Gītā ne kyā dekhā?</i>	एक नई फिल्म <i>ek nai film</i>
२ राजू ने क्या खरीदा ? <i>Rājū ne kyā kharidā?</i>	दो अखबार <i>do akhbār</i>
३ मोती ने क्या खाया ? <i>Motī ne kyā khāyā?</i>	दस चपातियाँ <i>das chapātiyā</i>
४ मीना ने क्या पढ़ा ? <i>Mīnā ne kyā paṛhā?</i>	दो कहानियाँ <i>do kahāniyā</i>
५ हमने कितने कुरते खरीदे ? <i>hamne kitne kurte kharide?</i>	चार <i>cār</i>
६ उन्होंने मेज़ पर क्या रखा ? <i>unhōne mez par kyā rakhā?</i>	कुछ किताबें <i>kuch kitābē</i>
७ आपने दीवार पर क्या लिखा ? <i>āpne dīvar par kyā likhā?</i>	अपना नाम <i>apnā nam</i>

८ तुमने क्या सुना ?  
*tumne kyā sunā?*

कई बातें  
*kaī bātē*

९ तुमने कितनी भाषाएँ सीखीं ?  
*tumne kitnī bhāṣāē sikhī?*

एक ही  
*ek hī*

All verbs that take the ने *ne* construction are shown with <sup>N</sup> in the English-Hindi glossary (e.g. देखना *dekhnā<sup>N</sup>*) at the end of the book. The construction itself may take some time to digest — like Moti's ten chapatties.

### A particular object

Back in section 7.2 we saw that को *ko* is often added to an object that's particularized in some way. (Turn back to 7.2 now if you've forgotten this.) If को *ko* is added to the object of a ने *ne* verb, then the verb reverts to a masculine singular.

राम ने चपाती को खाया ।

*Rām ne chapātī ko khāyā.* Ram ate the chapatti.

मैंने उनके बच्चों को देखा ।

*maīne unke baccō ko dekhā.* I saw their children.

उसने किताबों को पढ़ा ।

*usne kitābō ko parhā.* He/she read the books.

The verbs in these three sentences all end in -ā (खाया *khāyā*, देखा *dekhā*, पढ़ा *parhā*) because in each one the presence of को *ko* insulates the verb from its object.

## 3 Other perfective tenses

In English we differentiate time frames by saying 'I wrote, have written, had written, will have written' etc. Similarly in Hindi, all three kinds of perfective verbs can be used in different time frames by adding auxiliary verbs (है *hai*, था *thā* etc.):

A राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी ।

*Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī.* Raju wrote a letter.

B राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी है ।

*Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī hai.* Raju has written a letter.

- C राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी थी ।  
*Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī thī.* Raju had written a letter (or wrote it some time ago).
- D राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी होगी ।  
*Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī hogī.* Raju will have written a letter.
- E राजू ने चिट्ठी लिखी हो ।  
*Rājū ne ciṭṭhī likhī ho.* Raju may have written a letter.

## COMMENTARY

- A लिखी *likhī*, no auxiliary verb; it's the simple past.
- B लिखी है *likhī hai*, 'has written' (है *hai* is singular because चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* is singular), suggesting that the effect of the writing is still felt in the present.
- C लिखी थी *likhī thī* (both words are feminine singular, to agree with चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī*), suggesting that the action happened some time earlier.
- D लिखी होगी *likhī hogī* 'will have written', either referring to some future time (such as 'Raju will have written a letter by Monday'), or making an assumption about the present (such as 'Presumably Raju will have written a letter by now').
- E लिखी हो *likhī ho* 'may have written', in which the subjunctive हो *ho* shows that the matter is open to some doubt.

The same range can be used with any perfective verb:

पिताजी मिठाई लाए हैं/ थे ।

*pitājī miṭhāī lāe hai/ the.* Father has/had brought sweets.

पिताजी मिठाई लाए होंगे/ हों ।

*pitājī miṭhāī lāe hōge.* Father will/may have brought sweets.

In the above, the verbs agree with पिताजी *pitājī* (masculine honorific plural) because लाना *lānā*, though transitive, is *not* a ने *ne* verb.

मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई हैं/ थीं ।

*Motī ne das chapātiyāṁ khāī hai/ thī.* Moti has/had eaten ten chapatties.

मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाई होंगी/हों ।

*Motī ne das chapātiyāṁ khāī hōgī/ hō.* Moti will/may have eaten ten chapatties.

Here's Raju's account of his morning, following an evening when he and Geeta had been to see a Hindi film starring Shahrukh Khan. Make sure you can understand all the verb agreements!



आज सुबह मैं पाँच बजे उठा ।  
थोड़ी देर के लिए मैं आँगन में  
बैठा । कल शाम को जब हम  
शाहरुख ख़ाँ की नई फिल्म  
देखने सिनेमा गए तो बारिश  
हुई थी लेकिन आज मैंने देखा  
कि आकाश साफ़ है ।\* सुबह  
के समय चारों ओर शान्ति  
होती है । मुझे सुबह का समय  
बहुत पसंद है ।

मैंने अपने लिए चाय बनाई । चाय पीने के बाद मैंने अपनी पत्नी  
को जगाया । चाय बनाना तो दो मिनट का काम है लेकिन  
मेमसाहब को जगाना दूसरी बात है । आखिर में जब वह नीचे आई  
तो मैंने उसका नाश्ता तैयार किया । मैं तो नाश्ता कभी नहीं  
खाता, लेकिन गीता ज़रूर खाती है । मैंने उसके लिए दो टोस्ट  
बनाए । उसने चाय पी, आधा केला भी खाया । उसने शिकायत  
की कि चाय में चीनी ज़्यादा है ।\* मैंने कहा कि तुम्हारी जिन्दगी  
में थोड़ी मिठास की ज़रूरत है ।\*

*āj subah māī pāc baje uṭhā. thoṛī der ke lie māī āgan mē baiṭhā.  
kal śām ko jab ham Śāhrukh Khā ki nāī film dekhne sinemā gae  
to bārīs hui thī lekin āj māīne dekhā ki ākāś sāf hai.\* subah ke  
samay cārō or śānti hotī hai. mujhe subah kā samay bahut pasand  
hai.*

*māīne apne lie cāy banāī. cāy pīne ke bād māīne apnī patnī ko  
jagāyā. cāy banāna to do mināṭ kā kām hai lekin memsāhib ko  
jagānā dūsri bāt hai. ākhīr mē jab vah nīce āī to māīne uskā nāstā  
taiyār kiyā. māī to nāstā kabhī nahī khātā, lekin Gītā zarūr khātī  
hai. māīne uske lie do toṣṭ banāe. usne cāy pī, ādhā kelā bhī  
khāyā. usne śikāyat kī ki cāy mē cīnī zyādā hai.\* māīne kahā ki  
tumhārī zindagī mē thoṛī miṭhās kī zarūrat hai.\**

This morning I got up at five o'clock. For a little while I sat in the courtyard. Yesterday evening when we went to the cinema to see Shahrukh Khan's new film it had rained; but today I saw that the sky was clear.\* In the mornings it's peaceful all around. I'm very fond of the morning time.

I made tea for myself. After having tea I woke up my wife.

Making tea is two minutes' work but waking up the memsahib is another matter. Finally, when she came down I got her breakfast ready. Me, I never eat breakfast, but Geeta does of course. I made two pieces of toast for her. She had tea and ate half a banana too. She complained that there was too much sugar in the tea.\* I said that she needed a bit of sweetness in her life.\*

\*These three sentences show the use of 'reported speech' in Hindi. Literally, they translate as 'Today I saw that the sky is clear'; 'She complained that "There's too much sugar in the tea"'; and 'I said, "In your life a bit of sweetness is needed"'.

### Practise what you've learnt

Time for you to try your hand at the past tenses. Translate the following:

- 1 I got up early today.
- 2 My father woke me up at six o'clock.
- 3 He prepared breakfast for me.
- 4 Then I went out to buy a newspaper.
- 5 Near the shop I saw my uncle's car.
- 6 My uncle had gone into the shop.
- 7 My uncle saw me and asked me how I was.
- 8 He came home with me and I made coffee for him.
- 9 My father asked me where the newspaper was.
- 10 I said I hadn't brought the newspaper, I'd brought uncle.

### Geeta's version of the morning

आम तौर पर राजू मुझे देर से जगाता है लेकिन आज उसने मुझे जल्दी ही जगाया। मैं आराम से सो रही थी और शाहरुख़ ख़ाँ का सपना देख रही थी। इतना मीठा सपना था ! जब मैंने अपने पति की आवाज़ सुनी तो मैंने सोचा कि शाहरुख़ ही मुझे जगाने आया है। लेकिन यह तो सपना ही था। मैं नीचे रसोई में गई। मेरे पति

ने मेरे लिए दो टोस्ट बनाए थे। मैंने उसे कितनी बार बताया है कि मुझे टोस्ट पसंद नहीं लेकिन वह तो सुनता ही नहीं। चाय में उसने बहुत ज्यादा चीनी डाली थी। मेरे सिर में दर्द था इसलिए मैंने दो गोलियाँ खाईं। राजू ने मुझे जगाने से पहले ही नाश्ता किया होगा क्योंकि मेरे साथ तो उसने कुछ नहीं खाया। मैंने उससे पूछा कि तुमने मुझे इतनी जल्दी क्यों जगाया, लेकिन उसने कोई जवाब नहीं दिया। शाहरुख, तू कहाँ है ?

*ām taur par Rājū mujhe der se jagātā hai lekin āj usne mujhe jaldi hī jagāyā. maī ārām se so rahī thī aur Śāhrukh Khā kā sapnā dekh rahī thī. itnā mīthā sapnā thā! jab maine apne pati ki āvāz sunī to maine socā ki Śāhrukh hī mujhe jagāne āyā hai. lekin yah to sapnā hī thā. maī nice rasoī mẽ gai. mere pati ne mere lie do toṣṭ banāe the. maine use kitnī bār batāyā hai ki mujhe toṣṭ pasand nahī lekin vah to suntā hī nahī. cāy mẽ usne bahut zyādā cinī ḍālī thī. mere sir mẽ dard thā islie maine do goliyā khāī. Rājū ne mujhe jagāne se pahle hī nāṣṭā kiyā hogā kyōki mere sāth to usne kuch nahī khāyā. maine usse pūchā ki tumne mujhe itnī jaldī kyō jagāyā, lekin usne koī javāb nahī diyā. Śāhrukh, tū kahā hai?*

Usually Raju wakes me late but today he woke me very early. I was sleeping peacefully and dreaming about Shahrugh Khan [an actor]. It was such a sweet dream! When I heard my husband's voice I thought Shahrugh himself had come to wake me. But this was just a dream. I went down into the kitchen. My husband had made two pieces of toast for me. How many times have I told him that I don't like toast, but him, he doesn't listen. He'd put far too much sugar in the tea. I had a headache so I took two pills. Raju must have had breakfast before waking me because he didn't eat anything with me. I asked him why he woke me up so early but he didn't answer. Shahrugh, where art thou?

And here are some questions about the two accounts:

- १ सबसे पहले कौन उठा ?  
*sabse pahle kaun uṭhā?*
- २ किसने किसके लिए नाश्ता तैयार किया ?  
*kisne kiske lie nāṣṭā taiyār kiyā?*
- ३ गीता को जगाने से पहले राजू ने क्या क्या किया ?  
*Gītā ko jagāne se pahle Rājū ne kyā kyā kiyā?*

- ४ चाय के बारे में गीता की क्या शिकायत थी ?  
*cāy ke bare mẽ Gītā kī kyā śikāyat thī?*
- ५ गीता ने नाश्ता कहाँ किया ?  
*Gītā ne nāśtā kahā̃ kiyā?*
- ६ किसने गोलियाँ खाई, और क्यों ?  
*kisne goliyā̃ khāī, aur kyō?*
- ७ क्या राजू और गीता को जल्दी उठना पसंद है ?  
*kyā Rājū aur Gīta ko jaldī uṭhnā pasand hai?*
- ८ जब गीता ने राजू की आवाज़ सुनी तो उसने क्या सोचा ?  
*jab Gītā ne Rājū kī āvāz sunī to usne kyā socā?*
- ९ क्या शाहरुख़ ने गीता के साथ चाय पी ?  
*kyā Śāhrukh ne Gītā ke sāth cāy pī?*

#### 4 Sit and rest — linking two actions

English often links two successive actions with 'and', as in 'sit and rest'. But Hindi has a neat short cut for this. Instead of saying बैठो और आराम करो *baiṭho aur ārām karo* we can say बैठकर आराम करो *baiṭhkar ārām karo*, in which बैठकर *baiṭhkar* means literally 'having sat'.

This short verb form has a long name — the 'absolutive'. (The name means that the construction is complete in itself, and has no impact on the surrounding grammar.) It consists of the stem + कर *kar*, thus जाकर *jākar* 'having gone', देखकर *dekhkar* 'having seen', etc.

हाथ धोकर खाओ ।

*hāth dhokar khāo.* Wash your hands and eat.

बैठकर आराम करो ।

*baiṭhkar ārām karo.* Sit and rest.

सोचकर बोलो ।

*sockar bolo.* Think before you speak.

चाय पीकर जाइए ।

*cāy pīkar jāie.* Have some tea before you go.

A colloquial form of the absolutive has -के *-ke* instead of -कर *-kar* (आके *āke*, जाके *jāke*, देखके *dekhke*, बुलाके *bulāke*). The verb करना *karnā* always uses this -के *-ke* form: करके *karke* 'having done'.



हाथ धोके खाओ ।

*hāth dhoke khāo. Wash your hands and eat.*

अपना काम ख़त्म करके घर जाओ ।

*apnā kām khātm karke ghar jāo. Finish your work and go home.*

### ▶ What really happened that morning

Here's a third-person account of Raju and Geeta's morning. It contains several 'absolute' expressions — how many can you spot?

आज उठकर राजू नीचे गया । फिर चाय बनाकर वह आँगन में बैठने गया । चाय पीकर वह अपने सपनों के बारे में सोचने लगा । सपने में उसने शाहरुख़ ख़ाँ को देखा था । दरवाज़े को तोड़कर शाहरुख़ घर में घुसा था, लेकिन राजू ने मेज़ पर से एक भारी शब्दकोश को उठाकर शाहरुख़ को ख़ूब पीटा था ।

सात बजे राजू ने गीता का नाम पुकारकर उसे जगाने की कोशिश की लेकिन गीता तो घोड़े बेचकर सो रही थी । तब राजू ने खुद चार-पाँच टोस्ट बनाकर खाए । फिर तीन-चार संतरे खाए । आठ बजे उसने गीता के कंधे को हिलाकर उसे जगाया । फिर उसके लिए चाय बनाकर दो टोस्ट भी बनाए । जैँभाई लेकर गीता ने कहा कि “संतरा देना” तो राजू ने हँसकर कहा कि “मनोज ने जल्दी उठके सारे संतरे खाए होंगे, उसे तो संतरे बहुत पसंद हैं” ।

*āj uṭhkar Rājū nice gayā. phir cāy banākar vah āgan mē baiṭhne gayā. cāy pīkar vah apne sapnō ke bāre mē socne lagā. sapne mē usne Śāhrukh Khā ko dekhā thā. darvāze ko ṭorkar Śāhrukh ghar mē ghusā thā, lekin Rājū ne mez par se ek bhāri śabdkoś ko uṭhākar Śāhrukh ko khūb pītā thā.*

*sāt baje Rājū ne Gītā kā nām pukārkar use jagāne kī kośiś kī lekin Gītā to ghore bekar so rahī thī. tab Rājū ne khud cār-pāc ṭoṣṭ banākar khāe. phir tīn-cār santare khāe. āṭh baje usne Gītā ke kandhe ko hilākar use jagāyā. phir uske lie cāy banākar do ṭoṣṭ bhī banāe. jābhāi lekar Gītā ne kahā ki ‘santarā denā’ to Rājū ne hāskar kahā ki ‘Manoj ne jaldī uṭhke sāre santare khāe hōge, use to santare bahut pasand hāī!’*

Today Raju got up and went downstairs. Then he made tea and went to sit in the courtyard. After drinking his tea he began to

think about his dreams. He had dreamed of Shahrukh Khan. Shahrukh had broken down the door and come into the room, but Raju had picked up a heavy dictionary from on the table and had given Shahrukh a good thrashing.

At seven o'clock Raju called out Gita's name and tried to wake her, but she was sleeping deeply. Raju himself made four or five pieces of toast and ate them. Then he ate three or four oranges. At eight o'clock he shook Geeta's shoulder and woke her. Then he made tea for her, and two pieces of toast as well. Geeta yawned and said 'Give me an orange', and Raju laughed and said, 'Manoj must have got up early and eaten all the oranges, he loves oranges!'

**Exercise 10a** Link the paired sentences about Raju and Javed, following the model shown. Remember that whether ने *ne* is used will depend on the main verb: in the model sentence, ने *ne* is used when the main verb is पीना *pīnā*, but not when it's जाना *jānā*.

मैंने चाय पी । मैं घर गया । > मैं चाय पीकर घर गया ।  
*maīne cāy pī. maī ghar gayā. > maī cāy pīkar ghar gayā.*

१ जावेद ने मुझे फ़ोन किया । उसने कहा कि तबियत ख़राब है ।  
*Jāved ne mujhe fōn kiyā. usne kahā ki tabiyat kharāb hai.*

२ मैं जावेद के घर गया । मैं उसके कमरे में गया ।  
*maī Jāved ke ghar gayā. maī uske kamre mẽ gayā.*

३ मैंने जावेद का हाल देखा । मैंने डाक्टर को बुलाया ।  
*maīne Jāved kā hāl dekhā. maīne dāktar ko bulāyā.*

४ थोड़ी देर में डाक्टर आए । उन्होंने कहा कि जावेद बहुत ही कमज़ोर है ।  
*thoṛī der mẽ dāktar āe. unhōne kahā ki Jāved bahut hī kamzor hai.*

५ डाक्टर ने जावेद को कुछ गोलियाँ दीं । उन्होंने उससे कहा कि रोज़ दो गोलियाँ लेना ।  
*dāktar ne Jāved ko kuch goliyāṁ dī. unhōne usse kahā ki roz do goliyāṁ lenā.*

६ जावेद मुस्कराया । उसने डाक्टर से धन्यवाद कहा ।  
*Jāved muskarāyā. usne dāktar se dhanyavād kahā.*

- ७ डाक्टर ने मेरी तरफ देखा । उन्होंने कहा कि “अच्छा, तो मैं चलता हूँ” ।

*ḍāktar ne merī taraf dekhā. unhōne kahā ki ‘acchā, to mai caltā hū’.*

- ८ मैं ने कहा कि चाय पीजिए । फिर जाइए ।

*maīne kahā ki cāy pijie. phir jāie.*

- ९ डाक्टर हँसे । उन्होंने कहा कि मैं चाय नहीं लूँगा, अपनी फीस लूँगा !

*ḍāktar hāse. unhōne kahā ki mai cāy nahī lūṅgā, apnī fīs lūṅgā!*

**Exercise 10b** Translate into Hindi. (This is a longish piece; you may want to do it in two parts. You’ll find the new vocabulary in the glossary on the following pages.)

Yesterday morning I got up at six o’clock. After having breakfast I phoned my brother. He was sleeping. When he heard my voice he said, ‘Why did you wake me up so early?’ I said, ‘Don’t you remember? Today we are going to Jaipur [जयपुर *jaypur*]!’ He asked, ‘What time are we going?’ I answered, ‘We’ll catch the ten o’clock train. Get ready quickly!’ He yawned and said that he’d had a dream in the night. In the dream an old woman had said to him, ‘Don’t go anywhere today! Stay right at home!’ I laughed and said, ‘This was just a dream! Get up, won’t you! Get ready.’

The train moved out of the station at exactly ten o’clock. But after twenty or twenty-five minutes it stopped. The engine had broken down. It was a desolate place; there was no village or house nearby. In the July heat everyone got down from the train and waited for several hours in the shade of some small trees. The heat was terrible. At three o’clock another train came and stopped. This second train had come to bring the passengers back to Delhi.

We heard the story of the train on the radio. We’d taken that old woman’s advice! We’ll go to Jaipur tomorrow...

## Glossary

अकेलापन *akelāpan* m.  
loneliness

आकाश *ākāś* m. sky

आम <sup>1</sup> *ām* m. mango

आम <sup>2</sup> *ām* ordinary; आम तौर पर  
*ām taur par* usually

आराम से *ārām se* comfortably,  
easily

इंजन *injan* m. engine (train)

इंतज़ार *intazār* m. waiting,  
expecting; का इंतज़ार करना  
*kā intazār karnā* to wait for

इतना *itnā* so much, so

उठाना *uṭhānā* to pick up, raise

कंधा *kandhā* m. shoulder

कमज़ोर *kamzor* weak

कहीं *kahī* anywhere

कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta, loose shirt

केला *kelā* m. banana

ख़त्म *khatm* finished; ख़त्म करना  
*khatm karnā* to finish

ख़राब हो जाना *kharāb ho jānā*  
to break down

ख़ुद *khud* oneself (myself etc.)

गाँव *gāv* m. village

गोली *golī* f. tablet, pill; bullet

घुसना *ghusnā* to enter, sneak  
in, break in

घोड़ा *ghorā* m. horse; घोड़े  
बेचकर सोना *ghore bekar*  
*sonā* to sleep like a log

चपाती *capāti* f. chapati

चारों ओर *cārō or* all around

चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* f. letter, note

चीनी *cīnī* f. sugar

जँभाई *jābhāī* f. yawn

जगाना *jagānā* to awaken

जल्दी *jaldī* quickly, early; f.  
hurry

जीतना *jitnā* to win, conquer

टोस्ट *ṭoṣṭ* m. toast, piece of  
toast

ठीक *ṭhīk* exactly

डालना *dāl nā* to put, pour

तकलीफ़ *taklīf* f. suffering,  
pain, discomfort,  
inconvenience, trouble

तब *tab* then

तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared;

तैयार हो जाना *taiyār ho jānā*  
to get ready

तोड़ना *toṛnā* to break, smash

दर्द *dard* m. pain

दाल *dāl* f. daal, lentil

दीवार *divār*, दीवाल *divāl* f. wall

दुर्घटना *durghaṭnā* f. accident

देर *der* f. a while, length of  
time; delay; देर से *der se* late

नहाना *nahānā* to bathe

पकड़ना *pakarnā* to catch

पार्टी *pāṛṭī* f. party

पीटना *pīṭnā* to beat, thrash

पुकारना *pukārnā* to call out

पेट *peṭ* m. stomach

प्यास *pyās* f. thirst; प्यास लगना  
*pyās lagnā* (thirst to strike)  
to feel thirsty

फ़ीस *fīs* f. fee, fees

बढ़िया *barhiyā* (invariable -ā)  
excellent, really good, fine

बत्ती *battī* f. light, lamp

बस *bas* f. bus

बाज़ार *bāzār* m. market, bazaar

बार *bār* f. time, occasion; इस  
बार *is bār* this time; कितनी  
बार *kitnī bār* how many  
times?; कई बार *kai bār*  
several times

बारिश *bāriś* f. rain; बारिश होना  
*bāriś honā* to rain

बुलाना *bulānā* to call, invite,  
summon

बोतल *botal* f. bottle

भयंकर *bhayankar* terrible

भूख *bhūkh* f. hunger; भूख लगना  
*bhūkh lagnā* (hunger to  
strike) to feel hungry

महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* to  
feel

मिठाई *mithāī* f. sweet,  
sweetmeat

मिठास *mithās* f. sweetness

मीठा *mīthā* sweet

मेमसाहब *memsāhab* f.  
memsahib

यात्री *yātrī* m. traveller,  
passenger

रसोई *rasoi* f. kitchen

लौटना *lauṭnā* to return

शांति *śānti* f. peace

शिकायत *śikāyat* f. complaint;  
शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā*  
to complain

संतरा *santarā* m. orange

सलाह *salāh* f. advice

साया *sāyā* m. shade, shadow

सिर *sir* m. head

सुनसान *sunsān* desolate, empty

हिलाना *hilānā* to move, shake

हुआ *huā* [past tense of होना  
*honā*] 'happened'



कहा जाता है कि ...

*kahā*

it is said that...

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to say 'should' and 'must'
- how to describe things *being done*
- how to give directions

**Language points**

- obligation expressions
- passive verbs

## 1 A verb with many meanings

The verb लगना *lagnā* (literally 'to strike') carries a variety of meanings. Many of these relate to the experiencing of sensations such as heat or cold, hunger or thirst, which 'strike' or impinge on the person; but the range of usages is very wide. Here are some of them:

'To seem':

लगता है कि वह नहीं आएगी ।

*lagtā hai ki vah nahī āegī.* It seems she won't come.

तुम बहुत खुश नहीं लगते ।

*tum bahut khush nahī lagte.* You don't seem too happy.

'Thirst/hunger/cold (etc.) to strike':

हमें गरमी/ठंड लग रही है ।

*hamē garmī/ṭhaṇḍ lag rahī hai.* We're feeling hot/cold.

मुझे प्यास/भूख लगी है ।

*mujhe pyās/bhūkh lagī hai.* I'm feeling thirsty/hungry.

'To strike one as good/bad etc.':

यह जगह मुझे बहुत अच्छी लगती है ।

*yah jagah mujhe bahut acchī lagti hai.* I really like this place.

उनकी बातें हमें बुरी लगीं ।

*unkī bātē hamē burī lagī.* We were hurt by what they said.

'To begin' (here it follows an oblique infinitive such as होने *hone*):

बारिश होने लगी ।

*bāriś hone lagī.* It began raining.

मैं सोचने लगा कि अब तो वह नहीं आएगी ।

*mai socne lagī ki ab to vah nahī āegī.* I began to think that she wouldn't come now.

'Time to be taken' (already seen in Unit 9; here the *unit of time* is the subject):

सितार सीखने में सात साल लगेंगे ।

*sitār sikhne mē sāt sāl lagēge.* Learning the sitar will take seven years.

## 2 Finding the way in Vilaspur

In this section we'll look at expressions that are useful for finding your way. Your first task is to familiarize yourself with the new words relating to 'directions' in the chapter glossary.

Then come with the Sharmas to the town of Vilaspur, shown in the map opposite; they're going to stay at the Madhuban Hotel and have been given some directions for getting there from the station:

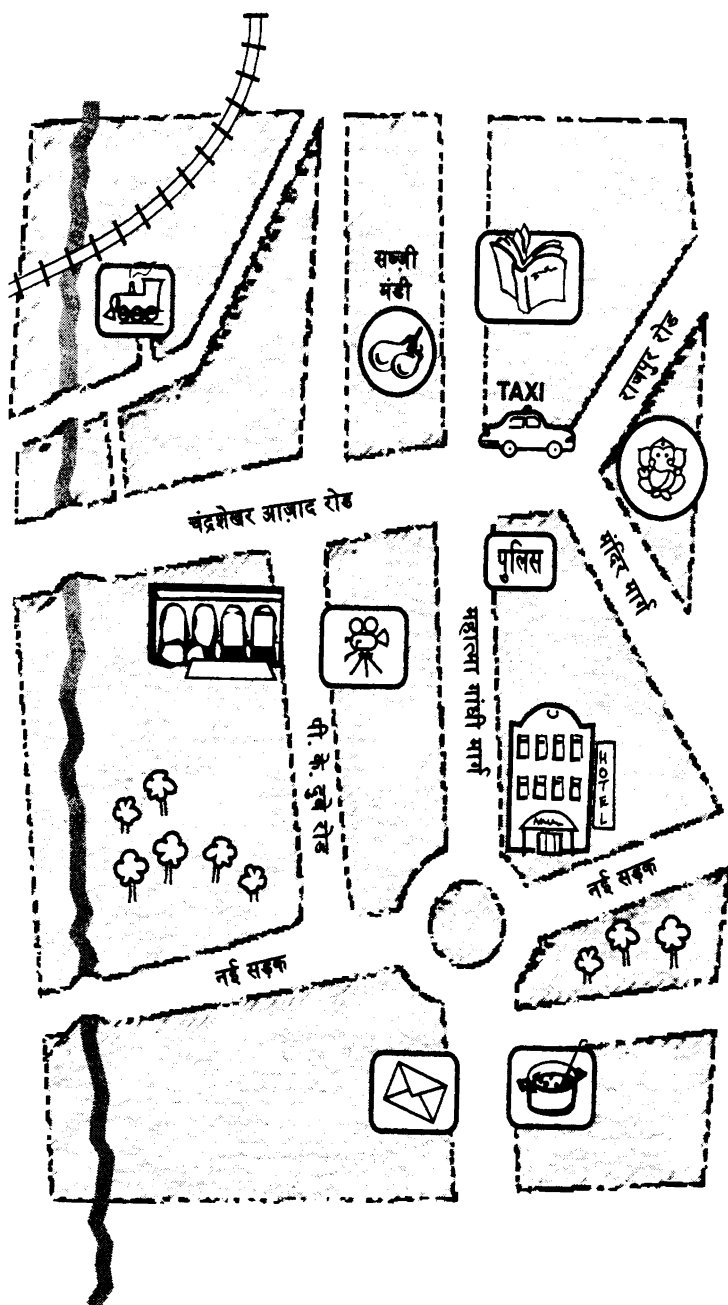
स्टेशन से निकलकर दाहिने मुड़िए । थोड़ी दूरी पर बायें हाथ पर एक तंग गली आएगी । इस गली में मुड़ना । आगे चलकर एक चौड़ी सड़क आएगी जिसे “चंद्रशेखर आज़ाद रोड” कहते हैं । बाएँ मुड़कर और सड़क को पार करके आप चलते जाएँ । दाहिने हाथ पर स्कूल दिखाई देगा । इसके बाद आप दाहिने मुड़िए । इस सड़क का नाम मुझे याद नहीं लेकिन बायें हाथ पर सिनेमा दिखाई देगा । फिर थोड़ी दूर जाकर एक दूसरी बड़ी सड़क आएगी जिसे शायद “नई सड़क” कहते हैं । बाएँ मुड़िए । फिर गोलचक्कर आएगा । गोलचक्कर के उस पार आपका मधुबन होटल दिखाई देगा ।

स्टेशन से मधुबन होटल ज़्यादा दूर नहीं है । मुश्किल से आठ-दस मिनट का रास्ता है । अगर आपके पास बहुत सामान हो तो बेहतर है कि आप रिक्शा लें । रिक्शेवाले से कहें कि होटल “एम० जी० रोड” पर है । वह बीस-पच्चीस रुपये लेगा । आप उसे पच्चीस से ज़्यादा न दें ।

*ṣṭeśan se nikalkar dāhine muṛie. thoṛī dūri par bāyē hāth par ek taṅg galī āegī. is galī mē muṛnā. āge calkar ek caurī saṛak āegī jise ‘Candraśekhara Āzād roḍ’ kahte haī. bāyē muṛkar aur saṛak ko pār karke āp calte jāē. dāhine hāth par skūl dikhāi degā. iske bād āp dāhine muṛie. is saṛak kā nām mujhe yād nahī lekin bāyē hāth par sinemā dikhāi degā. phir thoṛī dūr jākar ek dūsarī baṛī saṛak āegī jise sāyad ‘nāī saṛak’ kahte haī. bāyē muṛie. phir golcakkār āegā. golcakkār ke us pār āpkā madhuban hoṭal dikhāi degā.*

*ṣṭeśan se madhuban hoṭal zyādā dūr nahī hai. muṣkil se āṭh-das minaṭ kā rāstā hai. agar āpke pās bahut sāmān ho to behtar hai ki āp rikṣā lē. rikṣevāle se kahē ki hoṭal ‘em. jī. roḍ’ par hai. vah bīs-paccīs rupaye legā. āp use paccīs se zyādā na dē.*





Emerging from the station, turn right. At a short distance you'll come to a narrow alley. Turn into this alley. Going straight on you'll reach a wide road which is called Chandrashekhar Azad Road. Turning left and crossing the road, keep going. A school will be seen on the right. After this turn right. I don't remember the name of this road but you'll see a cinema on your left. Then a little further on you'll come to another big road which is called maybe 'Nai Sarak' [New Road]. Turn left. Then you'll come to a roundabout. On the other side of the roundabout you'll see your Madhuban Hotel.

The Madhuban Hotel isn't far from the station. It's barely an eight- or ten-minute trip. If you've got a lot of luggage it would be better to take a rickshaw. Tell the rickshaw driver that the hotel is on 'M.G. Road'. The rickshaw driver will take 20 or 25 rupees. You shouldn't give him more than 25.

Play around with the map, describing journeys from place to place. Then...

### True or false?

Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (ग़लत *galat*)?

Answers below.

	सही <i>sahī</i>	ग़लत <i>galat</i>
१ मधुबन होटल के सामने एक स्कूल है । <i>madhuban hotal ke sāmne ek skūl hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
२ सिनेमा थाने की बगल में है । <i>sinemā thāne kī bagal mẽ hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
३ विलासपुर में तीन छोटे-से पुल हैं । <i>vilāspur mẽ tīn choṭe-se pul hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
४ डाकघर के सामने एक ढाबा है । <i>ḍākghar ke sāmne ek dhābā hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
५ सिनेमा गोल-चक्कर के बहुत पास है । <i>sinemā golcakkhar ke bahut pās hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
६ नई सड़क को "एम. जी. रोड" भी कहते हैं । <i>naī sarak ko 'em. jī. roḍ' bhī kahte hai.</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- ७ इस नक्शे में कुछ पेड़ दिखाई देते हैं । ☐ ☐  
*is naqše mē kuch peṛ dikhāi dete hai.*
- ८ गणेश मंदिर पश्चिम की तरफ़ है । ☐ ☐  
*Gaṇeś mandir paścim kī taraf hai.*
- ९ स्टेशन से पुस्तकालय तक एक घंटे का रास्ता है । ☐ ☐  
*ṣṭeśan se pustakālay tak ek ghaṇṭe kā rāstā hai.*
- १० स्टेशन से गणेश मंदिर पहुँचने में छह-सात  
 मिनट से ज़्यादा नहीं लगेंगे । ☐ ☐  
*ṣṭeśan se Gaṇeś mandir pahūcne mē chah-sāt  
 minaṭ se zyādā nahī lagēge.*

Answers: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 10 are right.

### ► 3 It is said that... the passive is easy

A passive verb is one that concentrates on *what is done*, rather than the person who does it. In other words, its focus is the action, not the doer of the action. Thus 'we give money' is active, and 'money is given' is passive. 'Money is given by the government' is also passive, but it identifies the doer of the action with a 'by' phrase.

The passive is based on the perfective participle (e.g. दिया *diyā* 'given'). But whereas English forms its passive with 'to be', Hindi uses जाना *jānā* — literally 'to go':

करना <i>karnā</i> to do	किया जाना <i>kiyā jānā</i> to be done
देना <i>denā</i> to give	दिया जाना <i>diyā jānā</i> to be given
रखना <i>rakhnā</i> to put	रखा जाना <i>rakhā jānā</i> to be put

होटल का इंतज़ाम किया जा रहा है ।

*hoṭal kā intazām kiyā jā rahā hai.* Arrangements for a hotel are being made.

आपको एक अच्छा कमरा दिया जाएगा ।

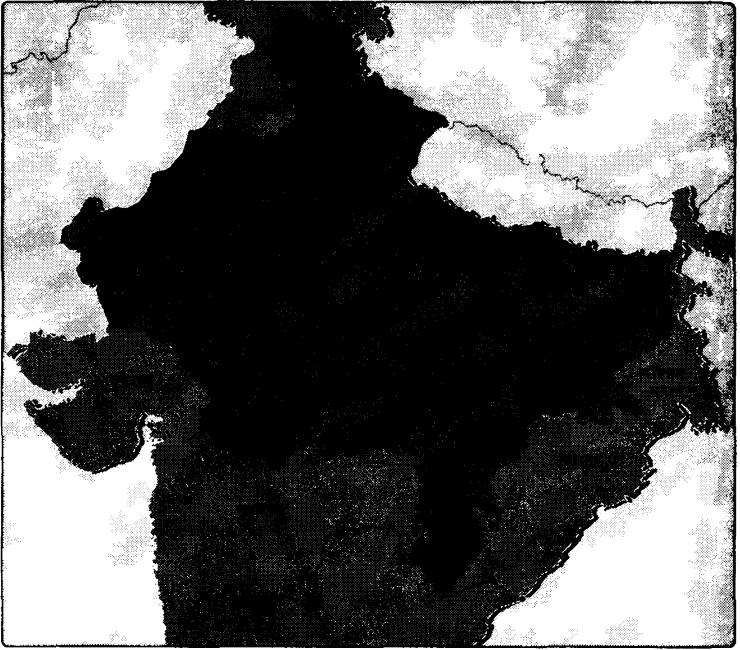
*āpko ek acchā kamrā diyā jāegā.* You will be given a good room.

आपका सामान टैक्सी में रखा गया है ।

*āpkā sāmān ṭaiksī mē rakhā gayā hai.* Your luggage has been put into the taxi.

## ▶ India: states and languages

This map of northern India shows the ten states (shaded) where Hindi is the primary language.



Hindi is closely related to its neighbouring languages, such as Marathi (spoken in Maharashtra), Gujarati (Gujarat), Punjabi (Punjab), Bengali (West Bengal and Bangladesh), and so on. All these languages derive from Sanskrit, and share much vocabulary.

In South India — not shown here — are the four major languages of the 'Dravidian' family: Tamil (spoken in Tamil Nadu), Malayalam (Kerala), Kannada (Karnataka) and Telugu (Andhra Pradesh).

Now you have all the information you need to answer a few questions that involve passive verbs:

- १ तमिल कहाँ बोली जाती है ?  
*tamil kahā bolī jāti hai?*
- २ मराठी कहाँ बोली जाती है ?  
*marāṭhī kahā bolī jāti hai?*
- ३ केरल में कौनसी भाषा बोली जाती है ?  
*keral mē kaunsi bhāṣā bolī jāti hai?*

४ हिन्दी कितने प्रदेशों में बोली जाती है ?

*hindī kitne pradeśō mē bolī jāti hai?*

५ दिल्ली और बिहार के बीच कौनसा प्रदेश पाया जाता है ?

*dillī aur bihār ke bīc kaunsa pradeś pāyā jāta hai?*

### Practise what you've learnt

Work out the passive infinitives of the following verbs (example: बनाना *banānā* to make, बनाया जाना *banāyā jānā* to be made).

खाना *khānā* to eat

डालना *ḍālnā* to pour

पीना *pinā* to drink

बताना *batānā* to tell

लाना *lānā* to bring

लेना *lenā* to take

लिखना *likhnā* to write

कहना *kahnā* to say

(Answers: खाया जाना *khāyā jānā*, डाला जाना *ḍālā jānā*, पिया जाना *piyā jānā*, बताया जाना *batāyā jānā*, लाया जाना *lāyā jānā*, लिया जाना *liyā jānā*, लिखा जाना *likhā jānā*, कहा जाना *kahā jānā*.)

Now make up a sentence using each of these passive verbs!

### Agreement all round

Notice how *all* parts of the verb (the participle, e.g. दिया *diyā*, the form of जाना *jānā*, and the auxiliary होना *honā*) must agree with the subject. The subject is shown here in **bold**:

उनको **पैसा** दिया जाता है ।

*unko paisā diyā jāta hai.* Money is given to them.

उनको अच्छी **सलाह** दी जाती है ।

*unko acchī salāh dī jāti hai.* Good advice is given to them.

उनको **कपड़े** दिए जाते हैं ।

*unko kapre diē jāte hai.* Clothes are given to them.

### Any tense can have a passive verb

The passive can be used with all tenses etc.:

उनको पैसा दिया जाता है । [Present imperfective]

*unko paisā diyā jāta hai.* Money is given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जा रहा है । [Present continuous]

*unko paisā diyā jā rahā hai.* Money is being given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया गया । [Perfective]  
*unko paisā diyā gayā.* Money was given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जाएगा । [Future]  
*unko paisā diyā jāegā.* Money will be given to them.

उनको पैसा दिया जाए । [Subjunctive]  
*unko paisā diyā jāe.* Money should be given to them.

The person *by whom* an action is done can be identified with *से se* (or, in more formal Hindi, with *के द्वारा ke dvārā*):

पैसा सरकार से (सरकार के द्वारा) दिया जाता है ।  
*paisā sarkār se (sarkār ke dvārā) diyā jātā hai.* Money is given by the government.

### What's the passive for?

We use a passive verb when the main focus is on the *action done* rather than the *person doing it*. In saying 'this money was found under the chair', we're more concerned with the *act of finding* than with the person who found it; if it had been the other way round, we would have said 'So-and-so found this money under the chair'. In other words, passives offer a way of making 'impersonal statements': instead of saying 'we use the passive' at the beginning of this paragraph, I could have adopted a more impersonal tone by saying 'the passive is used...'. The passive is used a lot in Hindi.

### Sharma ji in his shop

Read the passage about Sharma ji in his shop, then answer the questions.

शर्मा जी अपनी दुकान में बैठकर सोच रहे थे । उन्होंने गोपाल को बुलाकर कहा, "बेटा, यह सारा सामान छोटे कमरे में रखो । फिर दुकान की सफ़ाई करो । मैं बहुत थका हूँ, थोड़ी देर के लिए घर जाकर सोऊँगा । आठ बजे दुकान को बंद करना । फिर बीस रुपये लो और धोबी के पास जाकर मेरे साफ़ कपड़े लाओ ।" पर गोपाल से कुछ नहीं सुना गया क्योंकि वह रेडियो को सुन रहा था ।

*Śarmā jī apnī dukān mē baiṭhkar soc rahe the. unhōne Gopāl ko bulākar kahā, 'beṭā, yah sārā sāmān choṭe kamre mē rakho. phir*

*dukān kī safāi karo. maī bahut thakā hū, thoṛī der ke lie ghar jākar soūgā. āth baje dukān ko band karnā. phir bīs rupaye lo aur dhobi ke pās jākar mere sāf kapre lāo.* 'par Gopāl se kuch nahī sunā gayā kyōki vah reḍiyo ko sun rahā thā.

Sharma ji was sitting in his shop thinking. He called Gopal and said, 'Son, put this new stuff in the little room. Then clean the shop. I'm very tired, I'll go home and sleep for a little while. Close the shop at eight o'clock. Then take twenty rupees and go to the dhobi and bring my clean clothes.' But none of this was heard by Gopal because he was listening to the radio.

- १ गोपाल को किससे बुलाया गया ?  
*Gopāl ko kisse ['by whom'] bulāyā gayā?*
- २ सामान कहाँ रखा जाएगा ?  
*sāmān kahā rakhā jāegā?*
- ३ कमरे की सफ़ाई किससे की जाएगी ?  
*kamre kī safāi kisse kī jāegī?*
- ४ दुकान को कितने बजे बंद किया जाएगा ?  
*dukān ko kitne baje band kiyā jāega?*
- ५ शर्मा जी के साफ़ कपड़े कहाँ से लाए जाएँगे ?  
*Śarmā jī ke sāf kapre kahā se lāe jāēge?*
- ६ गोपाल से शर्मा जी की बातें क्यों नहीं सुनी गई ?  
*Gopāl se Śarmā jī kī bātē kyō nahī sunī gai?*

### Did you know?

Why is it that some Hindi words resemble their English equivalents so closely? There are various reasons: words can be 'borrowed' by one language from another one, or similar words from two different languages may share a common origin. A few examples may help make this clearer. Some words (such as बूट *būṭ* 'boot') have been borrowed by Hindi from English; others (such as 'loot' लूट *lūṭ*) have been borrowed by English from Hindi; others again, such as नाम *nām* 'name', or कटना *katnā* 'to be cut', sound similar in the two languages because they have a shared ancestry going far back into the history of the Indo-European language family.

## 4 You should read this — obligations

Way back in Unit 5 we saw that चाहिए *cāhie*, used with को *ko*, meant 'wanted, needed'. This construction relates to things, objects — 'I want a newspaper', and so on:

आपको क्या चाहिए ?

*āpko kyā cāhie?* What do you need/want?

मुझे (मुझको) आज का अखबार चाहिए ।

*mujhe (mujhko) āj kā akhbār cāhie.* I want today's newspaper.

When चाहिए *cāhie* follows an infinitive verb (such as जाना *jānā* 'to go') it has a completely different meaning: it means 'should, ought to'. Though the meaning of चाहिए *cāhie* has changed here, the word को *ko* remains an essential part of the construction

मुझको घर जाना चाहिए ।

*mujhko ghar jānā cāhie.* I should go home.

आपको ध्यान से सुनना चाहिए ।

*āpko dhyān se sunnā cāhie.* You should listen carefully.

उनको समझना चाहिए ।

*unko samajhnā cāhie.* They should understand.

हमको चलना चाहिए ।

*hamko calnā cāhie.* We should be on our way.

तुमको यहाँ रहना चाहिए ।

*tumko yahā rahnā cāhie.* You should stay here.

If there's a direct object involved, the infinitive verb agrees with it. In the next two sentences, the verbs बोलना *bolnā* 'to speak' and सीखना *sīkhnā* 'to learn' have to agree with its feminine object, उर्दू *urdū* —

तुमको उर्दू बोलनी चाहिए ।

*tumko urdū bolnī cāhie.* You should speak Urdu.

हमको थोड़ी उर्दू सीखनी चाहिए ।

*hamko thoṛī urdū sīkhnī cāhie.* We should learn a little Urdu.

You'll notice similar agreements in the following:

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए ।

*unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie.* They should listen to what I say.



ड्राइवर को नक्शा खरीदना चाहिए ।

*drāivar ko naqṣā kharīdnā cāhie.* The driver should buy a map.

राजू को ये खत पढ़ने चाहिए ।

*Rājū ko ye khat paṛhne cāhie.* Raju should read these letters.

आपको उनकी सलाह लेनी चाहिए ।

*āpko unkī salāh lenī cāhie.* You should take their advice.

Before going further, read the last four sentences again and make sure you understand what the infinitive verbs (सुननी *sunnī*, खरीदना *kharīdnā*, पढ़ने *paṛhne* and लेनी *lenī* respectively) agree with.

When we were doing the ने *ne* construction in Unit 10, we saw that the postposition को *ko* 'insulates' the verb, preventing agreement — हमने चिट्ठियाँ पढ़ीं *hamne ciṭṭhiyāṁ paṛhī*, but हमने चिट्ठियों को पढ़ा *hamne ciṭṭhiyō ko paṛhā*, both meaning 'we read the letters'. Similarly with obligation expressions, the verb reverts to masculine singular when the direct object takes को *ko*. Confused? Look at the examples:

हमें चिट्ठियाँ पढ़नी चाहिए ।

*hamē ciṭṭhiyāṁ paṛhnī cāhie.* We should read the letters.

becomes...

हमें चिट्ठियों को पढ़ना चाहिए ।

*hamē ciṭṭhiyō ko paṛhnā cāhie.* We should read the letters.

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए ।

*unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie.* They should listen to what I say.

becomes...

उन्हें मेरी बात को सुनना चाहिए ।

*unhē merī bāt ko sunnā cāhie.* They should listen to what I say.

Finally, using चाहिए *cāhie* in the past is simplicity itself. Just add था, थे, थी, थीं *thā, the, thī, thī*.

हमको ये चिट्ठियाँ पढ़नी चाहिए थीं ।

*hamko ciṭṭhiyāṁ paṛhnī cāhie thī.* We should have read these letters.

उन्हें मेरी बात सुननी चाहिए थी ।

*unhē merī bāt sunnī cāhie thī.* They should have listened to what I said.

## ▶ Your help is needed

The Sharmas need your advice on various matters. Please respond:

- १ गीता बहुत थकी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?  
*Gītā bahut thakī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?*
- २ मनोज के सिर में दर्द है। उसे क्या करना चाहिए ?  
*Manoj ke sir mē dard hai. use kyā karnā cāhie?*
- ३ राजू ने देखा है कि फ़र्श गंदी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?  
*Rājū ne dekhā hai ki farś gandī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?*
- ४ मीना को भूख लगी है। उसको क्या करना चाहिए ?  
*Mīnā ko bhūkh lagī hai. usko kyā karnā cāhie?*
- ५ शर्मा परिवार का घर बहुत छोटा है। उन लोगों को क्या करना चाहिए ?  
*Śarmā parivār kā ghar bahut choṭā hai. un logō ko kyā karnā cāhie?*

## 5 You must read this — stronger obligations

When 'I should' gives way to 'I have to' or 'I must', चाहिए *cāhie* gives way to stronger expressions. The first of these involves using the infinitive verb with है *hai*, as in मुझे जाना है *mujhe jānā hai* 'I have to go' or 'I am to go'.

Let us imagine that Raju's agenda for the day includes writing some letters, talking to Javed, and meeting his brother Mohan. He'd say:

मुझे पाँच खत लिखने हैं।

*mujhe pāc khat likhne hai.* I have to write five letters.

मुझे जावेद से कुछ बातें कहनी हैं।

*mujhe Jāved se kuch bātē kahnī hai.* I have to say some things to Javed.

मुझे मोहन से मिलना है।

*mujhe Mohan se milnā hai.* I have to meet Mohan.

The sense of compulsion here isn't very strong: these are just ordinary things that are to be done in the normal course of events. The verb agreement follows the pattern of the चाहिए *cāhie* usage: लिखने हैं *likhne hai* agrees with पाँच खत *pāc khat*, etc.

## What's on today

The Sharma children have several things to do today. Taking as your model the sentence मनोज को जल्दी उठना है *Manoj ko jaldī uṭhnā hai* 'Manoj has to get up early', go through their lists.

MANOJ

MEENA

RAM

get up early

make breakfast

read a story

read the paper

do some studying

write a letter

go to the shops

write two letters

make a picture

phone Nani ji

rest

sleep at 9 o'clock

A stronger sense of compulsion involves the verb पड़ना *paṛnā*, literally meaning 'to fall' but here meaning 'to be compelled to', 'to really have to'. It's used when circumstances beyond your control make the action essential — as when the children have broken their father's radio...

हमें पिताजी को बताना पड़ेगा ।

*hamē pitājī ko batānā paṛegā.* We'll have to tell father.

हमें नया रेडियो खरीदना पड़ेगा ।

*hamē nayā reḍiyo kharīdnā paṛegā.* We'll have to buy a new radio.

पिताजी को हमें पैसे देने पड़ेंगे ।

*pitājī ko hamē paise dene paṛēge.* Father will have to give us the money.

In the imperfective (पड़ता है *partā hai*, or पड़ता था *partā thā*), this same construction implies a compulsion that occurs *regularly* —

हमें रोज़ काम करना पड़ता है ।

*hamē roz kām karnā partā hai.* We have to work every day.

मुझे सात बजे उठना पड़ता था ।

*mujhe sāt baje uṭhnā partā thā.* I [always] had to get up at seven.

क्या तुम्हें अपने कपड़े खुद धोने पड़ते हैं ?

*kyā tumhē apne kapṛe khud dhone partē hai?* Do you have to wash your own clothes?

In the perfective (पड़ा *parā*), this same construction implies an *unexpected* compulsion, such as some kind of unforeseen event or emergency, as on discovering that Meena's car was stolen — complete with the children's toys! Keep an eye on the agreements: watch पड़ा *parā* changing to पड़ी *parī* or पड़े *pare* to match the object.

मुझे पुलिस को फ़ोन करना पड़ा ।

*mujhe pulis ko fon karnā parā.* I had to phone the police.

घर जाने के लिए हमें टैक्सी लेनी पड़ी ।

*ghar jāne ke lie hamē taikṣī lenī parī.* We had to take a taxi to get home.

मुझे बच्चों के लिए नए खिलौने ख़रीदने पड़े ।

*mujhe baccō ke lie nae khilaune kharīdne pare.* I had to buy new toys for the children.

**Exercise 11a** Someone's having a party on Sunday. Translate:

- 1 About thirty people will be invited.
- 2 The house will be cleaned on Saturday.
- 3 The food will be made on Sunday morning.
- 4 In the afternoon some relatives will be fetched from the station.
- 5 Presents will be given to the children.
- 6 Lamps will be lit in the garden at night.
- 7 Music will be played too.
- 8 The neighbours will also be invited.

**Exercise 11b** Things haven't gone too well at the Madhuban Hotel, and you need to get the following points across to the long-suffering receptionist. Use passive verbs for the parts in bold print.

- 9 Today's food wasn't fresh — it seems it was **made** yesterday.
- 10 Your friends came to visit you last night, but you were not **told** that they had come.
- 11 Someone's dirty clothes were **put** in your room.
- 12 This evening you saw that the door of your room hadn't been **closed** properly...
- 13 .....and your luggage had been **opened**.
- 14 You were not **given** hot water for bathing.
- 15 You gave clothes for washing two days ago but they have not been **given back**.

**Exercise 11c** Enjoy (and translate) the receptionist's thoughts.

ये लोग मुझे क्यों तंग करते हैं ? वे हर रोज़ किसी चीज़ की शिकायत करते हैं । लगता है उनको शिकायत करना बहुत पसंद है । मालूम नहीं वे किस देश से आए हैं । मेरे ख़याल से हमारे देश में आकर लोगों को हर चीज़ की शिकायत नहीं करनी चाहिए । उनको इस देश का आदर करना चाहिए । सच है कि उनके सामान को खोला नहीं जाना चाहिए था, लेकिन सारी दूसरी बातें तो मामूली-सी थीं । मुझे मैनेजर ['manager'] को इसके बारे में बताना चाहिए पर मैं उन्हें बताना नहीं चाहता । नहीं बताऊँगा । ये लोग भाड़ में जाएँ !

*ye log mujhe kyō tang karte hai? ve har roz kisī ciz kī śikāyat karte hai. lagtā hai unko śikāyat karnā bahut pasand hai. mālūm nahī ve kis deś se āe hai. mere khyāl se hamāre deś mē ākar logō ko har ciz kī śikāyat nahī karnī cāhie. unko is deś kā ādar karnā cāhie. sac hai ki unke sāmān ko kholā nahī jānā cāhie thā, lekin sārī dūsarī bātē to māmūlī-sī thī. mujhe mainejaar ko iske bāre mē batānā cāhie par mai unhē batānā nahī cāhtā. nahī batāūṅgā. ye log bhār mē jāē!*

**Glossary**

आगे <i>āge</i> ahead	गरम <i>garam</i> hot, warm
आदर <i>ādar</i> m. respect	चलते जाना <i>calte jānā</i> to keep going
इमारत <i>imārat</i> f. building	चौड़ा <i>caurā</i> wide, broad
उत्तर <i>uttar</i> north	जलाना <i>jalānā</i> to light
उर्दू <i>urdū</i> f. Urdu	टैक्सी <i>ṭaiksī</i> f. taxi
कहानी <i>kahānī</i> f. story	तंग <i>taṅg</i> narrow
के द्वारा <i>ke dvārā</i> by (in formal passive sentences)	तंग करना <i>taṅg karnā</i> to annoy, harass
ख़याल <i>khyāl</i> , m. opinion, thought, idea	तोहफ़ा <i>tohfā</i> m. gift, present
खिलौना <i>khilaunā</i> m. toy	थकना <i>thaknā</i> to get tired

थाना *thānā* m. police station  
 दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* south  
 दवाखाना *davākḥānā* m.  
 pharmacy, chemist's shop  
 दाहिना *dāhinā* right (not left)  
 देश *deś* m. country  
 धोबी *dhobī* m. washerman  
 नक्शा *naqṣā* m. map  
 निकलना *nikalnā* to emerge,  
 come/go out  
 पचास *pacās* fifty  
 पड़ना *paṛnā* to fall; to have to  
 (with preceding infinitive —  
 मुझे जाना पड़ेगा *mujhe jānā*  
*paṛegā* 'I'll have to go')  
 पश्चिम *paścim* west  
 पार *pār* across; पार करना *pār*  
*karnā* to cross; उस पार *us pār*  
 on the other side (of, के *ke*)  
 पुलिस *pulis* f. police  
 पुस्तकालय *pustakālay* m. library  
 पूर्व *pūrv* east  
 प्रदेश *pradeś* m. state, region  
 बजे *baje* o'clock  
 बटुआ *baṭuā* m. purse, wallet  
 बायाँ *bāyā* left (direction)

बुरा *burā* bad  
 भाड़ में जाए *bhār mē jāe* '(he/she)  
 can go to hell' (भाड़ *bhār* m.  
 grain-parching oven)  
 मंदिर *mandir* m. temple  
 मराठी *marāṭhī* f. Marathi,  
 language of Maharashtra  
 माफ़ी *māfi* f. forgiveness; माफ़ी  
 माँगना *māfi māgnā* to  
 apologize  
 मामूली *māmūlī* ordinary  
 मार्ग *mārg* m. road, street (used  
 in street names)  
 मैला *mailā* dirty  
 रिक्शेवाला *rikṣevālā* m.  
 rickshaw driver  
 रिश्तेदार *riṣṭedār* m. relation,  
 relative  
 लगना *lagnā* to seem; to be felt  
 (of hunger, thirst etc.); to  
 take (time); to have an  
 effect; to begin (following  
 an oblique infinitive)  
 सरकार *sarkār* f. government  
 सामान *sāmān* m. goods,  
 furniture, luggage

# 12

तबियत और शैली

*tabiyat*

health and style

**In this unit you will learn**

- how to talk about getting things done by others
- ways of adding nuance to what you say
- terms for health matters

**Language points**

- relative clauses
- causative verbs
- compound verbs

## 1 'J-words' and relative clauses

Earlier we saw a set of 'question-words' beginning with *k*-.

कब *kab* when? कहाँ *kahā* where? कौन *kaun* who?

Now we meet a similar set of words, this time beginning with *j*-. These are used in 'relative clauses', where they introduce one clause that is 'related' or linked to a second one. Here are three members of this set:

जब *jab* when जहाँ *jahā* where जो *jo* who

जब *jab* is often partnered by तो *to* (or तब *tab* 'then') which ushers in a paired clause:

जब मैं छोटा था तो मुझे संगीत का बहुत शौक था ।

*jab maī choṭā thā to mujhe sangīt kā bahut śauq thā.* When I was little I was very fond of music.

जब लता जी गाती थीं तब पिताजी भी सुनते थे ।

*jab Latā jī gāṭī thī tab pitājī bhī sunte the.* When Lata ji sang, even Father used to listen.

जब संगीत शुरू होता था तो सब लोग नाचने लगते थे ।

*jab sangīt śurū hotā thā to sab log nācne lagte the.* When the music started everyone would begin to dance.

जहाँ *jahā* is often partnered by वहाँ *vahā* 'there':

जहाँ मैं रहता हूँ वहाँ कोई सिनेमा नहीं है ।

*jahā maī rahtā hū, vahā koī sinemā nahī hai.* Where I live, there's no cinema.

जहाँ सिनेमा पहले था वहाँ एक होटल बन रहा है ।

*jahā sinemā pahle thā vahā ek hoṭal ban rahā hai.* Where the cinema was previously, a hotel is being built.

जहाँ लोग सो रहे हों वहाँ रेडियो मत बजाना ।

*jahā log so rahe hō vahā reḍiyo mat bajānā.* Don't play the radio where people may be sleeping.



जो *jo* 'who/which/what' is often partnered by वह / वे *vah / ve*:

जो आदमी रेडियो में गाना गाता है वह सामने रहता है ।  
*jo ādmī reḍiyo mē gānā gātā hai vah sāmne rahtā hai.* The man  
 who sings on the radio lives opposite.

जो गाना तुमने गाया, वह हमें बहुत पसंद आया ।  
*jo gānā tumne gāyā, vah hamē bahut pasand āyā.* We really  
 liked the song you sang. ('The song you sang, it pleased us...')

जो लोग गाना सीखना चाहते हैं उनको यह गाना सुनना चाहिए ।  
*jo log gānā sikhnā cāhte hai unko yah gānā sunnā cāhie.* People  
 who want to learn to sing should listen to this song.

जो *jo* has the oblique जिस *jis* (singular) and जिन *jin* (plural):

जिसने यह फ़िल्म बनाई वह मेरा पुराना दोस्त है ।  
*jisne yah film banāī vah mera purānā dost hai.* The person who  
 made this film is my old friend.

जिस फ़िल्म में यह गाना आता है वह काफ़ी पुरानी है ।  
*jis film mē yah gānā ātā hai vah kāfī purānī hai.* The film in  
 which this song comes is quite old.

जिन लोगों ने "शोले" फ़िल्म देखी है वे उसे कभी नहीं भूलेंगे ।  
*jin logō ne 'śole' film dekhī hai ve use kabhī nahī bhūlēge.*  
 People who have seen the film 'Sholay' will never forget it.

## Hiralal helps us out

Now a narrative about Hiralal the rickshaw driver helps us get used to relative clauses. In addition to a couple of English words used here ('artist', 'seat'), you will need these new words:

शानदार *śāndār* splendid

हीरा *hīrā* m. diamond

चमकना *camaknā* to shine

सवारी *savārī* f. passenger, rider

जेब *jeb* f. pocket

थक जाना *thak jānā* to get tired

मुफ्त (का) *muft (kā)* cost-free

बारिश *bārīś* f. rain

ग़रीब *garīb* poor

मौसम *mausam* m. weather

पहाड़ *pahār* m. hill

चढ़ाव *caḥhāv* m. rise, incline

भारी *bhārī* heavy

चढ़ना *caṛhnā* to climb, get into  
vehicle

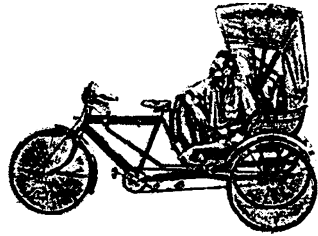
वज़न *vazan* m. weight

हो जाना *ho jānā* to become

उतरना *utarnā*, उतर जाना *utar  
jānā* to get down, alight

लेटना *leṭnā* to lie down

यह हीरालाल है, जो आगरे  
में रहता है। हीरालाल  
रिक्षेवाला है। जो रिक्शा  
हीरालाल चलाता है वह  
बहुत शानदार है। वह हीरे  
की तरह चमकता है !  
जिसने यह रिक्शा बनाया  
हो। वह बहुत बड़ा आर्टिस्ट  
होगा।<sup>2</sup>



जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ बहुत-से दूसरे रिक्शेवाले भी रहते हैं।  
रिक्शे तो बहुत हैं लेकिन सवारियाँ कम आती हैं।<sup>3</sup> जब एक भी  
सवारी नहीं आती तब हीरालाल की जेब खाली रहती है। जब जेब  
खाली रहती है तो पेट भी खाली रहता है। मुफ्त का खाना कहाँ  
मिलता है ?<sup>4</sup> और जब बारिश होती है तब भी हीरालाल को काम  
करना पड़ता है। जो लोग ग़रीब हैं उनको हर मौसम में काम करना  
पड़ता है।

जहाँ पहाड़ या चढ़ाव हो वहाँ रिक्शा चलाना बहुत ही मुश्किल है।  
जब दो मोटे लोग अपने भारी सामान को लेकर<sup>5</sup> रिक्शे में चढ़ते हैं  
तो वज़न बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है। जब सवारियाँ उतर जाती हैं तो  
हीरालाल अपने रिक्शे की सीट पर लेटकर सोता है। जो लोग रिक्शे  
चलाते हैं उन्हें बहुत मेहनत करनी पड़ती है।

*yah Hirālāl hai, jo āgre mē rahtā hai. Hirālāl rikṣevālā hai.  
jo rikṣā Hirālāl calātā hai vah bahut śāndār hai. vah hīre kī  
tarah camaktā hai! jisne yah rikṣā banāyā ho<sup>1</sup> vah bahut baṛā  
ārtiṣṭ hogā.<sup>2</sup>*

*jahā Hirālāl rahtā hai vahā bahut-se dūsre rikṣevale bhī rahte hai.  
rikṣe to bahut hai lekin savāriyā kam āti hai. <sup>3</sup> jab ek bhi*

*savārī nahī̃ ātī tab Hirālāl kī jeb khālī rahtī hai. jab jeb khālī rahtī hai to peṭ bhī khālī rahtā hai. muft kā khānā kahā miltā hai?*<sup>4</sup> aur jab bārīs hotī hai tab bhī Hirālāl ko kām karnā partā hai. jo log garīb haī unko har mausam mẽ kām karnā partā hai.

*jahā pahār yā caṛhāv ho vahā riksā calānā bahut hī muškil hai. jab do moṭe log apne bhārī sāmān ko lekar*<sup>5</sup> *rikse mẽ caṛhte haī to vazan bahut zyādā ho jātā hai. jab savāriyā utar jātī haī to Hirālāl apne rikse kī sīt par leṭkar sotā hai. jo log rikse calāte haī unhē bahut mehnat karnī partī hai.*

This is Hiralal, who lives in Agra. Hiralal is a rickshaw driver. The rickshaw that Hiralal drives is very fine. It shines like a diamond! Whoever made this rickshaw<sup>1</sup> must be a very great artist.<sup>2</sup>

Where Hiralal lives many other rickshaw-drivers live too. There are lots of rickshaws but few passengers come.<sup>3</sup> When not a single passenger comes, Hiralal's pocket remains empty. When the pocket remains empty the stomach also remains empty. Where can one get free food?<sup>4</sup> And when it rains, even then Hiralal has to work. People who are poor have to work in all weathers ['in every weather'].

Where there's a hill or a slope it's very difficult to drive a rickshaw. When two fat people get onto the rickshaw with their heavy luggage<sup>5</sup> the weight gets too much. When the passengers get down Hiralal lies down on the seat of his rickshaw and sleeps. People who drive rickshaws have to work very hard.

1 जिसने यह रिक्शा बनाया हो *jisne ya riksā banāyā ho* — 'the person who made this rickshaw'; हो *ho* is subjunctive (see 9.2) to reflect the fact that the identity of the person is vague or unknown.

2 Remember that the future can express an assumption — 'he must be a very great artist' (lit. 'he will be...').

3 The noun सवारी *savārī* is feminine, even if the 'passenger' described is male.

4 मुफ्त का खाना कहाँ मिलता है? *muft kā khānā kahā miltā hai?* 'Where can you get food for free?' It's a rhetorical question — you can't get free food anywhere.

5 भारी सामान को लेकर *bhārī sāmān ko lekar* 'taking heavy luggage' i.e. having heavy luggage with them.

**True or false?**

Are these statements right (सही *sahī*) or wrong (गलत *galat*)?

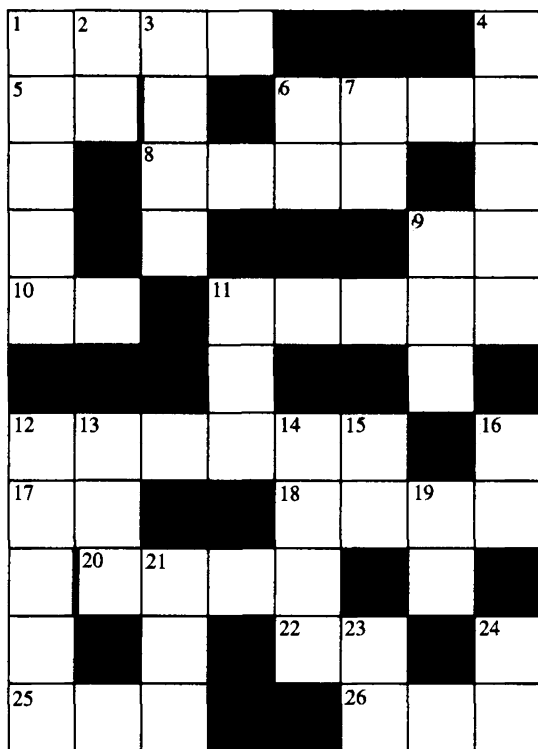
Answers below.

- |   | सही<br><i>sahī</i>       | गलत<br><i>galat</i>      |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| १ हीरालाल दिल्ली से है ।<br><i>Hirālāl dillī se hai.</i>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| २ उसके पास बहुत पैसा है ।<br><i>uske pās bahut paisā hai.</i>   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ३ हीरालाल का रिक्शा काफ़ी सुंदर है ।<br><i>Hirālāl kā rikṣā kāfī sundar hai.</i>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ४ हीरालाल के घर के पास कोई दूसरा रिक्शेवाला नहीं रहता ।<br><i>Hirālāl ke ghar ke pās koī dūsrā rikṣevālā nahī̃ rahtā.</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ५ सवारियों की कोई कमी नहीं है ।<br><i>savāriyō ki koī kamī nahī̃ hai.</i>   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ६ बारिश के मौसम में हीरालाल काम नहीं करता ।<br><i>bāris ke mausam mẽ Hirālāl kām nahī̃ kartā.</i>                         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ७ हीरालाल को खाना मुफ्त में मिलता है ।<br><i>Hirālāl ko khānā muft mẽ miltā hai.</i>                                      | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ८ जब हीरालाल थक जाता है तो वह सोता है ।<br><i>jab Hirālāl thak jātā hai to vah sotā hai.</i>                              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Answers: Only 3 and 8 are right.

**A crossword puzzle**

And now for something completely different: a crossword puzzle. Because the basic unit of the Devanagari script is the *syllable* (and not the individual letter, as in roman-script languages), each square will contain a complete syllable: so the word सोमवार *somvar* 'Monday' would split up into four component units, सो | म | वा | र (*so | m | va | r*). You will need to look up one or two words in the English-Hindi vocabulary.



## ACROSS

- 1 brave  
 5 political party, group  
 6 teacher (female)  
 8 Madhuban (hotel name)  
 9 always (archaic/formal)  
 10 then  
 11 Tuesday  
 12 newspaper seller  
 17 don't....!  
 18 ashtray  
 20 an Indian epic poem  
 22 straight  
 25 to bathe  
 26 singer

## DOWN

- 1 ugly  
 2 condition, state  
 3 enemy  
 4 shopkeeper  
 6 now  
 7 concentration, attention  
 9 question  
 11 temple  
 12 American  
 13 danger  
 14 ancient city on Ganges  
 15 100,000  
 16 that is to say  
 19 lentils  
 21 to hit  
 23 thread  
 24 one

## 2 Getting things done — causatives

As you know, the Hindi for 'to make' is बनाना *banānā* (हम चाय बनाएँगे *ham cāy banāēge* 'we'll make tea'). Extend this to बनवाना *banvānā* and you have a verb that means 'to get made, to cause to be made'.

हम चाय बनवाएँगे ।

*ham cāy banvāēge.* We'll get tea made.

हम नौकर से चाय बनवाएँगे ।

*ham naukār se cāy banvāēge.* We'll get tea made by the servant.

These verbs with -वा- -vā- extensions are called 'causatives'. The word से *se* conveys the sense 'by': नौकर से *naukar se* 'by the servant'.

Some causatives are less obviously connected to their base verb. For example, धोना *dhonā* 'to wash' yields the causative धुलवाना *dhulvānā* 'to get washed', and सीना *sīnā* 'to sew' has सिलवाना *silvānā* 'to get sewn'.

How many causatives can you spot in the following, in which Geeta talks about her annual preparations for Diwali?

सबसे पहले मैं दरज़ी से नए कपड़े सिलवाती हूँ । फिर धोबी को बुलवाकर मैं उससे सारे गंदे कपड़े धुलवाती हूँ । जो कपड़े मैंने खुद धोए हों उनको मैं धोबी से प्रेस ['press'] करवाती हूँ । फिर घर को अच्छी तरह से साफ़ करवाती हूँ और रात का खाना बनवाती हूँ । रात को हम दिये जलाते हैं, या उनको बच्चों से जलवाते हैं ।

*sabse pahle māi darzī se nae kapṛe silvāti hū. phir dhobī ko bulvākar māi usse sāre gande kapṛe dhulvāti hū. jo kapṛe māine khud dhoe hō unko māi dhobī se pres ['press'] karvāti hū. phir ghar ko acchī tarah se sāf karvāti hū aur rāt kā khānā banvāti hū. rāt ko ham diye jalāte hai, yā unko baccō se jalvāte hai.*

First of all I get new clothes sewn by the tailor. Then I have the dhobi called and I get all the dirty clothes washed by him ['get him to wash...']. Whatever clothes I've washed myself I get ironed by him. Then I get the house cleaned thoroughly and I get dinner made. At night we light lamps, or get them lit by the children ['get the children to light them'].

There are seven causatives here (including two appearances of करवाना *karvānā* 'to get done, cause to be done'):

सिलवाना *silvānā* to get sewn (सीना *sīnā* to sew)

बुलवाना *bulvānā* to get called, to summon (बुलाना *bulānā* to call)

धुलवाना *dhulvānā* to get washed (धोना *dhonā* to wash)

प्रेस करवाना *pres karvānā* to get pressed, ironed (प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to press, iron)

साफ़ करवाना *sāf karvānā* to get cleaned (साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean)

बनवाना *banvānā* to get made (बनाना *banānā* to make)

जलवाना *jalvānā* to get lit (जलाना *jalānā* to light)

### Verb triplets

You'll often find triplets of related verbs like these sets:

बनना	बनाना	बनवाना
<i>bannā</i> to be made	<i>banānā</i> to make	<i>banvānā</i> to get made
बोलना	बुलाना	बुलवाना
<i>bolnā</i> to speak	<i>bulānā</i> to call	<i>bulvānā</i> to summon
धुलना	धोना	धुलवाना
<i>dhulnā</i> to be washed	<i>dhonā</i> to wash	<i>dhulvānā</i> to get washed
जलना	जलाना	जलवाना
<i>jalnā</i> to burn	<i>jalānā</i> to light	<i>jalvānā</i> to get lit

### Practise what you've learnt

Now it's your turn to use causatives. Translate these sentences using the verbs provided.

- We'll have the children taught Hindi by Sharma ji.  
(सिखवाना *sikhvānā* to have taught)
- I got some food prepared by the servants.  
(तैयार करवाना *taiyār karvānā* to get prepared)
- We have to get the car fixed.  
(ठीक करवाना *thīk karvānā* to get fixed)

- 4 I want to get some kurtas sewn by Masterji.  
(सिलवाना *silvānā* to get sewn)
- 5 I got these letters written by someone.  
(लिखवाना *likhvānā* to get written)

### Did you know?

The popular Hindi film from Bombay brings a knowledge of the language to millions of people outside the Hindi-speaking area. Despite its nickname of 'Bollywood', the Hindi film industry has its own conventions — quite different from those of Hollywood.

### ▶ A visit to the doctor

Sadly, Raju has been feeling unwell. Can the doctor help?

**डाक्टर** आइए, आइए । क्या तकलीफ़ है आपको ?

**राजू** डाक्टर साहब, मेरा सारा शरीर दर्द कर रहा है ।<sup>1</sup>

**डाक्टर** आपकी तबियत कब से ख़राब है ?

**राजू** दो दिन से । परसों मैं काम पर जानेवाला था<sup>2</sup> कि<sup>3</sup> सिर में दर्द होने लगा ।

**डाक्टर** लगता है आपको फ़्लू हो गया है ।<sup>4</sup>

**राजू** तो मुझे क्या करना चाहिए ?

**डाक्टर** सिर्फ़ आराम करना चाहिए ।

**राजू** कोई दवा या गोली तो दीजिए !

**डाक्टर** आपको किसी गोली-वोली<sup>5</sup> की ज़रूरत नहीं है । आराम ही इलाज है ।

**ḍāḱṭar** āie, āie. kyā taklif hai āpko?

**Rājū** ḍāḱṭar sāhab, merā sārā śarīr dard kar rahā hai.<sup>1</sup>

**ḍāḱṭar** āpkī tabiyat kab se kharāb hai?

**Rājū** do din se. parsō maī kām par jānevālā thā<sup>2</sup> ki<sup>3</sup> sir mē dard hone lagā.

**ḍāḱṭar** lagtā hai āpko flū ho gayā hai.<sup>4</sup>

**Rājū** to mujhe kyā karnā cāhie?

**ḍāḱṭar** sirf ārām karnā cāhie.



**Rājū** *koī davā yā golī dijīe.*

**ḍākṭar** *āpko kisī golī-volī<sup>5</sup> kī zarūrat nahī hai. ārām hī ilāj hai.*

**Doctor** Come in, come in. What's your complaint?

**Raju** Doctor sahib, my whole body is aching.

**Doctor** How long has your health been bad?

**Raju** For two days. The day before yesterday I was just about to go to work when my head started to ache.

**Doctor** It seems you've caught flu.

**Raju** So what should I do?

**Doctor** You should just rest.

**Raju** Please give [me] some medicine or tablet!

**Doctor** You don't need any tablet or anything like that. Rest itself is the cure.

1 दर्द करना *dard karnā* 'to hurt'; also दर्द होना *dard honā* 'to have a pain' (मेरे सिर में दर्द हो रहा है *mere sir mē dard ho rahā hai* 'I have a headache').

2 मैं जानेवाला था *maī jānevālā thā* 'I was about to go'; -वाला *-vālā* added to a verb ending in *-ne* means 'about to'. गीता अभी जानेवाली है *Gītā abhī jānevālī hai* 'Geeta's just about to go', मैं अभी आपको फोन करनेवाला था *maī abhī āpko fon karnevālā thā* 'I was just about to phone you'.

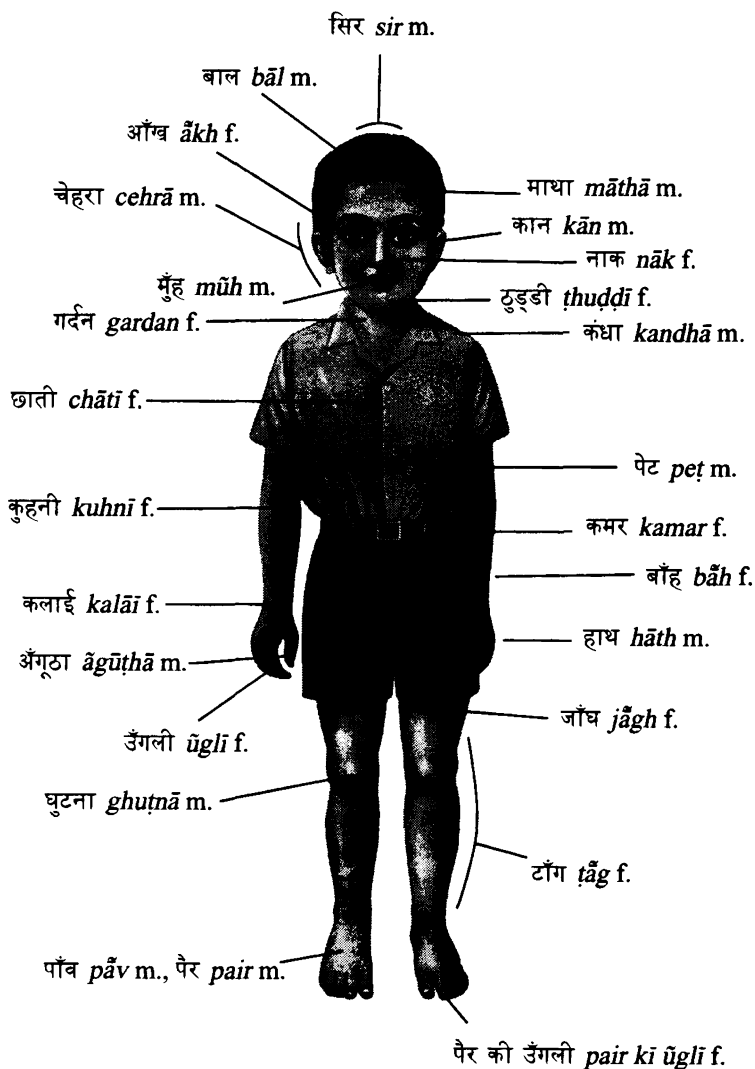
3 कि *ki* here means 'when, when suddenly' in this construction with -वाला *-vālā* (see note 2).

4 हो जाना *ho jānā* is the simplest way of saying 'to get' an illness etc. The patient takes को *ko*.

6 गोली-वोली *golī-volī* 'tablet or anything like that' — बोली *volī* is a meaningless echo-word. Echo-words, usually beginning *v-*, generalize the sense of the preceding word, opening out the range of meaning from something specific (here, medicine) to a broader category (here, any kind of medication). Compare the following: चाय-वाय *cāy-vāy* 'tea etc.', खाना-वाना *khānā-vānā* 'food, something to eat', पानी-वानी *pānī-vānī* 'water, something to drink'. The doctor's remark here has a disparaging touch: 'You don't need any tablet or any such nonsense!'

### 3 Parts of the body

In order to explain feelings of pain and sickness etc. you need to know the main parts of the body. Ram has helpfully agreed to pose for us (for a substantial fee):





## The doctor asks you some questions

Role play: you go to the doctor because you've had a stomach ache, sickness and diarrhoea for two days. You have a headache but your temperature is normal. Your alcohol consumption is moderate; you usually sleep OK. You have been careful about your food, and the only water you drink is bottled water (बोतल का पानी *botal kā pānī*). Now, answer the doctor's questions:

- १ आपकी तबियत कब से ख़राब है ?  
*āpkī tabiyat kab se kharāb hai?* How long has your health been bad?
- २ आपको बुख़ार तो नहीं है ?  
*āpko bukhār to nahī hai?* You don't have fever, do you?
- ३ क्या सिर में दर्द है ?  
*kyā sir mẽ dard hai?* Do you have a headache?
- ४ आप बाहर का खाना खाते/खाती हैं, बाज़ार में ?  
*āp bāhar kā khānā khāte/khātī hai, bāzār mẽ ?* Do you eat food from outside, in the market?
- ५ आप नल का पानी पीते/पीती हैं ?  
*āp nal kā pānī pīte/pītī hai?* Do you drink tap water?
- ६ उलटी हो रही है ?  
*ulṭī ho rahī hai?* [Are you] Having vomiting attacks?
- ७ दस्त भी है ?  
*dast bhī hai?* Is there diarrhoea too?
- ८ क्या आप शराब पीते/पीती हैं ?  
*kyā āp śarāb pīte/pītī hai?* Do you drink alcohol?
- ९ क्या आपको नींद ठीक से आती है ?  
*kyā āpko nīd ṭhīk se ātī hai?* Do you sleep properly?
- १० आप कितने बजे सोते/सोती हैं ?  
*āp kitne baje sote/sotī hai?* What time do you sleep?
- ११ कितने घंटे सोते/सोती हैं ?  
*kitne ghaṇṭe sote/sotī hai?* How many hours do you sleep?
- १२ और कोई तकलीफ़ है आपको ?  
*aur koī taklīf hai āpko?* Do you have any other symptoms?

## 4 Shades of meaning

Different languages have different ways of adding shades of meaning to a statement. In English, for example, the basic verb 'to write' underlies the variations 'write down, write up, write out, write in' and so on. In Hindi, shades of meaning are often conveyed by a *pairing of two verbs*. Think of it being a bit like making lassi, the yoghurt drink: the first verb is the yoghurt that gives the basic meaning, while the second verb is the choice of sugar or salt that adds the flavouring. Here's an example with लिखना *likhnā* 'to write' as first verb, and लेना *lenā* 'to take' or देना *denā* 'to give' as second verb:

मेरा पता लिख लो ।

*merā patā likh lo.* Write down my address.

नहीं, तुम लिख दो ।

*nahī, tum likh do.* No, you write [it] out.

लिख लो *likh lo* — this combines the basic sense of लिखना *likhnā* 'to write' with a shade of meaning from लेना *lenā* 'to take'; लेना *lenā* here suggests that the action is a 'taking' one — something done *for the benefit of the person who does the action*. So the implied meaning is 'Take down my address [for your own use]'.

लिख दो *likh do* — this combines the basic sense of लिखना *likhnā* with a shade of meaning from देना *denā* 'to give'; देना *denā* here suggests that the action is a 'giving' one — something done *for the benefit of someone else*. So the implied meaning is 'Write it out for me'.

As well as लेना *lenā* and देना *denā*, another verb commonly used in this construction is जाना *jānā*, literally 'to go'. In harmony with its literal meaning of movement from one place to another, it colours a preceding verb with a sense of *completed action*, or a *change of state*:

अरे ! बिजली बंद हो गई !

*are! bijlī band ho gai!* Hey! The electricity's gone off!

अच्छा ? मैं तो सो गया था ।

*acchā? mai to so gayā thā.* Really? I'd gone to sleep.

बिजली बंद हो गई *bijlī band ho gai* — the main verb होना *honā* 'to be' changes to हो जाना *ho jānā* 'to become', because a *change of state* has taken place.

में सो गया था *mai so gayā thā* — the verb सोना *sonā* 'to sleep' changes to सो जाना *so jānā* 'to go to sleep', with the sense of 'go' very similar in both English and Hindi.

Verbs of this kind are called 'compound verbs'. (Hindi has a better name for them — रंजक क्रिया *ranjak kriyā* 'colouring verbs'.) There are many more combinations, some of which are given in the Grammar Summary, but लेना *lenā*, देना *denā* and जाना *jānā* are by far the most common.

The ने *ne* construction is only used with compound verbs if *both* verbs in the compound are ने *ne* verbs (i.e. ones that are marked with <sup>N</sup> in the glossary at the end of the book).

Finally, a word of warning: compound verbs give a specific sense of the way in which a *particular* action is done. It therefore follows that *a sentence that's negative or general won't use them*; if no one drinks the lassi, its taste is irrelevant! Look closely at the use of a compound verb in the first of these two sentences, then at the *dropping* of the compound in the second (which is negative):

राजू — मैंने खाना खा लिया है ।

*Rājū — maine khānā khā liyā hai.* I've had my meal.

गीता — अच्छा? मैंने तो नहीं खाया है ।

*Gītā — acchā? maine to nahī khāyā hai.* Really? I haven't.

Raju stresses that he's had (and enjoyed or benefited from) his meal, a sense given by लेना *lenā*. But Geeta hasn't eaten yet, so her reply has no scope for the implication that लेना *lenā* brings.



### I've already done this

The verb चुकना *cuknā* means 'to have finished doing, to have already done', and it's used in a structure identical to the one we've just been looking at — it follows the stem of the main verb:

मीना जा चुकी है ।

*Mīnā jā cukī hai.* Meena has already gone.

राम अपना काम कर चुका है ।

*Rām apnā kām kar cukā hai.* Ram has already done his work.

मनोज अपनी किताब पढ़ चुका है ।

*Manoj apnī kitāb parh cukā hai.* Manoj has already read (or 'finished reading') his book.

राजू और गीता खाना खा चुके हैं ।

*Rājū aur Gītā khānā khā cuke hāĩ.* Raju and Geeta have already eaten (or 'have finished eating').

You'll be glad to hear that the *ने ne* construction is *never* used here!

### Did you manage to do this?

The same structure is used again with the verb पाना *pānā*. This literally means 'to find, obtain', but here it gives the meaning 'to manage to, to be able to' (compare सकना *saknā*, met in Unit 6).

कल मैं नहीं जा पाया ।

*kal maĩ nahĩ jā pāyā.* I didn't manage to go yesterday.

गीता टिकट नहीं खरीद पाई ।

*Gītā ṭikaṭ nahĩ kharid pāĩ.* Geeta wasn't able to buy a ticket.

क्या तुम यह काम अकेले कर पाओगे ?

*kyā tum yah kām akele kar pāoge?* Will you manage to do this work alone?

## 5 Style in Hindi

The language used in this book reflects ordinary unselfconscious speech. But like all languages, Hindi has a variety of styles — formal, informal, colloquial and so on. Formal Hindi uses a lot of loanwords from Sanskrit (India's main classical language) just as formal English uses words from Latin and Greek. For example, formal Hindi would use the Sanskrit loanword सहायता *sahāyātā* 'assistance' rather than the informal मदद *madad* 'help'; which is a loanword from Arabic and which has an entirely natural place in informal Hindi. Many Arabic and some Turkish words came to India as part of the Persian language, from about the 11th century onwards — they are far from being newcomers!

The formal style of the language is called शुद्ध हिन्दी *śuddh hindī* — 'pure Hindi'; but as this example of सहायता *sahāyātā* shows, it is itself dependent on Sanskrit loanwords, which means that any claims to linguistic 'purity' have to be taken with a pinch of salt. In formal Hindi, especially in the written language but also in some people's preferred speaking style also, one 'requires assistance', one does not 'need help'! When you start reading Hindi books and newspapers, you'll have to start adding Sanskritic vocabulary to the colloquial

base you're learning here. But be careful about using it too much in everyday conversational contexts, because it could make your Hindi sound very bookish. People who learn Hindi from grammar books alone, especially those of the traditional variety, end up 'requiring assistance'!

Today, informal Hindi uses words from a rich variety of sources, especially English, whose relentless spread throughout the world can be seen as a threat to so many languages. Go shopping with Geeta and you'll hear *lots* of familiar words. Here we catch up with her buying shoes in a shop in 'fashionable' South Extension, Delhi:

**गीता** आपके पास ग्रीन कलर का जूता है ?

**दुकानदार** हाँ मैडम, देखिए, ये शूज ग्रीन कलर के हैं । और बहुत ही रीज़नेबुल हैं ।

**गीता** नहीं, यह स्टाइल मैं लाइक नहीं करती ।

**दुकानदार** पर इसकी लेदर बहुत ही सॉफ्ट है ! और क्वालिटी भी देखिए इसकी ! ट्राई तो कीजिए !

**Gītā** *āpke pās grīn kalar kā jūtā hai?*

**dukāndār** *hā̃ maiḍam, dekhie, ye šūz grīn kalar ke hā̃. aur bahut hī rīzanebul hā̃.*

**Gītā** *nahī, yah sṭāil mai lāik nahī kartī.*

**dukāndār** *par iskī ledar bahut hī sāṛṭ hai! aur kvāliṭī bhī dekhie iskī! trāī to kījīe!*

**Geeta** Do you have a green colour shoe?

**Shopkeeper** Yes madam, please look, these shoes are green. And they're very reasonable.

**Geeta** No, I don't like this style.

**Shopkeeper** But its leather is very soft. And see its quality too! Try it at least!

... and so on! As a learner of Hindi, you may find it rather depressing that it has allowed itself to be so heavily influenced by a language that is so foreign to its own character. But between the two extremes of heavily Sanskritized and heavily Anglicized versions of the language, Hindi remains a superbly subtle and vibrant language, full of expressiveness and life!

## 6 Numbers

Here are the cardinal numbers. You'll find it easier to get familiar with the higher ones (above 20) if you read them in 'decade' sequences such as 21, 31, 41 etc.

० शून्य *sūnya*

१ एक ११ ग्यारह २१ इक्कीस ३१ इक्तीस ४१ इक्तालीस

1 *ek* 11 *gyārah* 21 *ikkis* 31 *ikattis* 41 *iktālīs*

२ दो १२ बारह २२ बाईस ३२ बत्तीस ४२ बयालीस

2 *do* 12 *bārah* 13 *bāis* 33 *battis* 43 *bayālīs*

३ तीन १३ तेरह २३ तेईस ३३ तैंतीस ४३ तैंतालीस

3 *tīn* 13 *terah* 23 *teīs* 33 *taītīs* 43 *taītālīs*

४ चार १४ चौदह २४ चौबीस ३४ चौतीस ४४ चवालीस

4 *cār* 14 *caudah* 24 *caubīs* 34 *caūtīs* 44 *cavālīs*

५ पाँच १५ पंद्रह २५ पच्चीस ३५ पैतीस ४५ पैतालीस

5 *pāc* 15 *pandrah* 25 *paccīs* 35 *paitīs* 45 *paītālīs*

६ छह १६ सोलह २६ छब्बीस ३६ छत्तीस ४६ छियालीस

6 *chah* 16 *solah* 26 *chabbīs* 36 *chattis* 46 *chiyālīs*

७ सात १७ सत्रह २७ सत्ताईस ३७ सैंतीस ४७ सैंतालीस

7 *sāt* 17 *satrah* 27 *sattāīs* 37 *saītīs* 47 *saītālīs*

८ आठ १८ अठारह २८ अट्ठाईस ३८ अड़तीस ४८ अड़तालीस

8 *āṭh* 18 *aṭhārah* 28 *aṭṭhāīs* 38 *aṭīs* 48 *aṭālīs*

९ नौ १९ उन्नीस २९ उनतीस ३९ उनतालीस ४९ उनचास

9 *nau* 19 *unnīs* 29 *untīs* 39 *untālīs* 41 *uncās*

१० दस २० बीस ३० तीस ४० चालीस ५० पचास

10 *das* 20 *bīs* 30 *tīs* 40 *cālīs* 50 *pacās*

५१ इक्यावन ६१ इक्सठ ७१ इकहत्तर ८१ इक्यासी ९१ इक्यानवे

51 *ikyāvan* 61 *iksath* 71 *ik'hattar* 81 *ikyāsī* 91 *ikyānve*

५२ बावन ६२ बासठ ७२ बहत्तर ८२ बयासी ९२ बानवे

52 *bāvan* 62 *bāsath* 72 *bahattar* 82 *bayāsī* 92 *bānve*

५३ तिरपन ६३ तिरसठ ७३ तिहत्तर ८३ तिरासी ९३ तिरानवे

53 *tirpan* 63 *tirsath* 73 *tihattar* 83 *tirāsī* 93 *tirānve*



५४ चौवन	६४ चौंसठ	७४ चौहत्तर	८४ चौरासी	९४ चौरानवे
54 cauvan	64 caūsath	74 cauhattar	84 caurāsī	94 caurānve
५५ पचपन	६५ पैसठ	७५ पचहत्तर	८५ पचासी	९५ पचानवे
55 pacpan	65 paīsath	75 pac'hattar	85 pacāsī	95 pacānve
५६ छप्पन	६६ छियासठ	७६ छिहत्तर	८६ छियासी	९६ छियानवे
56 chappan	66 chiyāsath	76 chihattar	86 chiyāsī	96 chiyānve
५७ सत्तावन	६७ सरसठ	७७ सतहत्तर	८७ सत्तासी	९७ सत्तानवे
57 sattāvan	67 sarsath	77 sat'hattar	87 sattāsī	97 sattānve
५८ अट्ठावन	६८ अड़सठ	७८ अठहत्तर	८८ अट्ठासी	९८ अट्टानवे
58 aṭṭāvan	68 aṛsath	78 aṭhhattar	88 aṭṭhāsī	98 aṭṭhānve
५९ उनसठ	६९ उनहत्तर	७९ उन्यासी	८९ नवासी	९९ निन्यानवे
59 unsath	69 unhattar	79 unyāsī	89 navāsī	99 innyānve
६० साठ	७० सत्तर	८० अस्सी	९० नब्बे	१०० सौ
60 sāth	70 sattar	80 assī	90 nabbe	100sau

1.5	डेढ़ <i>ḍeṛh</i>
2.5	ढाई <i>dhāi</i>
1000	हज़ार <i>hazār</i>
100,000	लाख <i>lākh</i>
10,000,000	करोड़ <i>karoṛ</i> (100 lakh, written 100,00,000)
150	डेढ़ सौ <i>ḍeṛh sau</i>
1500	डेढ़ हज़ार <i>ḍeṛh hazār</i>
150,000	डेढ़ लाख <i>ḍeṛh lākh</i>
250	ढाई सौ <i>dhāi sau</i>
2500	ढाई हज़ार <i>dhāi hazār</i>
250,000	ढाई लाख <i>dhāi lākh</i>

## 7 Time

Telling the time involves the following words:

बजे *baje* o'clock

बजना *bajnā* to chime, resound

डेढ़ *ḍerh* one and a half

ढाई *dhāi* two and a half

पौन, पौना *paun, paune* three quarters

सवा *savā* one and a quarter

साढ़े *sārhe* plus a half (with 3 and upwards)

पौन बजा है । *paun bajā hai.* It's a quarter to one.

एक बजा है । *ek bajā hai.* It's one o'clock.

डेढ़ बजा है । *ḍerh bajā hai.* It's half past one.

दो बजे हैं । *do baje hai.* It's two o'clock.

ढाई बजे हैं । *dhāi baje hai* It's half past two.

सवा सात बजे हैं । *savā sāt baje hai.* It's a quarter to seven.

पौने दस बजे हैं । *paune das baje hai.* It's a quarter to ten.

साढ़े ग्यारह बजे हैं । *sārhe gyārah baje hai.* It's half past eleven.

हम दो बजे मिलेंगे । *ham do baje milēge.* We'll meet at two o'clock.

मैं डेढ़ बजे तक आऊँगा । *maī ḍerh baje tak āūḡā.* I'll come by half past one.

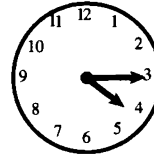
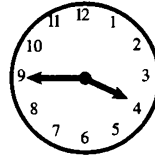
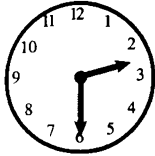
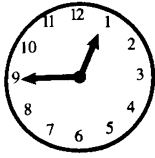
दस बज रहे हैं । *das baj rahe hai.* It's just ten (ten is striking).

दस बजनेवाले हैं । *das bajnevāle hai.* It's nearly ten (ten's about to strike).

Minutes before and after the hour are expressed by बजने में *bajne mē* and बजकर *bajkar* respectively.

एक बजने में बीस मिनट हैं । *ek bajne mē bīs minaṭ hai.* It's 12.40.

आठ बजकर बीस मिनट हैं । *āṭh bajkar bīs minaṭ hai.* It's 8.20.



पौन बजा है

*paun bajā hai*

एक बजा है

*ek bajā hai*

डेढ़ बजा है

*ḍeṛh bajā hai*

दो बजे हैं

*do baje hai*

ढाई बजे हैं

*ḍhāi baje hai*

साढ़े चार बजे हैं

*sāṛhe cār baje hai*

पौने चार बजे हैं

*paune cār baje hai*

सवा चार बजे हैं

*savā cār baje hai*

## Months

India still uses its traditional calendar (with lunar months) for festival dates, and you can find plenty of web-based information on this by typing 'Hindu Calendar' into a search engine. But the 'western' (or global) calendar is usually preferred for mundane functions.

The month names are spelt in Hindi with dental consonants: this reflects their Portuguese ancestry (words from English being generally spelt with retroflexes).

जनवरी

*janvarī*

फरवरी

*farvarī*

मार्च

*mārc*

अप्रैल

*aprail*

मई

*mai*

जून

*jūn*

जुलाई

*julāi*

अगस्त

*agast*

सितंबर

*sitambar*

अक्तूबर

*aktūbar*

नवंबर

*navambar*

दिसंबर

*disambar*

**Exercise 12a** Answer the questions about Hiralal:

- १ जो रिक्शा हीरालाल चलाता है, उसको किसने बनाया होगा ?  
*jo rikṣā Hirālāl calātā hai, usko kisne banāyā hogā?*
- २ जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ और कौन रहता है ?  
*jahāṁ Hirālāl rahtā hai vahāṁ aur kaun rahtā hai?*
- ३ जिस शहर में हीरालाल रहता है, उसका नाम क्या है ?  
*jis ṣahar mẽ Hirālāl rahtā hai, uskā nām kyā hai?*
- ४ जब बारिश होती है तो क्या हीरालाल घर जाता है ?  
*jab bārīṣ hotī hai to kyā Hirālāl ghar jātā hai?*
- ५ रिक्शे का वज़न कब बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है ?  
*rikṣe kā vazan kab bahut zyādā ho jātā hai?*
- ६ हीरालाल की जेब कब खाली रहती है ?  
*Hirālāl kī jeb kab khālī rahtī hai?*
- ७ जो लोग रिक्शे चलाते हैं उनकी ज़िन्दगी कैसी होती है ?  
*jo log rikṣe calāte hāi unkī zindagī kaisī hotī hai?*

**Exercise 12b** Complete the sentences meaningfully:

- ८ जो लोग भारत के बारे में कुछ सीखना चाहते हैं, उनको ...  
*jo log bhārat ke bāre mẽ kuch sikhṇā cāhte hāi, unko...*
- ९ जब मैंने पहली बार ताज महल को देखा, मैंने सोचा कि ...  
*jab maīne pahli bār tāj mahal ko dekhā, maīne socā ki...*
- १० जहाँ मेरे रिश्तेदार रहते हैं, वहाँ ...  
*jahāṁ mere riṣtedār rahte hāi, vahāṁ...*
- ११ जो आदमी मेरे साथ काम करता है उसकी ...  
*jo ādmī mere sāth kām kartā hai uskī...*
- १२ जो आदमी मेरे घर के सामने रहता है वह ...  
*jo ādmī mere ghar ke sāmne rahtā hai vah...*
- १३ जिन लोगों के पास बहुत पैसा है, वे ...  
*jin logō ke pās bahut paisā hai, ve...*
- १४ जो कपड़े मैंने कल खरीदे ...  
*jo kapre maīne kal kharīde...*

**Exercise 12c** Translate:

- 15 When I go to Agra I often stay at Raju's place.
- 16 The man who teaches us Hindi is Raju's brother.
- 17 The present I gave to Ram today was quite cheap.
- 18 When I gave it to him he showed it to his mother.
- 19 When Raju's mother saw my present she began to laugh.
- 20 I'll never forget the question she asked Raju about me.
- 21 The answer Raju gave will always remain in my memory.

**Exercise 12d** Here's a short letter to Manoj from a friend in the USA. Translate it, keeping an eye out the compound verbs.

प्रिय मनोज,

तुम्हारा खत मिल गया, शुक्रिया। एक साल से कोई खत नहीं आया था तो मैं सोचने लगा था कि मेरे दोस्त मनोज को क्या हो गया है ?

यहाँ सब ठीक है। मेरे भाई की शादी हो गई है। उसने दिल्ली में एक छोटा-सा मकान किराये पर लिया है।

मेरे पिताजी कहते हैं कि अब तुम भी शादी कर लो। पर मैंने उनको साफ़ बता दिया है कि मैं अभी शादी नहीं करूँगा। अभी जवान हूँ। जब तीस साल का हो जाऊँगा तो शायद इन बातों के बारे में सोचना शुरू करूँगा। लेकिन पिताजी मेरी बात नहीं सुनना चाहते। अभी थोड़ी देर पहले वे फिर से शादी के बारे में बात करने लगे। मैं थोड़ा नाराज़ हो गया। मैंने कहा, “हाँ पापा, मैं ने सुन लिया !”

अपना ई-मेल का पता मुझे बता देना।

तुम्हारा

मोटू

*priy Manoj,*

*tumhārā khat mil gayā, śukriyā. ek sāl se koī khat nahī āyā thā to maī socne lagā thā ki mere dost Manoj ko kyā ho gayā hai?*

*yahā sab thik hai. mere bhāī kī śādī ho gāī hai. usne dillī mẽ ek choṭa-sā makān kirāye par liyā hai.*

*mere pitājī kahte hai ki ab tum bhī śādī kar lo. par maīne unko sāf kah diyā hai ki maī abhī śādī nahī karūgā. abhī javān hū. jab tīs sāl kā ho jāūgā to śāyad in bātō ke bāre mẽ*

socnā śurū karūgā. lekin pitājī merī bāt nahī sunna cāhte.  
 abhī thoṛī der pahle ve phir se śādī ke bāre mē bāt karne lage.  
 maī thoṛā nārāz ho gayā. maīne kahā, 'hā pāpā, maīne sun liyā!'  
 apnā i-mel ka patā mujhe batā denā.  
 tumhārā  
 Moṭū.

## Glossary

अँगूठा āgūthā m. thumb	जब jab when
आँख ākh f. eye	जलना jalnā to burn
उँगली ūglī f. finger	जलवाना jalvānā to cause to burn
उगना ugnā to grow (of plants)	जवान javān young
उतरना, उतर जाना utarnā, utar jānā to get down, alight	जहाँ jahā where
उलटी ulṭī f. vomiting, sickness	जाँच jāgh f. high
कटना kaṭnā to be cut	जेब jeb f. pocket
कमर kamar f. waist	जैसा... वैसा jaisā... vaisā as [one thing], so [another]
कलाई kalāī f. wrist	टाँग ṭāṅg f. leg
करवाना karvānā to cause to be done, to get done	टूटना ṭūṭnā to break
कान kām m. ear	ठुढ़ी ṭhuddī f. chin
कि ki when, when suddenly; or	ताज महल tāj mahal m. Taj Mahal
कुहनी kuhnī f. elbow	दस्त dast m. diarrhoea; दस्त आना dast ānā to have diarrhoea
खेल khel m. game	दाँत dāt m. tooth
गरीब garīb poor	दिया diyā m. lamp
गर्दन gardan f. neck	दिल dil m. heart
गाल gāl f. cheek	धुलना dhulnā to be washed
घास ghās f. grass	धुलवाना dhulvānā to cause to be washed
घुटना ghuṭnā m. knee	नल nal m. tap, pipe
चढ़ना caṛhnā to climb; to get into vehicle	नाक nāk f. nose
चढ़ाव caṛhāv m. rise, incline	नींद nīd f. sleep; नींद आना nīd ānā (sleep to come) to get to sleep
चमकना camaknā to shine	नौकर naukar m. servant
चुकना cuknā to have already done (with verb stem: वह जा चुका है vah jā cukā hai 'He's already gone')	पता patā m. address; whereabouts
छाती chātī f. chest	

पहाड़ *pahār* m. hill  
 पाँव *pāṁv* m. foot, leg  
 पाना *pānā* to find, obtain; to be  
 able, to manage to (with  
 verb stem: मैं नहीं जा पाया  
*mai nahī jā pāyā* 'I didn't  
 manage to go')  
 पैर *pair* m. foot; पैर की उँगली  
*pair kī ūgli* f. toe  
 प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to iron  
 बनवाना *banvānā* to cause to be  
 made  
 बहुत ज़्यादा *bahut zyādā* very  
 great, too much  
 बाँह *bāḥ* f. arm, upper arm  
 बाल *bāl* m. hair  
 बुलवाना *bulvānā* to cause to be  
 called  
 भरना *bharnā* to be filled  
 भारी *bhārī* heavy  
 माथा *māthā* m. forehead  
 मुफ्त (का) *muft (kā)* free; मुफ्त में  
*muft mẽ* for nothing, free  
 मुँह *mūh* m. mouth; face  
 मौसम *mausam* m. weather

रिक्शा *riksā* m. rickshaw  
 लेटना *leṭnā* to lie down  
 वज़न *vazan* m. weight  
 विदेश *videś* abroad; विदेशी  
*videśī* m. foreigner;  
 adj. foreign  
 शरीर *śarīr* m. body  
 शानदार *śāndār* splendid,  
 magnificent  
 शुद्ध *śuddh* pure  
 शोला *śolā* m. flame; शोले  
*śole* 'Sholay', the title of a  
 cult Hindi film (1975)  
 सवारी *savārī* f. passenger, rider  
 सहायता *sahāytā* f. assistance  
 सामने *sāmne* opposite  
 सिखवाना *sikhvānā* to cause to  
 be taught  
 सिलवाना *silvānā* to cause to be  
 sewn  
 सीना *sīnā* to sew  
 हर *har* every, each  
 हराम *harām* forbidden  
 हीरा *hīrā* m. diamond  
 हो जाना *ho jānā* to become

# key to the exercises

Bear in mind that there will often be several possible ways of answering questions and translating sentences! In the case of questions addressed to the reader, sample answers are given.

## Unit 1

### What's this?

- १ जी नहीं, मोती बिल्ली नहीं, कुत्ता है ।  
*jī nahī, Motī billī nahī, kuttā hai.*
- २ जी हाँ, गीता डाक्टर है ।  
*jī hā, Gītā ḍāktar hai.*
- ३ जी नहीं, मैं डाक्टर नहीं, अध्यापक हूँ ।  
*jī nahī, māi ḍāktar nahī, adhyāpak hū.*
- ४ जी हाँ, राजू और गीता हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ।  
*jī hā, Rājū aur Gītā hindustānī hai.*
- ५ जी हाँ, हिन्दी बहुत आसान है !  
*jī hā, hindī bahut āsān hai!*

### 1a

- |       |                     |                                    |
|-------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| जावेद | यह क्या है ?        | <i>Jāved: yah kyā hai?</i>         |
| मनोज  | यह मेरा रेडियो है । | <i>Manoj: yah merā reḍiyo hai.</i> |
| जावेद | वह लड़का कौन है ?   | <i>Jāved: vah laṛkā kaun hai?</i>  |
| मनोज  | वह मेरा भाई है ।    | <i>Manoj: vah merā bhāi hai.</i>   |
| जावेद | उसका नाम क्या है ?  | <i>Jāved: uskā nām kyā hai?</i>    |
| मनोज  | उसका नाम राम है ।   | <i>Manoj: uskā nām Rām hai.</i>    |



- जावेद वह लड़की कौन है ? *Jāved: vah laṛkī kaun hai?*  
 मनोज उसका नाम मीना है । *Manoj: uskā nām Mīnā hai.*  
 जावेद क्या वह बीमार है ? *Jāved: kyā vah bīmār hai?*  
 मनोज जी नहीं, वह बीमार नहीं है, वह ठीक है । *Manoj: jī nahī, vah bīmār nahī hai, vah thīk hai.*

## 1b

- १ जी नहीं, सुरेश शादी-शुदा नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, Sureś śādī-śudā nahī hai.*
- २ जी हाँ, वह हिन्दुस्तानी है ।  
*jī hā, vah hindustānī hai.*
- ३ जी नहीं, वह अध्यापक नहीं है, विद्यार्थी है ।  
*jī nahī, vah adhyāpak nahī hai, vidyārthī hai.*
- ४ उसका पूरा नाम सुरेश खन्ना है ।  
*uskā pūrā nām Suresh Khannā hai.*
- ५ जी हाँ, उमा हिन्दुस्तानी है ।  
*jī hā, Umā hindustānī hai.*
- ६ जी नहीं, वह डाक्टर नहीं है, वह अध्यापक है ।  
*jī nahī, vah dāktar nahī hai, vah adhyāpak hai.*
- ७ जी नहीं, वह शादी-शुदा नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, vah śādī-śudā nahī hai.*
- ८ जी हाँ, वह सुखी है ।  
*jī hā, vah sukhī hai.*
- ९ जी नहीं, विनोद अँग्रेज़ नहीं है, वह अमरीकन है ।  
*jī nahī, Vinod āgrez nahī hai, vah amrīkan hai.*
- १० जी नहीं, वह अध्यापक नहीं है, वह डाक्टर है ।  
*jī nahī, vah adhyāpak nahī hai, vah dāktar hai.*
- ११ उसका पूरा नाम विनोद कुमार है ।  
*uskā pūrā nām Vinod Kumār hai.*
- १२ जी हाँ, वह शादी-शुदा है ।  
*jī hā, vah śādī-śudā hai.*

- १३ जी नहीं, सुरेश हिन्दुस्तानी है लेकिन विनोद अमरीकन है ।  
*jī nahī, Sureś hindustānī hai lekin Vinod amrīkan hai.*
- १४ जी नहीं, विनोद शादी-शुदा है लेकिन उमा शादी-सुदा नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, Vinod śādī-śudā hai lekin Umā śādī-śudā nahī hai.*
- १५ जी नहीं, उमा अध्यापक है लेकिन सुरेश विद्यार्थी है ।  
*jī nahī, umā adhyāpak hai lekin Sureś vidyārthī hai.*

## Unit 2

### Role play

- १ जी हाँ, मैं गीता हूँ । *jī hā, mai Gītā hū.*
- २ मेरा पूरा नाम गीता शर्मा है । *merā pūrā nām Gītā Śarmā hai.*
- ३ जी हाँ, मैं शादी-शुदा हूँ । *jī hā, mai śādī-śudā hū.*
- ४ राकेश मेरा भाई है । *Rākeś merā bhāī hai.*
- ५ सीता मेरी बहिन है । *Sītā merī bahin hai.*
- ६ जी नहीं, मेरी बहिन बीमार है । *jī nahī, merī bahin bīmār hai.*
- ७ जी नहीं, मेरा भाई ठीक है । *jī nahī, merā bhāī thīk hai.*
- ८ जी नहीं, मैं बीमार नहीं हूँ, मैं ठीक हूँ । *jī nahī, mai bīmār nahī hū, mai thīk hū.*

### Ordinal numbers quiz

- १ जी हाँ, पहला लड़का मोटा है ।  
*jī hā, pahlā larḳā moṭā hai.*
- २ पहला लड़का गणेश है ।  
*pahlā larḳā Gaṇeś hai.*
- ३ जी नहीं, तीसरा लड़का खुश नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, tīsra larḳā khuš nahī hai.*
- ४ पाँचवाँ लड़का राजेश है ।  
*pācvā larḳā Rājeś hai.*
- ५ जी हाँ, चौथा लड़का बहुत पतला है ।  
*jī hā, cauthā larḳā bahut patlā hai.*
- ६ चौथा लड़का दिनेश है ।  
*cauthā larḳā Dineś hai.*

- ५ जी नहीं, दूसरा लड़का महेश नहीं, सुरेश है ।  
*jī nahī, dūsarā lar̥ka Maheś nahī, Sureś hai.*

## 2a

- १ मेरा नाम मनोज है । राजू और गीता शर्मा मेरे माता-पिता हैं ।  
*merā nām Manoj hai. Rājū aur Gītā Śarmā mere mātā-pitā hai.*
- २ मीना मेरी छोटी बहिन है और राम मेरा छोटा भाई है ।  
*Mīnā merī choṭī bahin hai aur Rām merā choṭā bhāī hai.*
- ३ मोती हमारा कुत्ता है । वह बहुत प्यारा है ।  
*Motī hamārā kuttā hai. vah bahut pyārā hai.*
- ४ यह मीना है । यह ठीक है । यह छोटी है ।  
*yah Mīnā hai. yah ṭhīk hai. yah choṭī hai.*
- ५ हमारा मकान बहुत बड़ा नहीं है । सिर्फ पाँच कमरे हैं ।  
*hamārā makān bahut baṛā nahī hai. sirf pāc kamre hai.*
- ६ वह लड़का मेरा दोस्त है । उसका नाम प्रताप है ।  
*vah lar̥kā merā dost hai. uskā nām Pratāp hai.*
- ७ जावेद साहब हमारे पड़ोसी हैं ।  
*Jāved sāhab hamāre paṛosī hai.*

## 2b

- ८ ये लड़के बहुत प्यारे हैं । *ye lar̥ke bahut pyāre hai.*
- ९ ये कुत्ते हमारे नहीं हैं । *ye kutte hamāre nahī hai.*
- १० वे लड़के कौन हैं ? *ve lar̥ke kaun hai?*
- ११ ये आदमी कौन हैं ? *ye ādmī kaun hai?*
- १२ मेरे दोस्त पंजाबी हैं । *mere dost panjābī hai.*
- १३ क्या ये कुत्ते आपके हैं ? *kyā ye kutte āpke hai?*
- १४ वे औरतें कौन हैं ? *ve auratē kaun hai?*
- १५ हमारे बेटे अच्छे लड़के हैं । *hamāre betē acche lar̥ke hai.*
- १६ मेरी बेटियाँ बीमार हैं । *merī betiyā bīmār hai.*
- १७ क्या ये किताबें महँगी हैं ? *kyā ye kitābē mahāgi hai?*
- १८ ये मेज़ें गंदी हैं । *ye mezē gandī hai.*

## 2c

- १९ आप कौन हैं ? *āp kaun hai?*  
 २० आपका नाम क्या है ? *āpkā nām kyā hai?*  
 २१ आपके माता-पिता बहुत अच्छे लोग हैं । *āpke mātā-pitā bahut acche log hai.*  
 २२ आपका भाई सुंदर नहीं है । *āpkā bhāī sundar nahī hai.*  
 २३ आप दोनों लड़के लंबे हैं । *āp donō laṛke lambe hai.*  
 २४ आप कैसे हैं ? *āp kaise hai?*  
 २५ तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ? *tumhārā nām kyā hai?*  
 २६ क्या तुम ठीक हो ? *kyā tum thik ho?*  
 २७ तुम नाराज़ नहीं हो ? *tum nārāz nahī ho?*  
 २८ तुम कैसी हो ? *tum kaisī ho?*

## Unit 3

## Some questions for you

- १ सिर्फ़ एक आदमी है । *sirf ek ādmī hai.*  
 २ यह लंबा आदमी है । *yah lambā ādmī hai.*  
 ३ मेज़ छोटी है । *mez choṭī hai.*  
 ४ दो लड़कियाँ हैं । *do laṛkiyā hai.*  
 ५ कुल मिलाकर तीन लोग हैं । *kul milākar tīn log hai.*  
 ६ जी नहीं, एक लड़की लंबी है, दूसरी छोटी है । *jī nahī, ek laṛkī lambī hai, dūsarī choṭī hai.*  
 ७ दो चूहे हैं । *do cūhe hai.*  
 ८ सिर्फ़ एक कुर्सी है । *sirf ek kursī hai.*  
 ९ जी नहीं, चूहे छोटे हैं । *jī nahī, cūhe choṭe hai.*  
 १० सिर्फ़ एक तोता है । *sirf ek totā hai.*

## Where's the cat?

- १ बिल्ली बड़ी कुर्सी पर है । *billī baṛī kursī par hai.*  
 २ कुत्ता छोटी कुर्सी पर है । *kuttā choṭī kursī par hai.*  
 ३ तस्वीर में दो कुर्सियाँ हैं । *tasvīr mē do kursiyā hai.*

- ४ तस्वीर में सिर्फ एक बिल्ली है । *tasvīr mē sirf ek billī hai.*  
 ५ छोटी कुरसी पर कुत्ता है । *choṭī kursī par kuttā hai.*  
 ६ बड़ी कुरसी पर बिल्ली है । *baṛī kursī par billī hai.*  
 ७ मेज़ पर कुछ किताबें हैं । *mez par kuch kitābē haī.*  
 ८ जी हाँ, दोनों बहुत प्यारे हैं ! *jī hā, donō bahut pyāre haī!*

### House for rent

- १ घर आगरे में है ।  
*ghar āgre mē hai.*  
 २ नहीं, वह नया है ।  
*nahī, vah nayā hai.*  
 ३ चार कमरे हैं -- दो बड़े और दो छोटे ।  
*cār kamre haī — do baṛe aur do choṭe.*  
 ४ हाँ, सब कमरों में खिड़कियाँ हैं ।  
*hā, sab kamrō mē khirkiyā haī.*  
 ५ बड़े कमरों में पंखे हैं ।  
*baṛe kamrō mē pankhe haī.*  
 ६ बाहर बगीचा है । बगीचे में कुछ पेड़ हैं ।  
*bāhar bagīcā hai. bagīce mē kuch peṛ haī.*  
 ७ नहीं, दुकानें पास में हैं ।  
*nahī, dukānē pās mē haī.*  
 ८ किराया ५००० रुपये है ?  
*kirāyā 5000 hai.*

### Two tasks for you

- १ गीता वाराणसी से है । *Gītā vārāṇasī se hai.*  
 २ जी हाँ, गीता शादी-शुदा है । *jī hā, Gītā śādī-śudā hai.*  
 ३ जी हाँ, राजू दिल्ली से है । *jī hā, Rājū dillī se hai.*  
 ४ जी नहीं, राजू डाक्टर नहीं, अध्यापक है । *jī nahī, Rājū dāktar nahī, adhyāpak hai.*  
 ५ जी नहीं, यह घर दिल्ली में नहीं, आगरे में है । *jī nahī, yah ghar dillī mē nahī, āgre mē hai.*

- ६ घर में पाँच कमरे हैं । *ghar mẽ pāc kamre haĩ.*  
 ७ बड़े कमरे में एक मेज़ है । *baṛe kamre mẽ ek mez hai.*  
 ८ कम्प्यूटर मेज़ पर है । *kampyūṭar mez par hai.*  
 ९ किताबें फ़र्श पर हैं । *kitābē farś par haĩ.*  
 १० बगीचे में कुछ लंबे पेड़ हैं । *bagīce mẽ kuch lambe peṛ haĩ.*

## 3a

- १ मेरी किताबें मेज़ पर पड़ी हैं ।  
*merī kitābē mez par paṛī haĩ.*  
 २ आपका भाई बगीचे में बैठा है ।  
*āpkā bhāī bagīce mẽ baiṭhā hai.*  
 ३ मैं बड़े कमरे में खड़ा हूँ ।  
*maĩ baṛe kamre mẽ khaṛā hū̃.*  
 ४ आपकी किताबें छोटी अलमारी में हैं ।  
*āpkī kitābē choṭī almārī mẽ haĩ.*  
 ५ उसका मकान यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।  
*uskā makān yahā se dūr nahī hai.*  
 ६ आपके परिवार में कितने लोग हैं ?  
*āpke parivār mẽ kitne log haĩ?*  
 ७ आपके पति के पास कितना पैसा है ?  
*āpke pati ke pās kitnā paisā hai?*  
 ८ आज आपकी पत्नी कैसी हैं ? और आप कैसे हैं ?  
*āj āpkī patnī kaisī haĩ? aur āp kaise haĩ?*  
 ९ बच्चे घर पर नहीं हैं, स्कूल पर हैं ।  
*bacce ghar par nahī haĩ, skūl par haĩ.*  
 १० क्या यह छोटी लड़की तुम्हारी बहिन है ?  
*kyā yah choṭī laṛkī tumhārī bahin hai?*

## 3b

- ११ मेरा पूरा नाम श्रीमती गीता शर्मा है ।  
*merā pūrā nām śrīmatī Gītā Śarmā hai.*  
 १२ जी हाँ, मैं डाक्टर हूँ ।  
*jī hā̃, maĩ dākṭar hū̃.*

- १३ जी नहीं, मेरे पति अध्यापक हैं ।  
*jī nahī, mere pati adhyāpak hai.*
- १४ जी हाँ, वे घर पर हैं । *jī hā, ve ghar par hai.*
- १५ मेरे पति दिल्ली से हैं, लेकिन मैं वाराणसी से हूँ ।  
*mere pati dillī se hai, lekin mai vārāṇasī se hū.*
- १६ हमारे मकान में पाँच कमरे हैं ।  
*hamāre makān mē pāc kamre hai.*
- १७ हमारे परिवार में तीन बच्चे हैं ।  
*hamāre parivār mē tin bacce hai.*
- १८ जी नहीं, वह बगीचे में है ।  
*jī nahī, vah bagīce mē hai.*
- १९ जी नहीं, उसका स्कूल यहाँ से दूर नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, uskā skūl yahā se dūr nahī hai.*
- २० दूसरे बच्चे भी बगीचे में हैं ।  
*dūsre bacce bhī bagīce mē hai.*
- २१ जी हाँ, कुत्ता हमारा है ।  
*jī hā, kuttā hamārā hai.*
- २२ उसका नाम मोती है ।  
*uskā nām Motī hai.*
- २३ जी हाँ, हमारे पास गाड़ी है ।  
*jī hā, hamāre pās gārī hai.*
- २४ जी हाँ, मेरे पास कम्प्यूटर है ।  
*jī hā, mere pās kampyūtar hai.*

## Unit 4

### Practise what you've learnt

- १ मत जाओ । आओ, बैठो ।  
*mat jāo! āo, baiṭho.*
- २ बताओ, तुम कैसे हो ?  
*batāo, tum kaise ho?*
- ३ समोसा खाओ, पानी पियो ।  
*samosā khāo, pānī piyo.*

- ४ यह दूसरा समोसा भी लो ।  
*yah dūsṛā samosā bhī lo.*
- ५ मोती को समोसा न दो ।  
*Motī ko samosā na do.*
- ६ और खाओ !  
*aur khāo!*
- ७ ख़ाली प्लेट मेज़ पर रखो ।  
*khālī pleṭ meṭ par rakho.*
- ८ अरे ! सिग्रेट न पियो !  
*are! sigreṭ na piyo!*
- ९ और चाय लो ।  
*aur cāy lo.*

## 4a

- १ घर में शराब मत पियो / पीजिए ।  
*ghar mẽ śarāb mat piyo / pījie.*
- २ ध्यान से सुनो / सुनिए ।  
*dhyān se suno / sunie.*
- ३ यह पत्र मनोज को भेजो / भेजिए ।  
*yah patr Manoj ko bhejo / bhejie.*
- ४ घर जाओ / जाइए ।  
*ghar jāo / jāie.*
- ५ मुझको उसका नाम बताओ / बताइए ।  
*mujhko uskā nām batāo / batāie.*
- ६ ये दो समोसे खाओ / खाइए ।  
*ye do samose khāo / khāie.*
- ७ सितार बजाओ / बजाइए ।  
*sītār bajāo / bajāie.*
- ८ मेरे पड़ोसी से पूछो / पूछिए ।  
*mere paṛosī se pūcho / pūchie.*
- ९ यह पैसा मेरी पत्नी को दो / दीजिए ।  
*yah paisā merī patnī ko do / dījie.*



१० आज गाड़ी मत चलाओ / चलाइए ।

*āj gārī mat calāo / calāie.*

११ धीरे धीरे बोलो / बोलिए ।

*dhīre dhīre bolo / bolie.*

#### 4b

१२ राम से पूछिए । *Rām se pūchie.* Ask Ram.

१३ बच्चों को मत बताना । *baccō ko mat batānā.* Don't tell the children.

१४ चाचा जी से हिन्दी बोलो । *cācā jī se hindī bolo.* Speak Hindi with uncle.

१५ मनोज से बात कीजिए । *Manoj se bāt kijie.* Talk to Manoj.

१६ गीता से पैसा माँगना । *Gitā se paisā māgnā.* Ask Gita for money.

#### 4c

१७ मेरा भाई दिल्ली में रहता है । मेरी बहिन दिल्ली में रहती है ।  
*merā bhāi dillī mẽ rahtā hai. merī bahin dillī mẽ rahtī hai.*

१८ मैं हिन्दी समझता हूँ । हम हिन्दी समझते हैं ।  
*maī hindī samajhtā hū. ham hindī samajhte hai.*

१९ लड़का गाड़ी बहुत तेज़ चलाता है । लड़की गाड़ी बहुत तेज़ चलाती है ।  
*laṛkā gārī bahut tez calātā hai. laṛkī gārī bahut tez calātī hai.*

२० मेरा पति हिन्दी बोलता है । मेरी पत्नी हिन्दी बोलती है ।  
*merā pati hindī boltā hai. merī patnī hindī boltī hai.*

२१ कौन अँग्रेज़ी बोलता है ? कौन अँग्रेज़ी बोलती है ?  
*kaun āgrezī boltā hai? kaun āgrezī boltī hai?*

### Unit 5

#### 5a (sample answers)

१ बहुत अच्छी है, धन्यवाद ।  
*bahut acchī hai, dhanyavād.*

२ जी हाँ, घर में सब लोग ठीक हैं ।  
*jī hā, ghar mẽ sab log thīk hai.*

- ३ मुझको चावल चाहिए ।  
*mujhko cāval cāhie.*
- ४ पाँच किलो दीजिए ।  
*pāc kilo dījie.*
- ५ चीनी भी चाहिए । दो किलो देना ।  
*cīnī bhī cāhie. do kilo denā.*
- ६ हाँ, एक टिकिया साबुन ।  
*hā, ek ṭikiyā sābun.*
- ७ नहीं, वह सब नहीं चाहिए ।  
*nahī, vah sab nahī cāhie.*
- ८ यहाँ से काफी दूर है, लेकिन मेरे पास गाड़ी है ।  
*yahā se kāfī dūr hai, lekin mere pās gārī hai.*
- ९ जी नहीं, ये मेरी नहीं हैं ।  
*jī nahī, ye merī nahī hai.*
- १० जी नहीं, गाड़ी दुकान के बहुत पास खड़ी है ।  
*jī nahī, gārī dukān ke bahut pās khārī hai.*

**5b**

- ११ मुझको तीन समोसे चाहिए ।  
*mujhko tīn samose cāhie.*
- १२ उनको यह मकान पसंद नहीं है, छोटा मकान पसंद है ।  
*unko yah makān pasand nahī hai, choṭā makān pasand hai.*
- १३ मुझको यह कमरा पसंद नहीं है, कोई दूसरा कमरा दिखाइए ।  
*mujhko yah kamrā pasand nahī hai, koī dūsarā kamrā dikhāie.*
- १४ आप कहाँ रहते हैं ? हम पुरानी दिल्ली में रहते हैं ।  
*āp kahā rahte hai? ham purānī dillī mẽ rahte hai.*
- १५ आपका मकान मेरे मकान से बहुत दूर नहीं है । कल आना ।  
*āpkā makān hamāre makān se bahut dūr nahī hai. kal ānā.*
- १६ मुझको मालूम है कि मेरे अध्यापक यहाँ नहीं रहते ।  
*mujhko mālūm hai ki mere adhyāpak yahā nahī rahte.*
- १७ मुझको मालूम है कि आपके अध्यापक कहाँ रहते हैं ।  
*mujhko mālūm hai ki āpke adhyāpak kahā rahte hai.*

- १८ दिल्ली में मकान बहुत महँगे होते हैं ।  
*dillī mē makān bahut mahāṅge hote hai.*
- १९ दादा जी बहुत सुन्दर हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।  
*Dādā jī bahut sundar hindī bolte hai.*
- २० हमको ये काले जूते नहीं चाहिए ।  
*hamko ye kāle jūte nahī cāhie.*

## Unit 6

### You can go

- १ हम सिनेमा जा सकते हैं ।  
*ham sinemā jā sakte hai.*
- २ चाचा जी घर पर रह सकते हैं ।  
*cācā jī ghar par rah sakte hai.*
- ३ मैं अध्यापक से पूछ सकता हूँ ।  
*mai adhyāpak se pūch saktā hū.*
- ४ बच्चे बगीचे में खेल सकते हैं ।  
*bacce bagīce mē khel sakte hai.*
- ५ मैं अखबार पढ़ सकती हूँ ।  
*mai akhbār parh saktī hū.*
- ६ हम बच्चों को सब कुछ बता सकते हैं ।  
*ham baccō ko sab kuch batā sakte hai.*
- ७ तुम शराब नहीं पी सकते हो ।  
*tum śarāb nahī pī sakte ho.*
- ८ वह कुछ नहीं कह सकता है ।  
*vah kuch nahī kah saktā hai.*

### Turning 'I want' into 'let me'

- १ मुझको अमरीका जाने दीजिए ।  
*mujhko amrikā jāne dijie.*
- २ मुझको गाड़ी चलाने दीजिए ।  
*mujhko gārī calāne dijie.*
- ३ मुझको खाना खाने दीजिए ।  
*mujhko khānā khāne dijie.*

- ४ मुझको काम करने दीजिए ।  
*mujhko kām karne dijie.*
- ५ मुझको आपसे बात करने दीजिए ।  
*mujhko āpse bāt kare dijie.*
- ६ उसको सिगरेट पीने दीजिए ।  
*usko sigreṭ pīne dijie.*
- ७ हमको अध्यापक से कुछ कहने दीजिए ।  
*hamko adhyāpak se kuch kahne dijie.*
- ८ उसको हिन्दी सीखने दीजिए ।  
*usko hindī sikhne dijie.*
- ९ बच्चों को समोसे खाने दीजिए ।  
*baccō ko samose khāne dijie.*
- १० हमको यहाँ रहने दीजिए ।  
*hamko yahā rahne dijie.*

## 6a

- १ फलवाला फल बेचता है !  
*phalvālā phal bectā hai!*
- २ अखबारवाला अखबार बेचता है !  
*akhbārvālā akhbār bectā hai!*
- ३ दूधवाला दूध बेचता है !  
*dūdhvālā dūdh bectā hai!*
- ४ अध्यापक पढ़ाता है ।  
*adhyāpak paṛhātā hai.*
- ५ स्कूल में बच्चे पढ़ते हैं ।  
*skūl mē bacce paṛhte hai.*
- ६ घर पर बच्चे खेलते हैं ।  
*ghar par bacce khelte hai.*
- ७ ड्राइवर गाड़ी चलाता है ।  
*ḍrāivar gārī calātā hai.*
- ८ दुकानदार माल बेचता है ।  
*dukāndār māl bectā hai.*

## 6b (sample answers)

- ९ मैं लन्दन में रहता हूँ । *mai landan mẽ rahtā hū.*  
 १० मैं हिन्दी पढ़ाता हूँ । *mai hindī paṛhātā hū.*  
 ११ जी नहीं, मैं सितार नहीं बजाता, सिर्फ सुनता हूँ ! *jī nahī, mai sitār nahī bajātā, sirf suntā hū!*  
 १२ मैं कई अखबार पढ़ता हूँ । *mai kai akhbār paṛhtā hū.*  
 १३ मैं चार भाषाएँ बोलता हूँ । *mai cār bhāṣāẽ boltā hū.*

## 6c

- १४ जगदीश मनोज का अखबार पढ़ता है ।  
*Jagdis Manoj kā akhbār paṛhtā hai.*  
 १५ मेरे दो भाई एक बड़े दफ्तर में काम करते हैं ।  
*mere do bhāi ek bare daftar mẽ kām karte hai.*  
 १६ मेरी बहिन मेरे भाई की गाड़ी चलाती है ।  
*merī bahin mere bhāi kī gārī calāti hai.*  
 १७ वह सिर्फ हिन्दी बोलता है, अंग्रेज़ी नहीं बोलता ।  
*vah sirf hindī boltā hai, āgrezī nahī boltā.*  
 १८ हमारे अध्यापक तीन भाषाएँ बोलते हैं ।  
*hamāre adhyāpak tīn bhāṣāẽ bolte hai.*  
 १९ उसके बच्चे बगीचे में क्रिकेट खेलते हैं ।  
*uske bacce bagīce mẽ krikeṭ khelte hai.*  
 २० हमारे माता-पिता गोश्त नहीं खाते हैं ।  
*hamāre mātā-pitā gošt nahī khāte hai.*  
 २१ आप कहाँ काम करते हैं ? आप कहाँ रहते हैं ?  
*āp kahā kām karte hai? āp kahā rahte hai?*  
 २२ आपका छोटा भाई क्या करता है ?  
*āpka choṭā bhāi kyā kartā hai?*  
 २३ आपकी माता जी कितनी भाषाएँ बोलती हैं ?  
*āpki mātā jī kitnī bhāṣāẽ boltī hai?*

## Unit 7

## Some questions about Jagdish's memories

- १ जगदीश जी वाराणसी में रहते थे ।  
*Jagdiś jī vārāṇasī mẽ rahte the.*
- २ उनके परिवार में सात बच्चे थे ।  
*unke parivār mẽ sāt bacce the.*
- ३ उनकी बहिन स्कूल जाना चाहती थीं, लेकिन उस ज़माने में बहुत कम लड़कियाँ स्कूल जाती थीं ।  
*unkī bahinē skūl jānā cāhtī thī, lekin us zamāne mẽ bahut kam lar̥kiyā skūl jāti thī.*
- ४ उनका स्कूल उनके घर से काफी दूर था ।  
*unkā skūl unke ghar se kāfī dūr thā.*
- ५ जी नहीं, वे पैदल नहीं जाते थे, साइकिल से जाते थे ।  
*jī nahī, ve paidal nahī jāte the, sāikil se jāte the.*

## 7a

- १ जगदीश मनोज का अखबार पढ़ता था ।  
*Jagdiś Manoj kā akhbār parhtā thā.*
- २ मेरे दो भाई एक बड़े दफ्तर में काम करते थे ।  
*mere do bhāi ek bare daftar mẽ kām karte the.*
- ३ मेरी बहिन मेरे भाई की गाड़ी चलाती थी ।  
*merī bahin mere bhāi kī gārī calāti thī.*
- ४ वह सिर्फ हिन्दी बोलता था, अंग्रेज़ी नहीं बोलता था ।  
*vah sirf hindī boltā thā, āgrezī nahī boltā thā.*
- ५ हमारे अध्यापक तीन भाषाएँ बोलते थे ।  
*hamāre adhyāpak tīn bhāṣāẽ bolte the.*
- ६ उसके बच्चे बगीचे में क्रिकेट खेलते थे ।  
*uske bacce bagīce mẽ krikeṭ khelte the.*
- ७ हमारे माता-पिता गोشت नहीं खाते थे ।  
*hamāre mātā-pitā gošt nahī khāte the.*
- ८ आप कहाँ काम करते थे ? आप कहाँ रहते थे ?  
*āp kahā kām karte the? āp kahā rahte the?*

- ९ आपका छोटा भाई क्या करता था ?  
*āpka choṭā bhāī kyā kartā thā?*
- १० आपकी माता जी कितनी भाषाएँ बोलती थीं ?  
*āpkī mātā jī kitnī bhāṣāē boltī thī?*

## 7b

- 11 In Jagdish's family only the boys used to go to school.
- 12 His school was very far from his house.
- 13 At school everyone called him 'Master ji', not just the children.
- 14 In his job the actual pay wasn't very good.
- 15 Jagdish's mother only spoke Hindi.
- 16 In those days the children, at least, were very happy.
- 17 There wasn't actually a garden, but there were lots of places for playing in.
- 18 As for the children, they used to sleep on the roof.
- 19 In his *childhood*, Raju was very fond of writing letters.
- 20 The Prime Minister was kind, but he used to have a lot of work.

## 7c

हम लोग वाराणसी के पास एक छोटे गाँव में रहते थे । मेरे पिताजी स्कूल में अध्यापक थे । लेकिन वे नता बनना चाहते थे । वे प्रधान मंत्री बनने के सपने देखते थे । मेरी माँ उनको "प्रधान मंत्री जी" ही कहती थीं । हमारा घर गंगा के किनारे पर था । हम नदी के किनारे बहुत खेलते थे ।

उस ज़माने में हम हमेशा बड़े शहरों के बारे में बात करते थे । मैं अपने भाइयों और दोस्तों से कहता था कि बड़े लोग बड़े शहरों में ही रहते हैं । मैं भी बड़ा आदमी बनना चाहता था, मैं भी बड़े शहर में रहना चाहता था । मैं अब लंदन में रहता हूँ और मुझे मालूम है कि बड़े शहर की ज़िन्दगी कैसी होती है ... मैं एक छोटे गाँव में रहना चाहता हूँ !

*ham log vārāṇasī ke pās ek choṭe gāv mē rahte the. mere pitāji skūl mē adhyāpak the. lekin ve netā bannā cāhte the. ve pradhān mantrī banne ke sapne dekhte the. merī mā unko 'pradhān mantrī jī' hī kahtī thī. hamārā ghar gangā ke kināre par thā. ham nadi ke kināre bahut khelte the.*

us zamāne mē ham hameśā baṛe śaharō ke bāre mē bāt karte the. maī apne bhāiyō aur dostō se kahtā thā ki baṛe log baṛe śaharō mē hī rahte hai. maī bhī baṛā ādmī bannā cāhtā thā, maī bhī baṛe śahar mē rahnā cāhtā thā. maī ab landan mē rahtā hū aur mujhe mālūm hai ki baṛe śahar kī zindagī kaisī hotī hai...maī ek choṭe gāv mē rahnā cāhtā hū!

## Unit 8

### Four children

- १ जी हॉ, ओम शंकर से बड़ा है ।  
*jī hā, Om Śankar se baṛā hai.*
- २ दो बच्चे रीता से छोटे हैं ।  
*do bacce Rītā se choṭe hai.*
- ३ सबसे बड़ा लड़का शिव है ।  
*sabse baṛā laṛkā Śiv hai.*
- ४ सबसे छोटा लड़का शंकर है ।  
*sabse choṭā laṛkā Śankar hai.*
- ५ ओम सिर्फ एक बच्चे से बड़ा है ।  
*Om sirf ek bacce se baṛā hai.*
- ६ जी नहीं, रीता शिव से छोटी है ।  
*jī nahī, Rītā Śiv se choṭī hai.*
- ७ जी हॉ, रीता ओम से छोटी नहीं है ।  
*jī hā, Rītā Om se choṭī nahī hai.*
- ८ जी नहीं, रीता शंकर से बड़ी है ।  
*jī nahī, Rītā Śankar se baṛī hai.*
- ९ मुझे तो सभी तस्वीरें बहुत पसंद हैं !  
*mujhe to sabhī tasvīrē bahut pasand hai!*

### Practise what you've learnt

- १ जावेद पत्र लिख रहा है ।  
*Jāved patr likh rahā hai.*
- २ दो लड़कियाँ ताश खेल रही हैं ।  
*do laṛkiyā tāś khel rahī hai.*
- ३ कोई आदमी खाना तैयार कर रहा है ।  
*koī ādmī khānā taiyār kar rahā hai.*



- ४ कुत्ता सो रहा है ।  
*kuttā so rahā hai.*
- ५ सीता फ़ोन पर बात कर रही है ।  
*Sītā fon par bāt kar rahī hai.*
- ६ गीता और राजू शराब पी रहे हैं ।  
*Gītā aur Rājū śarāb pī rahe hai.*
- ७ राम बरतन मँज रहा है ।  
*Rām bartan māṅj rahā hai.*
- ८ उषा दौड़ रही है ।  
*Uṣā dauṛ rahī hai.*

## 8a

- १ आप उनसे ज़्यादा होशियार नहीं हैं ।  
*āp unse zyādā hośiyār nahī hai.*
- २ मैं अपने भाई से बड़ी हूँ लेकिन आपसे छोटी हूँ ।  
*māi apne bhāī se baṛī hūṁ lekin āpse choṭī hūṁ.*
- ३ मेरी दूसरी बहिन सबसे होशियार है ।  
*merī dūsarī bahin sabse hośiyār hai.*
- ४ कुछ लोग कहते हैं कि हिन्दी अँग्रेज़ी से ज़्यादा आसान है ।  
*kuch log kahte hai ki hindī āgrezī se zyādā āsān hai.*
- ५ माँ सोचती हैं कि मेरी बहिन मुझसे ज़्यादा सुंदर है ।  
*mā soctī hai ki merī bahin mujhse zyāda sundar hai.*
- ६ पिताजी माताजी से ज़्यादा जानते हैं लेकिन वे कुछ नहीं कह सकते हैं ।  
*pitāji mātāji se zyādā jānte hai lekin ve kuch nahī kah sakte hai.*
- ७ उनका मकान हमारे मकान से ज़्यादा बड़ा और सुंदर है ।  
*unkā makān hamāre makān se zyādā baṛā aur sundar hai.*
- ८ मैं आपसे ज़्यादा होशियार हूँ ।  
*māi āpse zyādā hośiyār hūṁ.*
- ९ आपकी भाषा मेरी भाषा से ज़्यादा मुश्किल है ।  
*āpkī bhāṣā merī bhāṣā se zyādā muškīl hai.*

## 8b

- १० हम लोग अपने दोस्तों को खाना खाने बुला रहे हैं ।  
*ham log apne dostō ko khānā khāne bulā rahe hai.* We're inviting our friends for a meal.
- ११ मैं खाना तैयार कर रहा हूँ ।  
*mai khānā taiyār kar rahā hū.* I am preparing the food.
- १२ वे लोग शाम को आ रहे हैं ।  
*ve log sām ko ā rahe hai.* They are coming in the evening.
- १३ वे अपने बच्चों और दोस्तों को भी ला रहे हैं ।  
*ve apne baccō aur dostō ko bhī lā rahe hai.* They're bringing their children and friends too.
- १४ मेरी पत्नी कह रही है कि उनके बच्चे मोती को मार रहे हैं ।  
*merī patnī kah rahī hai ki unke bacce Moti ko mār rahe hai.* My wife is saying that their children are hitting Moti.
- १५ दादी जी हमारी मदद नहीं कर रही हैं, सिर्फ रेडियो सुन रही हैं ।  
*dādi jī hamārī madad nahī kar rahī hai, sirf rediyo sun rahi hai.* Grandma isn't helping us, she's only listening to the radio.
- १६ हमारा कुकर ठीक से काम नहीं कर रहा है ।  
*hamārā kukar thik se kām nahī kar rahā hai.* Our cooker isn't working properly.
- १७ हमारे दोस्त कह रहे हैं कि बाथरूम में पानी नहीं आ रहा है ।  
*hamāre dost kah rahe hai ki bāthrūm mē pānī nahī ā rahā hai.* Our friends are saying that there isn't any water ['coming'] in the bathroom.

## 8c (sample answers)

- १८ अपने खाली समय में मैं अपने दोस्तों से मिलता हूँ ।  
*apne khālī samay mē mai apne dostō se miltā hū.*
- १९ मुझे दोनों पसंद हैं – घर पर रहना भी और बाहर जाना भी !  
*mujhe donō pasand hai — ghar par rahnā bhī aur bāhar jānā bhī.* (Note भी...भी *bhī...bhī* 'both...and'.)
- २० क्योंकि मेरे बहुत-से हिन्दुस्तानी दोस्त हैं ।  
*kyōki mere bahut-se hindustānī dost hai.*

- २१ जी नहीं, मेरे खयाल में दोनों भाषाएँ काफी मुश्किल हैं !  
*jī nahī, mere khyāl se donō bhāṣāē kāfī muškīl hai!*
- २२ जी हाँ, मेरे हिन्दुस्तानी दोस्त हिन्दी बोलते हैं ।  
*jī hā, mere hindustānī dost hindī bolte hai.*
- २३ आज मैं यह किताब लिख रहा हूँ !  
*āj mai yah kitāb likh rahā hū!*
- २४ अपनी छुट्टियों में मैं भारत या ग्रीस [Greece] जाता हूँ ।  
*apnī chuttiyō mē mai bhārat yā grīs jātā hū.*
- २५ मैं अभी सोच रहा हूँ कि यह पाठ [lesson] बहुत लंबा है !  
*mai abhī soc rahā hū ki yah pāṭh bahut lambā hai!*

## Unit 9

### Practise what you've learnt (sample answers)

- १ आज रात को मैं हिन्दुस्तानी खाना खाऊँगा ।  
*āj rāt ko mai hindustānī khānā khāūgā.*
- २ मैं शायद बीयर पिऊँगा ।  
*mai śāyad biyar piūgā.*
- ३ आज मैं काम करूँगा और अपने बड़े बेटे से मिलने जाऊँगा ।  
*āj mai kām karūgā aur apne bade bete se milne jāūgā.*
- ४ कल सुबह मैं ब्रिटिश लाइब्रेरी [British Library] जाऊँगा ।  
*kal subah mai britīś lāibrerī jāūgā.*
- ५ अगर आप परसों लंदन आएँगे/आएँगी, तो आपसे ही मिलूँगा !  
*agar āp parsō landan āēge/āēgi, to āpse hī milūgā!*

### Geeta's diary

सोमवार	घर पर रहना	<i>somvār ghar par rahnā</i>
मंगलवार	दिल्ली जाना	<i>mangalvār dillī jānā</i>
बुधवार	कुछ चीजें खरीदना	<i>budhvār kuch cizē kharidnā</i>
गुरुवार	घर वापस आना	<i>gurvār ghar vāpas ānā</i>
शुक्रवार	आराम करना	<i>śukravār ārām karnā</i>
शनिवार	सीता के यहाँ जाना	<i>śanivār Sītā ke yahā jānā</i>
रविवार	अगले हफ्ते की तैयारियाँ करना	<i>ravivār agle hafte kī taiyāriyā karnā</i>

## 9a

- 1E If the vegetable market is closed, get ['take'] the vegetables tomorrow morning.
- 2D If you don't know the way, buy a map.
- 3C If you don't know the meaning of some/any word, look in a dictionary.
- 4B If you don't find a policeman at the roundabout, go to the police station.
- 5A If you don't get a room at the hotel, stay at my place.
- 6F If you turn into that narrow lane you'll see the café on your left ['the café will appear...'].

## 9b

- ७ दो लोगों के लिए कमरा चाहिए । हम दो दिन रहेंगे ।  
*do logō ke lie kamrā cāhie. ham do din rahēge.*
- ८ आज शाम को हमारे कुछ दोस्त हमसे मिलने आएँगे ।  
*āj śam ko hamāre kuch dost hamse milne āēge.*
- ९ नाश्ते में क्या मिलेगा ? *nāšte mē kyā milegā?*
- १० क्या रात का खाना भी मिलेगा ? *kyā rāt kā khānā bhi milegā?*
- ११ यहाँ से सिनेमा जाने में कितना समय लगेगा ? हम पैदल जाना चाहते हैं । *yahā se sinemā jāne mē kitnā samay lagegā? ham paidal jānā cāhte hai.*
- १२ मैं लंदन फ़ोन करना चाहता हूँ । क्या मैं अपने कमरे से ही फ़ोन कर सकता हूँ ?  
*mai landan fon karnā cāhtā hū. kyā mai apne kamre se hi fon kar saktā hū?*
- १३ अगले हफ़्ते हम लोग आगरे और दिल्ली जाएँगे ।  
*agle hafte ham log āgre aur dilli jāēge.*
- १४ क्या आज रात को हमारे दोस्त हमारे साथ खाना खा सकते हैं ?  
*kyā āj rāt ko hamāre dost hamāre sāth khānā khā sakte hai?*

## 9c

- १५ कल शनिवार है, इसलिए हम बाहर जाएँगे ।  
*kal śanivār hai, islie ham bāhar jāēge.*

- १६ हम सोच रहे थे कि हम सिनेमा जाएँगे ।  
*ham soc rahe the ki ham sinemā jāēge.*
- १७ मेरा भाई कह रहा था कि वह घर पर रहेगा ।  
*merā bhāī kah rahā thā ki vah ghar par rahegā.*
- १८ अगर आप चाहें तो आप भी हमारे साथ आइए ।  
*agar āp cāhē to āp bhī hamāre sāth āie.*
- १९ हम जल्दी जाएँगे ताकि अच्छी सीटें मिलें ।  
*ham jaldī jāēge tāki acchī sītē milē.*
- २० अगर बारिश हो रही है तो हम गाड़ी से जाएँगे ।  
*agar bāris ho rahī hai to ham gārī se jāēge.*

## Unit 10

### Practise what you've learnt

- १ मनोज घर गया । *Manoj ghar gayā.*
- २ राजू और राम बाहर गए । *Rājū aur Rām bāhar gae.*
- ३ सीता दिल्ली गई । *Sītā dillī gai.*
- ४ कुछ नहीं हुआ । *kuch nahī huā.*
- ५ मीना कल पहुँची । *Mīnā kal pahūcī.*
- ६ दादीजी परसों आई । *Dādiji parsō āī.*
- ७ मनोज मंगलवार को आया । *Manoj mangalvār ko āyā.*

### How many did you see?

- १ मैंने दो किताबें देखीं । *maīne do kitābē dekhī.*
- २ मैंने एक सिग्रेट देखा । *maīne ek sigreṭ dekhā.*
- ३ मैंने एक अखबार देखा । *maīne ek akhbār dekhā.*
- ४ मैंने दो गाड़ियाँ देखीं । *maīne do gārīyā dekhī.*
- ५ मैंने एक गिलास देखा । *maīne ek gilās dekhā.*
- ६ मैंने एक ट्रेन देखी । *maīne ek tren dekhī.*
- ७ मैंने दो जूते देखे । *maīne do jūte dekhe.*
- ८ मैंने तीन चाबियाँ देखीं । *maīne tīn cābiyā dekhī.*
- ९ मैंने दो हाथी देखे । *maīne do hāthī dekhe.*

- १० मैंने एक मकान देखा । *maïne ek makān dekhā.*  
 ११ मैंने दो कुत्ते देखे । *maïne do kutte dekhe.*  
 १२ मैंने एक बंदर देखा । *maïne ek bandar dekhā*  
 १३ मैंने एक बिल्ली देखी । *maïne ek billi dekhī.*  
 १४ मैंने एक कमीज़ देखी । *maïne ek qamīz dekhī.*  
 १५ मैंने एक दरवाज़ा देखा । *maïne ek darvāzā dekhā.*  
 १६ मैंने तीन बोटलें देखीं । *maïne tīn botalē dekhī.*

### What did Geeta see?

- १ गीता ने एक नई फ़िल्म देखी । *Gītā ne ek nāī film dekhī.*  
 २ राजू ने दो अख़बार ख़रीदे । *Rājū ne do aḥbār kharīde.*  
 ३ मोती ने दस चपातियाँ खाईं । *Motī ne das chapātiyā khāī.*  
 ४ मीना ने दो कहानियाँ पढ़ीं । *Mīnā ne do kahāniyā paṛhī.*  
 ५ हमने चार कुरते ख़रीदे । *hamne cār kurte kharīde.*  
 ६ उन्होंने मेज़ पर कुछ किताबें रखीं । *unhōne mez par kuch kitābē rakhī.*  
 ७ मैंने दीवार पर अपना नाम लिखा । *maïne dīvār par apnā nām likhā.*  
 ८ मैंने कई बातें सुनीं । *maïne kai batē sunī.*  
 ९ मैंने एक ही भाषा सीखी । *maïne ek hī bhāṣā sīkhī.*

### Geeta's version of the morning

- १ राजू पहले उठा ।  
*Rājū pahle uṭhā.*  
 २ राजू ने गीता के लिए नाश्ता तैयार किया ।  
*Rājū ne Gītā ke lie nāṣṭā taiyār kiya.*  
 ३ गीता को जगाने से पहले राजू आँगन में बैठा और चाय पी ।  
*Gītā ko jagāne se pahle Rājū āgan mẽ baiṭhā aur cāy pī.*  
 ४ गीता की शिकायत यह थी कि राजू ने चाय में बहुत ज़्यादा चीनी डाली थी ।  
*Gītā kī śikāyat yah thī ki Rājū ne cāy mẽ bahut zyādā cīnī ḍālī thī.*

- ५ गीता ने नाश्ता रसोई में किया ।  
*Gītā ne nāstā rasoī mẽ kiyā.*
- ६ गीता ने गोलियाँ खाईं । उसके सिर में दर्द था ।  
*Gītā ne goliyā khāī. uske sir mẽ dard thā.*
- ७ नहीं, सिर्फ राजू को जल्दी उठना पसंद है, गीता को नहीं ।  
*nahī, sirf Rājū ko jaldī uṭhnā pasand hai, Gītā ko nahī.*
- ८ उसने सोचा कि शाहरूष आया था ।  
*usne socā ki Śāhrukh āyā thā.*
- ९ शायद गीता के सपने में ही !  
*śāyad Gītā ke sapne mẽ hī!*

## 10a

- १ जावेद ने मुझे फोन करके बताया कि तबियत खराब है ।  
*Jāved ne mujhe fon karke batāyā ki tabiyat kharāb hai.*
- २ मैं जावेद के घर जाकर उसके कमरे में गया ।  
*maī Jāved ke ghar jākar uske kamre mẽ gayā.*
- ३ जावेद का हाल देखकर मैंने डाक्टर को बुलाया ।  
*Jāved kā hāl dekhkar maīne dāktar ko bulāyā.*
- ४ थोड़ी देर में आकर डाक्टर ने कहा कि जावेद बहुत ही कमज़ोर है ।  
*thorī der mẽ ākar dāktar ne kahā ki Jāved bahut hī kamzor hai.*
- ५ जावेद को कुछ गोलियाँ देकर डाक्टर ने कहा कि रोज़ दो गोलियाँ लेना ।  
*Jāved ko kuch goliyā dekar dāktar ne kahā ki roz do goliyā lenā.*
- ६ जावेद ने मुस्कराकर डाक्टर से धन्यवाद कहा ।  
*Jāved ne muskarākar dāktar se dhanyavād kahā.*
- ७ डाक्टर ने मेरी तरफ़ देखकर कहा कि “अच्छा, तो मैं चलता हूँ ।”  
*dāktar ne merī taraf dekhkar kahā ki ‘acchā, to maī caltā hū’.*
- ८ मैंने कहा कि चाय पीकर जाइए ।  
*maīne kahā ki cāy pīkar jāie.*
- ९ डाक्टर ने हँसकर कहा कि मैं चाय नहीं लूँगा, अपनी फ़ीस लूँगा !  
*dāktar ne hāskar kahā ki maī cāy nahī lūgā, apnī fis lūgā!*

कल सुबह मैं छह बजे उठा। नाश्ता करके मैंने अपने भाई को फ़ोन किया। वह सो रहा था। मेरी आवाज़ सुनकर उसने कहा, “तुमने मुझे इतनी जल्दी क्यों जगाया?” मैंने कहा, “तुमको याद नहीं? आज हम जयपुर जा रहे हैं!” उसने पूछा, “हम कितने बजे जा रहे हैं?” मैंने जवाब दिया, “हम दस बजे की गाड़ी पकड़ेंगे। तुम जल्दी तैयार हो जाओ!” उसने जैँभाई लेकर कहा कि रात में उसने सपना देखा था। सपने में एक बूढ़ी औरत ने उससे कहा था कि आज तुम कहीं मत जाना! घर पर ही रहना! मैंने हँसकर कहा, “यह तो सपना ही था। उठो न! तैयार हो जाओ।”

गाड़ी ठीक दस बजे स्टेशन से चलने लगी। पर बीस-पच्चीस मिनट बाद वह रुकी। इंजन ख़राब हो गई थी। सुनसान जगह थी; पास में कोई गाँव या मकान नहीं था। जुलाई की गरमी में सारे यात्रियों ने गाड़ी से उतरकर कई घंटों तक कुछ छोटे पेड़ों के साये में इंतज़ार किया। भयंकर गरमी थी। तीन बजे एक दूसरी गाड़ी आकर रुकी। यह दूसरी गाड़ी यात्रियों को वापस दिल्ली ले आने आई थी।

गाड़ी की कहानी हमने रेडियो पर ही सुनी। हमने उस बूढ़ी औरत की सलाह ली थी! हम जयपुर कल जाएँगे...

*kal subah maī chah baje uṭhā. nāśtā karke maīne apne bhāī ko fon kiyā. vah so rahā thā. merī āvāz sunkar usne kahā, ‘tumne mujhe itnī jaldī kyō jagāyā?’ maīne kahā, ‘tumko yād nahī?’ āj ham jaypur jā rahe hāī!’ usne pūchā, ‘ham kitne baje jā rahe hāī?’. maīne javāb diyā, ‘ham das baje kī gārī pakaṛēge. tum jaldī taiyār ho jāo!’ usne jābhāī lekar kahā ki rāt mẽ usne sapnā dekhā thā. sapne mẽ ek būṛhī aurat ne usse kahā thā ki āj tum kahī mat jānā! ghar par hī rahnā! maīne hāskar kahā, ‘yah to sapnā hī thā. uṭho na! taiyār ho jāo.’*

*gārī thīk das baje ṣṭeśan se calne lagī. par bis-paccīs mināt bād vah rukī. injan kharāb ho gai thī. sunsān jagah thī; pās mẽ koī gāv yā makān nahī thā. julāī kī garmī mẽ sare yātriyō*



ne gārī se utarkar kai ghañṭō tak kuch choṭe peṛō ke sāye mẽ  
intazār kiyā. bhayankar garmī thī. tīn baje ek dūsri gārī  
ākar rukī. yah dūsri gārī yātriyō ko vāpas dillī le āne āi thī.

gārī kī kahānī hamne reḍiyo par hī sunī. hamne us būrhi aurat  
kī salāh lī thī! ham jaypur kal jāēge...

## Unit 11

### India: states and languages

- १ तमिल तमिलनाडु में बोली जाती है ।  
*tamil tamilnāḍu mẽ bolī jāti hai.*
- २ मराठी महाराष्ट्र में बोली जाती है ।  
*marāṭhī mahārāṣṭra mẽ bolī jāti hai.*
- ३ केरल में मलयालम बोली जाती है ।  
*keral mẽ malayālam bolī jāti hai.*
- ४ हिन्दी दस प्रदेशों में बोली जाती है ।  
*hindī das pradeśō mẽ bolī jāti hai.*
- ५ दिल्ली और बिहार के बीच उत्तर प्रदेश पाया जाता है ।  
*dillī aur bihār ke bīc uttar pradeś pāyā jāta hai.*

### Sharma ji in his shop

- १ गोपाल को शर्मा जी से बुलाया गया ।  
*Gopāl ko Śarmā jī se bulāyā gayā.*
- २ सामान छोटे कमरे में रखा जाएगा ।  
*sāmān choṭe kamre mẽ rakhā jāegā.*
- ३ कमरे की सफाई गोपाल से की जाएगी ।  
*kamre kī safāi Gopāl se kī jāegī.*
- ४ दुकान को आठ बजे बंद किया जाएगा ।  
*dukān ko āṭh baje band kiyā jāegā.*
- ५ शर्मा जी के साफ कपड़े धोबी के यहाँ से लाए जाएँगे ।  
*Śarmā jī ke sāf kapṛe dhobī ke yahā se lāe jāēge.*
- ६ क्योंकि गोपाल रेडियो सुन रहा था !  
*kyōki Gopāl reḍiyo sun rahā thā!*

**Your help is needed**

- १ गीता को आराम करना चाहिए ।  
*Gītā ko ārām karnā cāhie.*
- २ मनोज को गोली लेनी चाहिए और पानी पीना चाहिए ।  
*Manoj ko golī lenī cāhie aur pānī pinā cāhie.*
- ३ राजू को फ़र्श को साफ़ करना चाहिए ।  
*Rājū ko farś ko sāf karnā cāhie.*
- ४ मीना को कुछ खाना चाहिए ।  
*Mīnā ko kuch khānā cahie.*
- ५ उन लोगों को नया घर लेना (या ख़रीदना) चाहिए ।  
*un logō ko nayā ghar lenā (yā kharīdnā) cāhie.*

**11a**

- १ कोई तीस लोग बुलाए जाएँगे ।  
*koī tis log bulāe jāēge.*
- २ शुक्रवार को घर को साफ़ किया जाएगा ।  
*śukravār ko ghar ko sāf kiyā jāegā.*
- ३ रविवार की सुबह को खाना बनाया जाएगा ।  
*ravivār kī subah ko khānā banāyā jāegā.*
- ४ दोपहर को कुछ रिश्तेदारों को स्टेशन से लाए जाएँगे ।  
*dopahar ko kuch riśtedārō ko ṣṭeśan se lāe jāēge.*
- ५ बच्चों को तोहफ़े दिए जाएँगे ।  
*baccō ko tohfe die jāēge.*
- ६ रात को बगीचे में बत्तियाँ जलाई जाएँगी ।  
*rāt ko bagīce mē battiyā jalāi jāēgī.*
- ७ संगीत भी बजाया जाएगा ।  
*sangīt bhī bajāyā jāegā.*
- ८ पड़ोसियों को भी बुलाया जाएगा ।  
*paṛosiyō ko bhī bulāyā jāegā.*

**11b**

- ९ आज का खाना ताज़ा नहीं था । लगता है वह कल ही बनाया गया था ।

*āj kā khānā tāzā nahī thā. lagtā hai vah kal hī banāyā gayā thā.*

- १० कल रात को हमारे दोस्त हमसे मिलने आए थे लेकिन हमें नहीं बताया गया कि वे आए हैं ।

*kal rāt ko hamāre dost hamse milne āe the lekin hamē nahī batāyā gayā ki ve āe hai.*

- ११ किसी के गंदे कपड़े मेरे कमरे रखे गए थे ।

*kisi ke gande kapṛe mere kamre mẽ rakhe gae the.*

- १२ आज शाम को मैंने देखा कि हमारे कमरे के दरवाज़े को ठीक से बंद नहीं किया गया था ।

*āj sām ko maine dekhā ki hamāre kamre ke darvāze ko thik se band nahī kiya gayā thā.*

- १३ एक बात और — हमारे सामान को खोला गया था !

*ek bāt aur — hamāre sāmān ko kholā gayā thā!*

- १४ हमको नहाने के लिए गरम पानी नहीं दिया गया ।

*hamko nahāne ke lie garam pānī nahī diyā gayā.*

- १५ मैंने परसों कुछ कपड़े दिए थे धोने के लिए, लेकिन अभी तक वे वापस नहीं दिए गए ।

*maine parsō kuch kapṛe diē the dhone ke lie, lekin abhī tak ve vāpas nahī diē gae.*

- १६ मेरे ड्राइवर को बताया गया कि उसे गाड़ी में ही सोना होगा ।

*mere drāivar ko batāyā gayā ki use gārī mẽ hī sonā hogā.*

### 11c

Why do these people hassle me? Everyday they complain about something. It seems they're very fond of complaining. I don't know which country they're from ['they've come from']. In my opinion when people come to our country they shouldn't complain about everything. They should respect this country. It's true that their luggage shouldn't have been opened, but all the other matters were quite minor. I should tell the manager about this but I don't want to tell him. I won't tell him. These people can go to hell!

## Unit 12

1	व	2	हा	3	दु	र					4	दु
5	द	ल	श			6	अ	ध्या	पि	का		
	सू		7	म	धु	ब	न				न	
	र		न						9	स	दा	
10	त	व			11	मं	ग	ल	वा	र		
						दि				ल		
12	अ	13	ख	बा	र	14	वा	ला		15	या	
16	म	त				17	रा	ख	दा	नी		
18	री	20	रा	21	मा	य	ण		ल			
	क		र			22	सी	23	धा		24	ऐ
25	न	हा	ना				26	गा	य	क		

## Practise what you've learnt

- हम शर्मा जी से बच्चों को हिन्दी सिखवाएँगे ।  
*ham Śarmā jī se baccō ko hindī sikhvāēge.*
- मैंने नौकरों से कुछ खाना बनवाया ।  
*maīne naukarō se kuch khānā banvāyā.*
- हमें गाड़ी को ठीक करवाना है ।  
*hamē gārī ko ṭhik karvānā hai.*
- मैं मास्टरजी से कुछ करते सिलवाना चाहता हूँ ।  
*maī māṣṭarjī se kuch kurte silvānā cāhtā hū.*
- मैंने इन पत्रों को किसी से लिखवाया ।  
*maīne in patrō ko kisi se likhvāyā.*

## The doctor asks you some questions

- मेरी तबियत दो दिन से खराब है ।  
*merī tabiyat do din se kharāb hai.*
- जी नहीं, बुखार नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, bukhār nahī hai.*
- जी हाँ, सिर में दर्द है ।  
*jī hā, sir mē dard hai.*
- जी नहीं, मैं बाहर का खाना कभी नहीं खाता हूँ ।  
*jī nahī, maī bāhar kā khānā kabhī nahī khātā hū.*

- ५ जी नहीं, मैं बोटल का पानी ही पीता हूँ ।  
*jī nahī, mai botal kā pānī hī pītā hū.*
- ६ जी हाँ, उलटी हो रही है ।  
*jī hā, ultī ho rahi hai.*
- ७ हाँ, दस्त भी है ।  
*hā, dast bhī hai.*
- ८ मैं शराब पीता तो हूँ लेकिन बहुत ज़्यादा नहीं ।  
*mai śarāb pītā to hū lekin bahut zyādā nahī.*
- ९ आम तौर पर नींद ठीक से आती है ।  
*ām taur par nīd ṭhīk se ātī hai.*
- १० मैं ग्यारह-बारह बजे सोता हूँ ।  
*mai gyārah-bārah baje sotā hū.*
- ११ मैं कम से कम [at least] सात घंटे सोता हूँ ।  
*mai kam se kam [at least] sāt ghaṇṭe sotā hū.*
- १२ जी नहीं, और कोई तकलीफ़ नहीं है ।  
*jī nahī, aur koī taklif nahī hai.*

## 12a

- १ किसी बड़े आर्टिस्ट ने उसको बनाया होगा ।  
*kisī bāṛe ārtiṣṭ ne usko banāyā hogā.*
- २ जहाँ हीरालाल रहता है वहाँ कई दूसरे रिक्शेवाले भी रहते हैं ।  
*jahā Hīrālāl rahtā hai vahā kāī dūsre rikṣevāle bhī rahte hai.*
- ३ उस शहर का नाम आगरा है ।  
*us śahar kā nām āgrā hai.*
- ४ जी नहीं, बारिश में भी हीरालाल को काम करना पड़ता है ।  
*jī nahī, bārīś mẽ bhī Hīrālāl ko kām karnā paṛtā hai.*
- ५ रिक्शे का वज़न तब बहुत ज़्यादा हो जाता है जब मोटे लोग अपने भारी सामान को लेकर रिक्शे में चढ़ते हैं ।  
*rikṣe kā vazan tab bahut zyādā ho jātā hai jab moṭe log apne bhārī sāmān ko lekar rikṣe mẽ caṛhte hai.*
- ६ हीरालाल की जेब तब ख़ाली रहती है जब कोई सवारी नहीं आती ।  
*Hīrālāl kī jeb tab khālī rahtī hai jab koī savārī nahī ātī.*

- ७ जो लोग रिक्शे चलाते हैं उनकी ज़िन्दगी मुश्किल होती है ।  
*jo log rikše calāte haī unki zindagī muškil hotī hai.*

### 12b (sample answers)

- ८ जो लोग भारत के बारे में कुछ सीखना चाहते हैं उनको हिन्दी सीखनी चाहिए ।  
*jo log bhārat ke bāre mẽ kuch sikhñā cāhte haī unko hindī sikhñī cāhie.*
- ९ जब मैंने पहली बार ताज महल को देखा तो मैंने सोचा कि मैं भी एक ऐसी इमारत बनाऊँगा !  
*jab maine pahli bār tāj mahal ko dekhā to maine socā ki mai bhī ek aisi imārat banāūgā!*
- १० जहाँ मेरे रिश्तेदार रहते हैं, वहाँ पहुँचने में कई घंटे लगते हैं ।  
*jahā mere ristēdār rahte haī, vahā pahūcne mẽ kai ghante lagte haī.*
- ११ जो आदमी मेरे साथ काम करता है उसकी पत्नी मेरी पत्नी की सहेली है ।  
*jo ādmī mere sāth kām kartā hai uskī patnī merī patnī kī saheli hai.*
- १२ जो आदमी मेरे घर के सामने रहता है वह कोई बड़ा नेता है ।  
*jo ādmī mere ghar ke sāmne rahtā hai vah koī baṛā netā hai.*
- १३ जिन लोगों के पास बहुत पैसा है वे ही लंदन में बड़ा मकान खरीद सकते हैं ।  
*jin logō ke pās bahut paisā hai ve hī landan mẽ baṛā makān kharid sakte haī.*
- १४ जो कपड़े मैंने कल खरीदे उनको तुमने कहाँ रखा ?  
*jo kapṛe maine kal kharide unko tumne kahā rakhā?*

### 12c

- १५ जब मैं आगरे जाता हूँ तो अक्सर राजू के यहाँ रहता हूँ ।  
*jab mai āgre jātā hū to aksar Rājū ke yahā rahtā hū.*
- १६ जो आदमी हमको हिन्दी पढ़ाता है वह राजू का भाई है ।  
*jo ādmī hamko hindī paṛhātā hai vah Rājū kā bhāi hai.*
- १७ जो तोहफ़ा मैंने आज राजू को दिया वह काफी सस्ता था ।

*jo tohfā maīne āj Rājū ko diyā vah kāfī sastā thā.*

१८ जब मैंने उसे उसको दिया तो उसने उसे अपनी माँ को दिखाया ।

*jab maīne use usko diyā to usne use apnī mā ko dikhāyā.*

१९ जब राजू की माँ ने मेरा तोहफ़ा देखा तो वे हँसने लगीं ।

*jab Rājū kī mā ne merā tohfā dekhā to ve hāsne lagī.*

२० जो सवाल उन्होंने राजू से मेरे बारे में पूछा मैं उसको कभी नहीं भूलूँगा ।

*jo savāl unhōne Rājū se mere bāre mẽ pūchā usko maī kabhī nahī bhūlūgā.*

२१ जो जवाब राजू ने दिया वह हमेशा याद रहेगा ।

*jo javāb Rājū ne diyā vah hameśā yād rahegā.*

## 12d

Dear Manoj,

I got your letter, thanks. I hadn't had a letter for a year so I'd begun wondering what had happened to my friend Manoj.

Everything's fine here. My brother has married. He's rented a small house in Delhi.

My father says I should get married too now. But I've told him clearly that I won't get married yet. I'm still young. When I turn thirty then maybe I'll start thinking about these things. But Father doesn't want to listen to what I say. Just a little while ago he again began talking about marriage. I got a bit angry. I said, 'Yes Papa, I heard!'

Tell me your email address.

Yours, Motu

**KEY**

m. masculine

f. feminine

pl. plural

m., f. used for both sexes

m./f. used in either gender

**DICTIONARY ORDER**

The order of the characters in the Devanagari script follows the chart given in the introduction. Vowels precede consonants; nasalized vowels precede unnasalized vowels; plain consonants precede conjunct consonants.

अँगूठा *āgūṭhā* m. thumbअँग्रेज़ *āgrez* m., f. English personअँग्रेज़ी *āgrezī* f. English  
(language); and adj.अंदर *andar* insideअख़बार *akhbār* m. newspaperअख़बारवाला *akhbārvālā* m.  
newspaper sellerअकेला *akelā* aloneअकेलापन *akelāpan* m.  
lonelinessअगर *agar* ifअगला *aglā* nextअच्छा *acchā* good, niceअध्यापक *adhyāpak* m. teacherअध्यापिका *adhyāpikā* f. teacherअपना *apnā* one's own (my, etc.)अभी *abhi* right now; stillअमरीकन *amrikan* Americanअरे *are* hey! Oh!अलमारी *almāri* f. cupboardअस्पताल *aspatāl* m. hospitalआँख *ākh* f. eyeआँगन *āgan* m. courtyardआकाश *ākāś* m. skyआगे *āge* ahead



आज *āj* today; आजकल *ājkal*  
 nowadays, these days; आज  
 रात को *āj rāt ko* tonight; आज  
 शाम को *āj sām ko* this  
 evening  
 आठ *āth* eight  
 आदमी *ādmī* m. man  
 आदर *ādar* m. respect  
 आदरणीय *ādarāṇīy* respected  
 (used for 'Dear...' in formal  
 correspondence)  
 आधा *ādhā* m. half  
 आना *ānā* to come  
 आप *āp* you  
 आपका *āpkā* your, yours  
 आम *ām* <sup>1</sup> m. mango  
 आम *ām* <sup>2</sup> ordinary; आम तौर पर  
*ām taur par* usually  
 आराम *ārām* m. rest; आराम करना  
*ārām karnā* to rest; आराम से  
*ārām se* comfortably, easily  
 आवाज़ *āvāz* f. voice; sound  
 आशा *āsā* f. hope  
 आसान *āsān* easy  
 इंजन *injan* m. engine (train)  
 इंतज़ार *intazār* m. waiting,  
*expecting*, का इंतज़ार करना *kā*  
*intazār karnā* to wait for  
 इतना *itnā* so much, so  
 इतिहास *itihās* m. history  
 इधर *idhar* here, over here  
 इमारत *imārat* f. building  
 इलाज *ilāj* m. cure, treatment  
 इसका *iskā* his, her/hers, its  
 इसलिए *islie* so, because of this

उँगली *ūgli* f. finger  
 उगना *ugnā* to grow (of plants)  
 उठना *uṭhnā* to get up, rise  
 उठाना *uṭhānā* to pick up, raise  
 उतरना, उतर जाना *utarnā, utar*  
*jānā* to get down, alight  
 उत्तर *uttar* north  
 उधर *udhar* there, over there  
 उम्र *umra, umar* f. age  
 उर्दू *urdū* f. Urdu  
 उलटी *ulṭī* f. vomiting, sickness  
 उसका *uskā* his, her/hers, its  
 ऊपर *ūpar* up, upstairs  
 ऋण *ṛṇ* m. debt  
 एक *ek* one; a  
 ऐसा *aisā* such, of this kind  
 ओ *o* oh!  
 ओर *or* f. side, direction  
 और *aur* and; more  
 औरत *aurat* f. woman  
 कंधा *kandhā* m. shoulder  
 कई *kai* several  
 कटना *kaṭnā* to be cut  
 कपड़ा *kapṛā* m. cloth; garment  
 कब *kab* when?  
 कभी *kabhī* ever; कभी कभी *kabhī*  
*kabhī* sometimes; कभी नहीं  
*kabhī nahī* never  
 कम *kam* little, less  
 कमज़ोर *kamzor* weak  
 कमर *kamar* f. waist  
 कमरा *kamrā* m. room  
 कमी *kamī* f. lack, shortage  
 कमीज़ *qamīz* f. shirt  
 कम्प्यूटर *kampyūṭar* m. computer

करना *karnā* to do  
 करवाना *karvānā* to get done (by someone else)  
 कराची *karācī* f. Karachi  
 कल *kal* yesterday; tomorrow  
 कलम *qalam* m./f. pen  
 कलाई *kalāī* f. wrist  
 कहना *kahnā* to say  
 कहाँ *kahā* where?  
 कहानी *kahānī* f. story  
 कहीं *kahī* anywhere, somewhere  
 का-की-के *kā-kī-ke* [shows possession, like English apostrophe 's]  
 काठमांडु *kāṭhmāṇḍu* m. Kathmandu  
 कान *kān* m. ear  
 काफी *kāfī* <sup>1</sup> f. coffee  
 काफी *kāfī* <sup>2</sup> quite, very; enough  
 काम *kām* m. work; job, task;  
 काम करना *kām karnā* to work; to function  
 काला *kālā* black  
 कालेज *kālej* m. college  
 कि *ki* that (conjunction); कि *ki* when, when suddenly; or  
 कितना *kitnā* how much/many?  
 किताब *kitāb* f. book  
 किनारा *kinārā* m. bank, edge  
 किलो *kilo* m. kilo, kilogram  
 किराया *kirāyā* m. rent; fare  
 किसी *kisī* oblique of कोई *koi*  
 की ओर *kī or* towards  
 की तरफ *kī taraf* towards

की तरह *kī tarah* like  
 कुछ *kuch* some; something; कुछ और *kuch aur* some more; कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī* nothing  
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta, loose shirt  
 कुहनी *kuhnī* f. elbow  
 कुत्ता *kuttā* m. dog  
 कुरता *kurtā* m. kurta  
 कुरसी *kursī* f. chair  
 कुल मिलाकर *kul milākar* all together, in total  
 कृपया *kṛpayā* please (formal)  
 के अंदर *ke andar* inside  
 के अलावा *ke alāwā* as well as  
 के ऊपर *ke ūpar* above, on top of  
 के चारों तरफ *ke cārō taraf* all around  
 के द्वारा *ke dvārā* by (in formal passive sentences)  
 के नज़दीक *ke nazdik* near  
 के नीचे *ke nīce* below, under  
 के पास *ke pās* near; in the possession of  
 के बाहर *ke bāhar* outside  
 के यहाँ *ke yahā* at the place of  
 के लिए *ke lie* for  
 के साथ *ke sāth* with, in the company of  
 के सामने *ke sāmne* opposite  
 केला *kelā* m. banana  
 कैसा *kaisā* how?  
 को *ko* to; [also marks an individualized direct object:  
 पानी को पियो *pānī ko piyo* 'Drink the water']

कोई *koī* some, any, a; (with number) about; कोई दूसरा *koī dūsra* some other, another; कोई नहीं *koī nahī* nobody

कौन *kaun* who?

कौनसा *kaunsā* which?

क्या *kyā* what?; and question marker

क्यों *kyō* why?

क्योंकि *kyōki* because

क्रिकेट *kriket* m. cricket

खड़ा *kharā* standing

खत *khat* m. letter

(correspondence)

खत्म *khatm* finished; खत्म करना

*khatm karnā* to finish

खयाल *khyāl*, m. opinion, thought, idea

खराब *kharāb* bad; खराब हो जाना

*kharāb ho jānā* to break down

खरीदना *kharidnā* to buy

खर्च *kharc* m. expenditure; खर्च करना

*kharc karnā* to spend

खाली *khālī* empty, free, vacant

खाना *khānā* <sup>1</sup> m. food

खाना *khānā* <sup>2</sup> to eat

खिड़की *khirkī* f. window

खिलौना *khilaunā* m. toy

खुद *khud* oneself (myself, etc.)

खुश *khuś* pleased, happy

खूब *khūb* a lot, freely

खेल *khel* m. game

खेलना *khelnā* to play (a game)

खोलना *kholnā* to open

गंगा *gangā* f. Ganges

गंदा *gandā* dirty

गरम *garam* hot, warm

गरमी *garmī* f. heat; गरमियाँ

*garmiyā* f.pl. summer

गरीब *garīb* poor

गर्दन *gardan* f. neck

गली *galī* f. lane, narrow street

गाँव *gāv* m. village

गाड़ी *gārī* f. car; train, vehicle

गाना *gānā* m. song, singing

गाना *gānā* to sing

गाल *gāl* f. cheek

गिलास *gilās* m. tumbler

गुजराती f. Gujarati

गुरुवार *gurvār* m. Thursday

गोलचक्कर *golcakkār* m. roundabout

गोली *golī* f. tablet, pill; bullet

गोشت *gošt* m. meat

घंटा *ghaṇṭā* m. hour

घर *ghar* m. house, home

घास *ghās* f. grass

घुटना *ghuṭnā* m. knee

घुसना *ghusnā* to enter, sneak in

घूमना *ghūmnā* to turn, revolve

घोड़ा *ghoṛā* m. horse; घोड़े बेचकर

सोना *ghore becker sonā* to

sleep like a log

चढ़ना *caṛhnā* to climb, get into vehicle

चढ़ाव *caṛhāv* m. rise, incline

चपाती *capātī* f. chapati

चमकना *camaknā* to shine

चम्मच *cammac* m. spoon

चलना *calnā* to move, blow,  
 flow; चलते जाना *calte jānā* to  
 keep going  
 चलाना *calānā* to drive  
 चश्मा *caśmā* m. glasses,  
 spectacles  
 चाकू *cāqū* m. knife, penknife  
 चाचा *cācā* m. uncle (father's  
 younger brother)  
 चाबी *cābī* f. key  
 चाय *cāy* f. tea  
 चार *cār* four; चारों ओर *cārō* or  
 all around  
 चालू करना *cālū karnā* to turn on  
 चावल *cāval* m. rice  
 चाहना *cāhnā* to want, wish  
 चाहिए *cāhie* (is) wanted,  
 needed  
 चिंता *cintā* f. anxiety  
 चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* f. letter, note  
 चीज़ *cīz* f. thing  
 चीनी *cīnī* f. sugar  
 चुकना *cuknā* to have already  
 done (with verb stem: वह जा  
 चुका है *vah jā cukā hai* 'He's  
 already gone')  
 चूहा *cūhā* m. mouse, rat  
 चेहरा *cehrā* m. face  
 चौड़ा *cauṛā* wide, broad  
 चौथा *cauthā* fourth  
 छठा *chaṭhā* sixth  
 छत *chat* f. roof  
 छह *chah* six  
 छाती *chāṭī* f. chest  
 छुट्टी *chuṭṭī* f. holiday; free time

छोटा *choṭā* small  
 जँभाई *jābhāī* f. yawn  
 जगह *jagah* f. place  
 जगाना *jagānā* to awaken  
 जब *jab* when  
 ज़माना *zamānā* m. period, time  
 ज़रूर *zarūr* of course  
 ज़रूरत *zarūrat* f. need; मुझको X  
 की ज़रूरत है *mujhko X kī*  
*zarūrat hai* I need X  
 जलना *jalnā* to burn  
 जलवाना *jalvānā* to cause to burn  
 जलाना *jalānā* to light, burn  
 जल्दी *jaldī* quickly, early;  
 f. hurry  
 जवान *javān* young  
 जवाब *javāb* m. answer, reply;  
 जवाब देना *javāb denā* to reply  
 जहाँ *jahā* where  
 जाँघ *jāgh* f. thigh  
 जान *jān* f. life, soul  
 जानना *jānnā* to know  
 जाना *jānā* to go  
 ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f. life  
 ज़िंदा *zindā* (invariable -ā  
 ending) alive  
 जी *jī* word of respect used after  
 names etc. and as a short form  
 of जी हाँ *jī hā* 'yes'  
 जी नहीं *jī nahī* no  
 जी हाँ *jī hā* yes  
 जीतना *jītnā* to win, conquer  
 जीवन *jīvan* m. life  
 जुकाम *zūkām* m. head cold  
 जोर से *zor se* with force, loudly

जूता *jūtā* m. shoe  
 जेब *jeb* f. pocket  
 जैसा ... वैसा *jaisā... vaisā* as [one thing], so [another]  
 जो *jo* who, which  
 ज्यादा *zyādā* more, much  
 झूठ *jhūṭh* m. a lie  
 टाँग *tāṅg* f. leg  
 टार्च *tārc* m. torch, flashlight  
 टिकट *ṭikaṭ* f./m. ticket; stamp  
 टिकिया *ṭikiyā* f. cake (e.g. of soap)  
 टूटना *tūtnā* to break  
 टैक्सी *ṭaiksī* f. taxi  
 टोस्ट *toṣṭ* m. toast, piece of toast  
 ट्रेन *ṭren* f. train  
 ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ* f. cold; ठंड लगना *ṭhaṇḍ lagnā* to feel cold  
 ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā* cold  
 ठीक *ṭhik* OK, all right; exactly  
 ठुड़ी *ṭhuḍḍī* f. chin  
 डाक *ḍāk* f. post; डाक घर *ḍāk ghar* m. post office; डाक की टिकट *ḍāk kī ṭikaṭ* f. stamp  
 डाक्टर *ḍākṭar* m. doctor  
 डालना *ḍālnā* to put, pour  
 डिब्बा *ḍibbā* m. box  
 ड्राइवर *ḍrāivar* m. driver  
 ढाबा *ḍhābā* m. roadside cafe  
 तंग *tang* narrow, confined; तंग करना *tang karnā* to harass  
 तक *tak* up to, until, as far as  
 तकलीफ *taklif* f. suffering, pain, discomfort, inconvenience, trouble

तनखाह *tankhāvāh*, तनखाह *tankhāh* f. pay, wages  
 तब *tab* then  
 तबला *tablā* m. tabla (drum)  
 तबियत *tabiyat* f. health, disposition  
 तमिल *f.* Tamil  
 तस्वीर *tasvīr* f. picture  
 ताकि *tāki* so that, in order that  
 ताज महल *tāj mahal* m. Taj Mahal  
 ताज़ा *tāzā* (-ā ending sometimes treated as invariable) fresh  
 ताश *tāś* m. playing cards  
 तीन *tīn* three  
 तीसरा *tīsra* third  
 तुम *tum* you (familiar)  
 तुम्हारा *tumhārā* your, yours  
 तू *tū* you (intimate)  
 तैयार *taiyār* ready, prepared; तैयार करना *taiyār karnā* to prepare; तैयार हो जाना *taiyār ho jānā* to get ready  
 तैयारी *taiyārī* f. preparation  
 तो *to* so, then; as for...  
 तोड़ना *toṛnā* to break, smash  
 तोता *totā* m. parrot  
 तोहफ़ा *tohfā* m. gift, present  
 थकना *thaknā* to get tired  
 थाना *thānā* m. police station  
 थोड़ा *thorā* (a) little; थोड़ी देर *thorī der* f. a little while  
 दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* south  
 दफ़्तर *daftar* m. office  
 दयालु *dayālu* kind, merciful

दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m. door  
 दर्जी *darzī* m. tailor  
 दर्द *dard* m. pain  
 दवा *davā* f. medicine  
 दवाख़ाना *davākhānā* m.  
 pharmacy, chemist's shop  
 दस *das* ten  
 दस्त *dast* m. diarrhoea; दस्त आना  
*dast ānā* to have diarrhoea  
 दाँत *dānt* m. tooth  
 दादा *dādā* m. grandfather  
 (father's father)  
 दादी *dādī* f. grandmother  
 (father's mother)  
 दाल *dāl* f. daal, lentil  
 दाहिना *dāhinā* right (direction)  
 दिखाना *dikhānā* to show  
 दिन *din* m. day  
 दिया *diyā* m. lamp  
 दिल *dil* m. heart  
 दिल्ली *dillī* f. Delhi  
 दीवार, दीवाल *dīvār, dīvāl* f. wall  
 दुकान *dukān* f. shop  
 दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.  
 shopkeeper  
 दुखी *dukhī* sad  
 दुर्घटना *durghaṭnā* f. accident  
 दूध *dūdh* m. milk  
 दूधवाला *dūdhvālā* m. milkman  
 दूर *dūr* far, distant  
 दूसरा *dūsarā* second; other  
 देखना *dekhnā* to look, to see  
 देना *denā* to give; to allow to,  
 let (with oblique infinitive):  
 हमको जाने दो *hamko jāne do*

'Let us go')  
 देर *der* f. a while, length of  
 time; delay; देर से *der se* late  
 देरी *derī* f. delay  
 देश *deś* m. country  
 दो *do* two  
 दोनों *donō* both, the two  
 दोस्त *dost* m., f. friend  
 दौड़ना *daurnā* to run  
 धन्यवाद *dhanyavād* thank you  
 धीरे धीरे *dhire dhire* slowly  
 धुलना *dhulnā* to be washed  
 धुलवाना *dhulvānā* to get washed  
 धोना *dhonā* to wash  
 धोबी *dhobī* m. washerman  
 ध्यान *dhyān* m. attention; ध्यान से  
*dhyān se* attentively; ध्यान  
 रखना *dhyān rakhnā* to pay  
 attention to, look after  
 न *na* don't; isn't that so?  
 नक्शा *naqṣā* m. map, plan  
 नदी *nadī* f. river  
 नमस्कार *namaskār* hello,  
 goodbye  
 नमस्ते *namaste* hello, goodbye  
 नया *nayā* (f. नई *naī*; m. pl. नए  
*nae*) new  
 नर्स *nars* m., f. nurse  
 नल *nal* m. tap, pipe  
 नहाना *nahānā* to bathe  
 नहीं *nahī* not, no  
 नाक *nāk* f. nose  
 नाम *nām* m. name  
 नाराज़ *nārāz* angry, displeased

नाव *nāv* f. boat

नाश्ता *nāstā* m. breakfast,  
snack; नाश्ता करना *nāstā*  
*karnā* to have breakfast

निकलना *nikalnā* to emerge,  
come/go out नीचे *nīce* down,  
downstairs

नींद *nīd* f. sleep; नींद आना *nīd*  
*ānā* (sleep to come) to get to  
sleep

नीला *nīlā* blue

नेता *netā* m. leader, politician

नेपाल *nepāl* m. Nepal

नौ *nau* nine

नौकर *naukar* m. servant

नौकरी *naukarī* f. job,  
employment

पंखा *pankhā* m. fan

पकड़ना *pakarnā* to catch

पचास *pacās* fifty

पड़ना *paṛnā* to fall; to have to  
(with preceding infinitive:  
मुझे जाना पड़ेगा *mujhe jānā*  
*paṛegā* 'I'll have to go')

पड़ा *parā* lying

पड़ोसी *paṛosī* m., पड़ोसिन  
*paṛosin* f. neighbour

पढ़ना *paṛhnā* to read, to study

पढ़ाई *paṛhāī* f. studies,  
studying

पढ़ाना *paṛhānā* to teach

पतला *patlā* thin

पता *patā* m. address;  
whereabouts

पति *pati* m. husband

पत्नी *patnī* f. wife

पत्र *patr* m. letter  
(correspondence)

पर *par*<sup>1</sup> but

पर *par*<sup>2</sup> on; at ('at home' etc.)

परसों *parsō* two days away (the  
day after tomorrow; the day  
before yesterday)

परिवार *parivār* m. family

पश्चिम *paścim* west

पसंद *pasand* pleasing (यह मुझको  
पसंद है *yah mujhko pasand hai*  
I like this); पसंद आना *pasand*  
*ānā* to appeal to, to be liked

पहला *pahlā* first

पहाड़ *pahār* m. hill

पहुँचना *pahūcnā* to reach, arrive

पाँच *pāc* five; पाँचवाँ *pācvā* fifth

पाँव *pāv* m. foot, leg

पाकिस्तान *pākistān* m. Pakistan

पागल *pāgal* mad, crazy

पाना *pānā* to find, obtain; to be  
able, to manage to (with  
verb stem: मैं नहीं जा पाया *mai*  
*nahī jā pāyā* 'I didn't manage  
to go')

पानी *pānī* m. water

पापा *pāpā* m. papa, father

पार *pār* across; पार करना *pār*  
*karnā* to cross; उस पार *us pār*  
on the other side (of, के *ke*)

पार्टी *pāṛṭī* f. party

पास में *pās mē* nearby

पिछला *pichlā* previous, last

पिता *pitā* m. father

पीटना *piṭnā* to beat, thrash

पीना *pīnā* to drink; to smoke  
 पीला *pīlā* yellow  
 पुकारना *pukārṇā* to call out  
 पुराना *purānā* old (for inanimates, not for people)  
 पुल *pul* m. bridge  
 पुलिस *pulis* f. police; पुलिसवाला *pulisvālā* m. policeman  
 पुस्तकालय *pustakālay* m. library  
 पूछना *pūchnā* to ask  
 पूरा *pūrā* full, complete  
 पूर्व *pūrv* east  
 पेट *peṭ* m. stomach  
 पेड़ *peṛ* m. tree  
 पैदल *paidal* on foot  
 पैर *pair* m. foot; पैर की उँगली *pair kī ūglī* f. toe  
 पैसा *paisā* m. money  
 प्यारा *pyārā* dear, sweet, cute  
 प्यास *pyās* f. thirst; प्यास लगना *pyās lagnā* (thirst to strike) to feel thirsty  
 प्रदेश *pradeś* m. state, region  
 प्रधान मंत्री *pradhān mantrī* m./f. prime minister  
 प्रिय *priy* dear; 'Dear...' (in informal letter writing)  
 प्रेस करना *pres karnā* to iron  
 प्लेट *plet* f. plate  
 फल *phal* m. fruit  
 फलवाला *phalvālā* m. fruitseller  
 फर्श *farś* m. floor  
 फिर, फिर से *phir, phir se* again  
 फ़िल्म *film* f. film  
 फ़ीस *fīs* f. fee, fees

फूल *phūl* m. flower  
 फ़ोन *fon* m. phone; फ़ोन करन *fon karnā* to phone  
 बंद *band* closed, shut  
 बकवास *bakvās* f. nonsense, idle chatter  
 बगीचा *bagicā* m. garden  
 बचपन *bacpan* m. childhood  
 बच्चा *baccā* m. child  
 बजना *bajnā* to play, resound, chime  
 बजाना *bajānā* to play (music)  
 बजे *baje* o'clock  
 बड़ा *barā* big  
 बढ़िया *barhiyā* (invariable -ā ending) excellent, really good, fine  
 बटुआ *baṭuā* m. purse, wallet  
 बताना *batānā* to tell  
 बत्ती *battī* f. light, lamp  
 बनवाना *banvānā* to cause to be made  
 बनाना *banānā* to make  
 बरतन *bartan* m. dish, utensil  
 बस *bas* f. bus  
 बहिन *bahin* f. sister  
 बहुत *bahut* very; बहुत ज्यादा *bahut zyādā* very great, too much  
 बाँह *bāḥ* f. arm, upper arm  
 बाज़ार *bāzār* m. market, bazaar  
 बात *bāt* f. thing said, idea; बात करना *bāt karnā* to talk  
 बाप *bāp* m. dad; बाप रे बाप ! *bāp re bāp!* Oh God!



बायाँ *bāyā* left (direction)  
 बार *bār* f. time, occasion; इस  
 बार *is bār* this time; कितनी  
 बार *kitnī bār* how many  
 times?; कई बार *kai bār*  
 several times  
 बारिश *bāris* f. rain; बारिश होना  
*bāris honā* to rain  
 बाल *bāl* m. hair  
 बाहर *bāhar* outside  
 बिजली *bijlī* f. electricity  
 बिल्कुल *bilkul* quite, completely  
 बिल्ली *billī* f. cat  
 बिस्कुट *biskuṭ* m. biscuit  
 बीमार *bīmār* ill, sick  
 बीयर *biyar* f. beer  
 बुखार *bukhār* m. fever  
 बुधवार *budhvar* m. Wednesday  
 बुरा *burā* bad  
 बुलवाना *bulvānā* to cause to be  
 called  
 बुलाना *bulānā* to call, invite,  
 summon  
 बुढ़ा *būrhā* elderly  
 बेचना *becnā* to sell  
 बेटा *beṭā* m. son  
 बेटी *beṭī* f. daughter  
 बेहतर *behtar* better  
 बैठना *baiṭhnā* to sit  
 बैठा *baiṭhā* seated, sitting  
 बोतल *botal* f. bottle  
 बोलना *bolnā* to speak  
 भयंकर *bhayankar* terrible  
 भरना *bharnā* to be filled  
 भरोसा *bharosā* m. trust, reliance

भाई *bhāī* m. brother  
 भाड़ में जाए *bhār mē jāe* '(he/she)  
 can go to hell' (भाड़ *bhār* m.  
 grain-parching oven)  
 भारत *bhārāt* m. India  
 भारी *bhārī* heavy  
 भाषा *bhāṣā* f. language  
 भिजवाना *bhijvānā* to have sent,  
 to cause to be sent  
 भी *bhī* also; even  
 भूख *bhūkh* f. hunger; भूख लगना  
*bhūkh lagnā* (hunger to  
 strike) to feel hungry  
 भेजना *bhejnā* to send  
 मंगलवार *maṅgalvār* f. Tuesday  
 मंदिर *mandir* m. temple  
 मकान *makān* m. house  
 मज़ा *mazā* m. enjoyment, fun;  
 मज़े करना *maze karnā* to enjoy  
 oneself, have fun  
 मत *mat* don't  
 मतलब *matlab* m. meaning  
 मदद *madad* f. help; किसी की  
 मदद करना *kisī kī madad karnā*  
 to help someone  
 मराठी *marāṭhī* f. Marathi  
 मरीज़ *mariz* m. patient  
 महँगा *mahāgā* expensive  
 महसूस करना *mahsūs karnā* to  
 feel; महसूस होना *mahsūs honā*  
 to be felt, experienced  
 महिला *mahilā* f. lady  
 महीना *mahinā* m. month  
 माँ *mā* f. mother; माँ-बाप  
*mā-bāp* m. pl. parents  
 माँगना *māṅgnā* to ask for,

- demand  
 माँजना *mājñā* to scour, clean, cleanse  
 माता *mātā* f. mother  
 माता-पिता *mātā-pitā* m.pl. parents  
 माथा *māthā* m. forehead  
 माफ़ी *māfi* f. forgiveness; माफ़ी माँगना *māfi māṅnā* to apologize  
 मामूली *māmūlī* ordinary  
 मारना *mārnā* to hit, beat, strike  
 माल *māl* m. goods, stuff  
 मालूम *mālūm* (is) known; मालूम नहीं *mālūm nahī* [I] don't know  
 मार्ग *mārg* m. road, street (used in street names)  
 मिठाई *miṭhāī* f. sweet, sweetmeat  
 मिठास *miṭhās* f. sweetness  
 मिलना *milnā* to meet, to be available  
 मीठा *mīṭhā* sweet  
 मुंबई *mumbai* f. Mumbai, Bombay  
 मुँह *mūh* m. mouth; face  
 मुड़ना *muṛnā* to turn  
 मुफ्त (का) *muft (kā)* free; मुफ्त में *muft mẽ* for nothing, free  
 मुश्किल *muškil* difficult; मुश्किल से *muškil se* with difficulty, hardly  
 मुस्कराना *muskarānā* to smile  
 में *mẽ* in  
 मेज़ *mez* f. table  
 मेमसाहब *memsāhab* f. memsahib  
 मेरा *merā* my, mine  
 मेहनत *mehnat* f. hard work; मेहनती *mehntī* hard-working  
 मैं *mai* I  
 मैला *mailā* dirty  
 मोटा *moṭā* fat  
 मौसम *mausam* m. weather  
 यह *yah* he, she, it, this  
 यहाँ *yahā* here  
 यहीं *yahī* right here  
 या *yā* or  
 यात्री *yātrī* m. traveller, passenger  
 याद *yād* f. memory  
 यानी *yānī* in other words, that is to say  
 ये *ye* they, these  
 रखना *rakhnā* to put, place, keep  
 रविवार *ravivār* m. Sunday  
 रसोई *rasoī* f. kitchen  
 रहना *rahnā* to live, to stay  
 राजा *rājā* m. king, raja  
 रात *rāt* f. night; रात का खाना *rāt kā khānā* m. dinner  
 रास्ता *rāstā* m. road  
 रिक्शा *riksā* m. rickshaw  
 रिक्शेवाला *riksēvālā* m. rickshaw driver  
 रिश्तेदार *riṣṭedār* m. relation, relative  
 रुपया *rupayā* m. rupee  
 रेडियो *reḍiyo* m. radio  
 रोज़ *roz* every day

रोना *ronā* to cry, weep

लंबा *lambā* tall

लगना *lagnā* time to be taken;

घर जाने में १० मिनट लगते हैं / एक

घंटा लगता है *ghar jāne mē 10*

*mināṭ lagte hai / ek ghaṇṭā*

*lagtā hai* It takes 10 minutes

/ one hour to get home; लगना

*lagnā* to seem; to be felt (of

hunger, thirst etc.); to have

an effect; to begin (following

an oblique infinitive)

लन्दन *landan* m. London

लड़का *larkā* m. boy

लड़की *larkī* f. girl

लाइट *lāiṭ* f. light, electric  
power

लाना *lānā* to bring

लाल *lāl* red

लिखना *likhnā* to write

लेकिन *lekin* but

लेखक *lekhak* m. writer

लेटना *leṭnā* to lie down

लेटा *leṭā* lying, lying down

लेना *lenā* to take

लोग *log* m. pl. people

लौटना *lauṭnā* to return

व *va* and

वगैरह *vagairah* etc., and so on

वज़न *vazan* m. weight

वह *vah* he, she, it, that

वहाँ *vahā* there

वापस *vāpas* 'back' in वापस

आना/जाना/देना *vāpas*

*ānā/jānā/denā* to

come/go/give back

वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f. Varanasi,

Banaras

विदेश *videś* abroad

विदेशी *videśī* m. foreigner;

adj. foreign

विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m. student

वे *ve* they, those

शक्ति *śakti* f. power

शनिवार *śanivār* m. Saturday

शब्द *śabd* m. word

शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m. dictionary

शराब *śarāb* f. alcoholic drink,  
liquor

शरीर *śarīr* m. body

शहर *śahar* m. town, city

शांति *śānti* f. peace

शादी *śādī* f. wedding,

marriage; शादी करना *śādī*

*karnā* to marry

शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā* (-ā ending  
invariable) married

शानदार *śāndār* splendid,  
magnificent

शाबाश *śābāś* bravo

शाम *śām* f. evening

शायद *śāyad* maybe, perhaps

शिकायत *śikāyat* f. complaint;

शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* to  
complain

शुक्रवार *śukravār* m. Friday

शुक्रिया *śukriyā* thank you

शुद्ध *śuddh* pure

शुभ *śubh* good, auspicious

शुभकामना *śubhkāmnā* f. good  
wish

शोला *śolā* m. flame

शौक *śauq* m. liking, hobby, interest

श्री *śrī* Mr; श्रीमती *śrīmatī* Mrs

संगीत *sāṅgīt* m. music

संगीतकार *sāṅgītkār* m. musician

संतरा *santarā* m. orange

सकना *saknā* to be able (with verb stem: तुम जा सकते हो *tum jā sakte ho* 'You can go')

सच *sac* m. truth; adj. true

सड़क *ṣarāk* f. road, street

सपना *sapnā* m. dream; सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* to dream, to have a dream

सब *sab* all; सब कुछ *sab kuch* everything; सबसे *sabse* of all (in superlatives, e.g. सबसे अच्छा *sabse acchā* best, best of all)

सब्जी *sabzī* f. vegetable(s); सब्जी मंडी *sabzī maṇḍī* f. vegetable market; सब्जीवाला *sabzīvālā* m. vegetable seller

समझना *samajhnā* to understand

समय *samay* m. time

समोसा *samosā* m. samosa

सरकार *sarkār* f. government

सलाह *salāh* f. advice

सवारी *savārī* f. passenger, rider

सस्ता *sastā* cheap

सहायता *sahāyātā* f. assistance

सहित *sahit* with (formal)

सही *sahī* correct, true, exact

सहेली *sahelī* f. female's female friend

-सा *-sā* '-ish' (suffix that qualifies an adjective, as in बड़ा-सा *barā-sā* 'biggish')

साइकिल *sāikil* f. bicycle

साड़ी *sārī* f. sari

सात *sāt* seven

सादर *sādar* respectful

साफ़ *sāf* clean, clear; साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* to clean

साबुन *sābun* m. soap

सामने *sāmne* opposite

सामान *sāmān* m. goods, furniture, luggage

साया *sāyā* m. shade, shadow

साल *sāl* m. year

साहब *sāhab* m. sahib

सिखवाना *sikhvānā* to cause to be taught

सिखाना *sikhānā* to teach

सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* m. cigarette

सितार *sitār* m. sitar

सिनेमा *sinemā* m. cinema

सिर *sir* m. head

सिर्फ *sirf* only

सिलवाना *silvānā* to have sewn

सीना *sīnā* to sew

सुखी *sukhī* happy

सीखना *sīkhnā* to learn

सुंदर *sundar* beautiful, handsome

सुनना *sunnā* to hear, to listen

सुनसान *sunsān* desolate, empty

सुबह *subah* f. morning

से *se* from

सैर *sair* f. trip

सोचना *socnā* to think  
 सोना *sonā* to sleep  
 सोमवार *somvār* m. Monday  
 सौ *sau* m. hundred  
 स्कूल *skūl* m. school  
 हँसना *hāsnā* to laugh  
 हफ्ता *haftā* m. week  
 हम *ham* we, us  
 हमारा *hamārā* our, ours  
 हमेशा *hameśā* always  
 हर *har* every, each  
 हवा *havā* f. air, breeze  
 हाँ *hā* yes  
 हाथ *hāth* m. hand  
 हाथी *hāthī* m. elephant  
 हाल *hāl* m. condition, state (in  
 क्या हाल है ? *kyā hāl hai?*  
 'How's things? How are  
 you?')

हिन्दी *hindī* f. Hindi  
 हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī* Indian  
 हिलाना *hilānā* to move, shake  
 ही *hī* only (emphatic)  
 हीरा *hīrā* m. diamond  
 हुआ *huā* [past tense of होना  
*honā*] 'happened'  
 हूँ *hū* am  
 हैं *hai* are  
 है *hai* is  
 हो *ho* are (with तुम *tum*)  
 होटल *hoṭal* m. hotel, restaurant,  
 cafe  
 होना *honā* to be; *ho jānā* to  
 become  
 होशियार *hośiyār* clever

**KEY**

- adj. adjective (only stated to resolve ambiguities)  
 f. feminine  
 m. masculine  
 m., f. used for both sexes  
 m./f. used in either gender  
<sup>N</sup> regularly uses the *ने ne* construction in perfective tenses  
<sup>n</sup> sometimes uses the *ने ne* construction in perfective tenses  
 p. plural

**a** एक *ek*, कोई *koī*

**able, to be** सकना *saknā* (after verb stem — मैं जा सकता हूँ *mai jā saktā hū̃* I can go)

**about** (approx.) करीब *qarīb*, लगभग *lagbhag*; (with number) कोई *koī* (कोई दस लोग *koī das log* some ten people); (concerning) के बारे में *ke bāre mē*

**above** ऊपर *ūpar*

**abroad** विदेश *videś*

**accept, to** स्वीकार करना *svīkār karnā* <sup>N</sup>; मानना *mānnā* <sup>N</sup>

**accident** हादसा *hādsā* m., दुर्घटना *durghaṭnā* f.

**actually** वैसे *vaise*

**add, to** जोड़ना *jornā* <sup>N</sup>

**address** पता *patā* m.

**advice** सलाह *salāh* f.

**aeroplane** हवाई जहाज़ *havāī jahāz* m.

**affection** प्यार *pyār* m.

**after** के बाद *ke bād*

**again** फिर *phir*, फिर से *phir se*

**age** (of person) उम्र f. *umra, umar*

**Agra** आगरा *āgrā* m.

**ahead (of)** (के) आगे (*ke*) *āge*  
**air** हवा *havā* f.  
**airmail** हवाई डाक *havāi dāk* f.  
**alcoholic drink** शराब *śarāb* f.  
**all** सब *sab*, सभी *sabhi*; whole सारा *sārā*  
**allow to, to** oblique inf. + देना *denā*<sup>N</sup> (मुझे जाने दो *mujhe jāne do* 'let me go')  
**alone** अकेला *akelā*; (adv.) अकेले *akele*  
**also** भी *bhī*  
**although** हालाँकि *hālāki*  
**always** हमेशा *hamesā*  
**America** अमरीका *amrikā* m.;  
 American अमरीकन *amrikan*  
**among** के बीच *ke bīc*; among themselves आपस में *āpas mē*  
**and** और *aur*  
**anger** गुस्सा *gussā* m.  
**angry** नाराज़ *nārāz*  
**answer** जवाब *javāb* m.; to answer जवाब देना *javāb denā*<sup>N</sup>  
**anxiety** परेशानी *pareśāni* f.; चिंता *cintā* f.  
**anyone (at all)** कोई (भी) *koī (bhī)*  
**anywhere (at all)** कहीं (भी) *kahī (bhī)*  
**apart from** के सिवा/ सिवाय *ke sivā/sivāy*; को छोड़कर *ko choṛkar*  
**apologize (to), to** (से) माफ़ी माँगना (*se*) *māfi māṅnā*<sup>N</sup>  
**appear, to** दिखना *dikhnā*, दिखाई

देना *dikhāi denā*; to seem लगना *lagnā*  
**area, district** इलाका *ilāqā* m.  
**arm** बाँह *bāh* f.  
**around, in vicinity of** के आस-पास *ke ās-pās*  
**arrange, to** का इंतज़ाम करना *kā intazām karnā*<sup>N</sup>  
**arrangement** इंतज़ाम *intazām* m.  
**arrive, to** पहुँचना *pahūcnā*  
**as if, as though** जैसे *jaise*, मानों *mānō*  
**as soon as** जैसे ही *jaise hī*  
**ask, to** पूछना *pūchnā*<sup>N</sup>; ask Ram राम से पूछो *Rām se pūcho*  
**at** को *ko*; पर *par*  
**at least** कम से कम *kam se kam*  
**attention** ध्यान *dhyān* m.; to pay attention (to) (पर) ध्यान देना (*par*) *dhyān denā*<sup>N</sup>  
**attentively** ध्यान से *dhyān se*  
**August** अगस्त *agast* m.  
**available, to be** मिलना *milnā*  
**back** (in sense 'return') वापस *vāpas*  
**back** (part of body) पीठ *pīṭh* f.  
**bad** खराब *kharāb*, बुरा *burā*  
**bag, cloth bag** थैला *thailā* m.  
**Banaras** बनारस *banāras* m., वाराणसी *vārānasi* f.  
**bathe, to** नहाना *nahānā*  
**be, to** होना *honā*; बनना *bannā*  
**beat, to** मारना *mārnā*<sup>N</sup>

**beautiful** सुन्दर *sundar*  
**because** क्योंकि *kyōki*  
**because of** की वजह से *kī vajah se*, के कारण *ke kāraṇ*  
**become, to** बनना *bannā*  
**before** (के/से) पहले *(ke/se) pahle*  
**begin to, to** oblique inf. + लगना *lagnā* (पानी पड़ने लगा *pānī paṛne lagā* it began to rain);  
 शुरू करना *śurū karnā* <sup>N</sup> (हम काम शुरू करें *ham kām śurū karē* let's begin work)  
**beginning** शुरू *surū* m.  
**behind** (के) पीछे *(ke) pīche*  
**bell** घंटी *ghaṇṭī* f.  
**below, beneath** (के) नीचे *(ke) nīche*  
**between** के बीच *ke bīc*;  
 between themselves आपस में *āpas mē*  
**bicycle** साइकिल *sāikil* f.  
**big** बड़ा *barā*  
**bird** चिड़िया *ciṛiyā* f.  
**birth** जन्म *janm* m.  
**birthday** जन्मदिन *janmdin* m.  
**blanket** कंबल *kambal* m.  
**boil, to** उबलना *ubalnā*; उबालना *ubālānā* <sup>N</sup>  
**book** किताब *kitāb* f.; पुस्तक *pustak* f.  
**bored, to be** ऊबना *ūbnā*  
**born, to be** पैदा होना *paidā honā* (पैदा *paidā* inv.); का जन्म होना *kā janm honā*

**both** दोनों *donō*  
**bottle** बोतल *botal* f.  
**boy** लड़का *larkā* m.  
**bread** रोटी *roṭī* f.; (loaf) डबल रोटी *ḍabal roṭī* f.  
**break, be broken, to** टूटना *tūṭnā*  
**break, to** तोड़ना *torṇā* <sup>N</sup>  
**breakfast** नाश्ता *nāśtā* m.  
**bridge** पुल *pul* m.  
**bring, to** लाना *lānā*, ले आना *le ānā*  
**brother** भाई *bhāī* m.  
**brother-in-law** (husband's younger bro.) देवर *devar* m.; (wife's bro.) साला *sālā* m.  
**building** इमारत *imārat* f.  
**bullet** गोली *golī* f.  
**burn, to** जलना *jalnā*; जलाना *jalānā* <sup>N</sup>  
**bus** बस *bas* f.  
**but** लेकिन *lekin*, पर *par*, मगर *magar*  
**butter** मक्खन *makkhan* m.  
**buy, to** खरीदना *kharīdnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**by** से *se*; by means of (के) द्वारा *(ke) dvārā*  
**call (invite), to** बुलाना *bulānā* <sup>N</sup>  
**camera** कैमरा *kaimrā* m.  
**can** see 'able, to be'  
**capital city** राजधानी *rājdhānī* f.  
**car** गाड़ी *gārī* f., कार *kār* f.  
**care (about), to** (की) परवाह करना *(kī) parvāh karnā* <sup>N</sup>



cat बिल्ली *billī* f.

catch, to पकड़ना *pakarṇā* <sup>N</sup>; (of fire or illness) लगना *lagnā*

cause कारण *kāraṇ* m.

certainly जरूर *zarūr*

chair कुर्सी *kursī* f.

chance, opportunity मौका *mauqā* m.

change, to बदलना *badalnā* <sup>N</sup>

chapatti चपाती *capāṭī* f.

cheap सस्ता *sastā*

child बच्चा *baccā* m.

childhood बचपन *bacpan* m.

choose, to चुनना *cunnā* <sup>N</sup>

cigarette सिग्रेट *sigreṭ* f.

cinema सिनेमा *sinemā* m.

city शहर *śahar* m.

class क्लास *klās* m./f.

clean साफ़ *sāf*, to clean साफ़ करना *sāf karnā* <sup>N</sup>

cleaning सफ़ाई *safāi* f.

clear साफ़ *sāf*; evident ज़ाहिर *zahir*

clever (intelligent) होशियार *hośiyār*, (cunning) चतुर *catur*

closed बंद *band*

close, to बंद करना *band karnā* <sup>N</sup>

cloth कपड़ा *kaprā* m.

clothing, garment कपड़ा *kaprā* m.

cloud बादल *bādal* m.

coffee काफी *kāfi* f.

cold ठंड *ṭhaṇḍ* f.; (adj.) ठंडा *ṭhaṇḍā*; (nose cold) जुकाम *zūkām* m.

come, to आना *ānā*

come out, to निकलना *nikalnā*

comfort आराम *ārām* m.;

comfortably आराम से *ārām se*

companion साथी *sāthī* m.

complain, to शिकायत करना *śikāyat karnā* <sup>N</sup>; to complain to Sita about Ram, सीता से राम की शिकायत करना *Sitā se Rām kī śikāyat karnā* <sup>N</sup>

complaint शिकायत *śikāyat* f.

computer कम्प्यूटर *kampyūṭar* m.

concern चिंता *cintā* f.

condition, state हाल *hāl* m., हालत *hālat* f.

congratulation बधाई *badhāi* f.

conversation बातचीत *bātcīt* f.

copy (of book etc.) प्रति *prati* f.

corner कोना *konā* m.

correct सही *sahī*

cough, to खौंसी आना *khāsi ānā*

country देश *deś* m.

cow गाय *gāy* f.

cross (road etc.), to पार करना *pār karnā* <sup>N</sup>

crowd भीड़ *bhīr* f.

cup प्याला *pyālā* m.

cupboard अलमारी *almārī* f.

cure इलाज *ilāj* m.

curtain परदा *pardā* m.

cut, to be कटना *kaṭnā*

cut, to काटना *kāṭnā* <sup>N</sup>

daal, lentils दाल *dāl* f.

daily (adverb) रोज़ *roz*

- dance** नृत्य *nṛtya* m., नाच *nāc* m.; to dance नाचना *nācnā*
- dark** अँधेरा *ādherā*; (of colour) गहरा *gahrā*; darkness अँधेरा *ādherā* m.
- date** तारीख *tārīkh* f.
- daughter** बेटी *betī* f.
- daughter-in-law** बहू *bahū* f.
- day** दिन *din* m.; all day दिन भर *din bhar*, day before yesterday / after tomorrow परसों *parsō*
- dear** प्रिय *priy*
- death** मौत *maut* f., मृत्यु *mṛtyu* f.
- degree** (academic) डिग्री *ḍigrī* f.
- delay** देर f.
- Delhi** दिल्ली *dillī* f.
- deliberately** जान-बूझकर *jān-būjhkar*
- description** वर्णन *varṇan* m.; to describe का वर्णन करना *kā varṇan karnā* <sup>N</sup>
- despair** निराशा *nirāśā* f.
- Devanagari** (the Hindi script) देवनागरी *devnāgarī* f.
- dhobi**, washerman धोबी *dhobī* m.
- dialect** बोली *bolī* f.
- dictionary** शब्दकोश *śabdkoś* m.
- die, to** मरना *marnā*
- difference** फ़र्क *farq* m. it makes no difference कोई फ़र्क नहीं पड़ता *koī farq nahī partā*
- different** भिन्न *bhinn*; (separate) अलग *alag*
- difficult** मुश्किल *muškil*
- difficulty** मुश्किल *muškil* f.
- direction** तरफ *taraf* f., ओर *or* f.
- dirty** गंदा *gandā*, मैला *mailā*
- disappointment** निराशा *nirāśā* f.; disappointed निराश *nirāś*
- distant** दूर *dūr*
- do, to** करना *karnā* <sup>N</sup>
- doctor** डाक्टर *dāktar* m.
- dog** कुत्ता *kuttā* m.
- don't** (in commands) न *na*, मत *mat*
- door** दरवाज़ा *darvāzā* m.
- doubt** शंका *śankā* f.
- down, downstairs** नीचे *nīce*
- draw, to** खींचना *khīcnā* <sup>N</sup>
- drawer** दराज़ *darāz* f.
- dream** सपना *sapnā* m.; to dream सपना देखना *sapnā dekhnā* <sup>N</sup>
- drink, to** पीना *pīnā* <sup>N</sup>
- drive, to** चलाना *calānā* <sup>N</sup>
- driver** ड्राइवर *drāivar* m.
- each** हर *har*, हरेक *harek*
- ear** कान *kān* m.
- early** जल्दी *jaldī*
- earn, to** कमाना *kamānā* <sup>N</sup>
- easily** आसानी से *āsānī se*, आराम से *ārām se*
- easy** आसान *āsān*; simple सरल *saral*
- eat, to** खाना *khānā* <sup>N</sup>
- edge** किनारा *kinārā* m.
- either... or** या तो... या *yā to... yā*

**electricity** बिजली *bijlī* f.

**e-mail** ई-मेल *i-mel* f.

**emerge, to** निकलना *nikalnā*

**employment** नौकरी *naukrī* f.

**end** अंत *ant* m.; in the end,  
after all आखिर (में) *ākhir (mē)*

**English person** अंग्रेज़ *āgrez* m., f.

**enough! that's all!** बस *bas*

**envelope** लिफाफा *lifāfā* m.

**escape, to** बचना *bacnā*

**etc.** वगैरह *vagairah*, इत्यादि  
*ityādi*

**evening** शाम *śām* f.

**everything** सब *sab*, सब कुछ *sab  
kuch*

**exactly, precisely** ठीक *thik*

**examination** परीक्षा *parikṣā* f.;

to take (sit) an exam परीक्षा  
देना *parikṣā denā* <sup>N</sup>; to

examine की परीक्षा लेना *kī  
parikṣā lenā* <sup>N</sup>

**except for** (को) छोड़कर *ko  
choṛkar*, के सिवाय *ke sivāy*

**expensive** महँगा *mahāgā*

**experience** अनुभव *anubhav* m.

**explain, to** समझाना *samjhnā* <sup>N</sup>

**extremely** बहुत ही *bahut hī*

**face** मुँह *mūh* m.; चेहरा *cehrā* m.

**facing, opposite** (के) सामने *(ke)  
sāmne*

**fall, to** गिरना *girnā*

**family** परिवार *parivār* m.

**famous** मशहूर *maśhūr*, प्रसिद्ध  
*prasiddh*

**fan** पंखा *pankhā* m.

**far away** दूर *dūr*

**fare** (taxi etc.) किराया *kirāyā* m.

**fat** मोटा *moṭā*

**father** पिता *pitā* m. (inv.), बाप  
*bāp* m.

**fault, guilt** कसूर *kasūr* m.

**fear** डर *ḍar* m.; to fear (से)  
डरना *(se ḍarnā)*

**feel, to** महसूस करना *mahsūs  
karnā* <sup>N</sup>; to be felt महसूस होना  
*mahsūs honā*

**fetch, to** लाना *lānā*, ले आना *le  
ānā*

**fever** बुखार *bukhār* m.

**fight, to** (से) लड़ना *(se) laṛnā* <sup>N</sup>

**film** फ़िल्म *film* f.

**find, to** पाना *pānā* <sup>N</sup>

**finger** उँगली *ūgli* f.

**finish, to** ख़त्म करना *khatm  
karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**finished** ख़त्म *khatm*

**fire** आग *āg* f.

**first** पहला *pahlā*; (adverb) पहले  
*pahle*

**fix, to** ठीक करना *thik karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**floor** फ़र्श *farś* m./f.

**flower** फूल *phūl* m.

**fly** (insect) मक्खी *makkhī* f.

**fly, to** उड़ना *uṛnā*

**follow, to** का पीछा करना *kā  
pīchā karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**food** खाना *khānā* m.

**for** के लिए *ke lie*

**forbidden** मना *manā* (inv.)  
**force, strength** जोर *zor* m.  
**foreign country** विदेश *videś* m.  
**foreigner** विदेशी *videśī* m.  
**forget, to** भूलना *bhūlnā*, भूल जाना *bhūl jānā*  
**forgive, to** माफ़ करना *māf karnā*  
**forgiveness** माफ़ी *māfi* f.  
**fork** (utensil) काँटा *kāṭā* m.  
**free** (vacant) खाली *khālī*;  
 (of cost) मुफ्त *muft*;  
 free time फुरसत *fursat* f.  
**fresh** ताज़ा *tāzā*  
**friend** दोस्त *dost* m., f., मित्र *mitr* m., f.; girl's girlfriend सहेली *sahelī* f.  
**from** से *se*  
**fruit** फल *phal* m.  
**full** पूरा *pūrā*, भरा *bharā*  
**fun** मज़ा *mazā* m.  
**furniture** सामान *sāmān* m.  
**future** भविष्य *bhaviṣya* m.  
**Ganges** गंगा *gangā* f.  
**garden** बगीचा *bagīcā* m.  
**get up, to** उठना *uṭhnā*  
**ghost** भूत *bhūt* m.  
**gift** तोहफ़ा *tohfā* m., भेंट *bhēṭ* f.  
**girl** लड़की *larkī* f.  
**give, to** देना *denā* <sup>N</sup>; to give up छोड़ना *chorṇā* <sup>N</sup>  
**glasses, specs** चश्मा *caśmā* m.  
**go, to** जाना *jānā*

**gold** सोना *sonā* m.  
**good** अच्छा *acchā*; decent भला *bhalā*  
**goodbye** नमस्ते *namaste*, नमस्कार *namaskār*  
**government** सरकार *sarkār* f.; governmental सरकारी *sarkārī*  
**grandfather** (father's father) दादा *dādā* m. (invariable -ā ending.); (mother's father) नाना *nānā* m. (invariable -ā ending)  
**grandmother** (father's mother) दादी *dādi* f.; (mother's mother) नानी *nānī* m.  
**grass** घास *ghās* f.  
**guest** मेहमान *mehmān* m.  
**guru** गुरु *guru* m.  
**half** आधा *ādhā* adj. & m.  
**hand** हाथ *hāth* m.  
**happiness** खुशी *khushī* f.  
**happy** खुश *khush*  
**harass, to** तंग करना *tang karnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**hard, difficult** मुश्किल *muškil*  
**hard-working** मेहनती *mehntī*  
**harm** नुकसान *nuqsān* m.  
**hate** नफ़रत *nafrat* f.; to hate (से) नफ़रत करना *(se) nafrat karnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**he** वह *vah*  
**head** सिर *sir* m.  
**health** तबियत *tabiyat* f.  
**hear, to** सुनना *sunnā* <sup>N</sup>

**heart** दिल *dil* m.

**heat** गरमी *garmī* f.

**heaven** स्वर्ग *svarg* m.

**heavy** भारी *bhārī*

**height** लंबाई *lambāi* f.

**hello** नमस्ते *namaste*, नमस्कार  
*namaskār*, (on phone) हलो  
*halo*

**help** मदद *madad* f.; to help  
him उसकी मदद करना *uski*  
*madad karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**here** यहाँ *yahā̃*, इधर *idhar*

**high** ऊँचा *ūcā*

**hill** पहाड़ *pahār* m.

**Hindi** हिन्दी *hindī* f.

**Hindu** हिन्दू *hindū*

**history** इतिहास *itihās* m.

**hit, to** मारना *mārnā* <sup>N</sup>

**holiday** छुट्टी *chutti* f.

**home** घर *ghar* m.; at home घर  
पर *ghar par*

**hope** आशा *āsā* f., उम्मीद *ummid* f.

**hospital** अस्पताल *aspatāl* m.

**hot** गरम *garam*

**hotel** होटल *hoṭal* m.

**hour** घंटा *ghaṇṭā* m.

**house** मकान *makān* m.

**how much/many** कितना *kitnā*;  
how much does that come  
to? कितना हुआ? *kitnā huā?*

**hunger** भूख *bhūkh* f.; to feel  
hungry भूख लगना *bhūkh*  
*lagnā*

**hungry** भूखा *bhūkhā*

**husband** पति *pati* m.

**I** मैं *mai*

**ice** बर्फ *barf* f.

**idea** विचार *vicār* m., खयाल  
*khyāl* m.

**if** अगर *agar*

**ill** बीमार *bimār*

**immediately** तुरंत *turant*

**important** ज़रूरी *zarūrī*

**impossible** असंभव *asambhav*,  
नामुमकिन *nāmumkin*

**in** में *mē*

**in front (of)** (के) आगे *(ke) āge*

**increase, to** बढ़ना *baṛhnā*,  
बढ़ाना *baṛhānā* <sup>N</sup>

**India** हिन्दुस्तान *hindustān* m.,

भारत *bhārat* m.; Indian

हिन्दुस्तानी *hindustānī*, भारतीय  
*bhāratīy*

**individual, person** व्यक्ति *vyakti* m.

**inside** (के) अंदर *(ke) andar*

**instead of** के बजाय *ke bajāy*

**intelligent** होशियार *hośiyār*, तेज़  
*tez*

**intention** इरादा *irādā* m.

**interesting** दिलचस्प *dilcasp*

**invite, to** बुलाना *bulānā* <sup>N</sup>

**-ish** -सा *-sā*

**it** वह *vah*

**job, employment** नौकरी *naukrī* f.

**joke** मज़ाक *mazāk* m.; joking,  
fun हैसी-मज़ाक *hāsī-mazāk* m.

- journey** यात्रा *yātrā* f., सफ़र *safar* m.
- jungle** जंगल *jangal* m.
- keep, to** रखना *rakhnā* <sup>N</sup>
- key** चाबी *cābī* f.
- kill, to** मारना *mārnā* <sup>N</sup>, मार डालना *mār dālā* <sup>N</sup>
- kind, type** तरह *tarah* f., प्रकार *prakār* m.
- king** राजा *rājā* m. (inv.)
- kitchen** रसोईघर *rasoiḡhar* m.
- knife** छुरी *churī* f.
- know, to** जानना *jānnā* <sup>N</sup>; मालूम होना *mālūm honā*
- kurta** कुरता *kurtā* m.
- lack, want** कमी *kamī* f.
- lady** महिला *mahilā* f.
- lamp, light** बत्ती *battī* f.
- land** ज़मीन *zamīn* f.
- lane** गली *galī* f.
- language** भाषा *bhāṣā* f., ज़बान *zabān* f.
- last, previous** पिछला *pichlā*
- late, delayed** देर से *der se*
- later** बाद (में) *bād (mē)*, आगे चलकर *āge calkar*
- laugh, to** हँसना *hāsnā* <sup>N</sup>; to make laugh हँसाना *hāśānā* <sup>N</sup>
- lazy** आलसी *ālsī*; (workshy) कामचोर *kāmcōr*
- leader, politician** नेता *netā* m.
- learn, to** सीखना *sīkhnā* <sup>N</sup>; to study पढ़ना *paṛhnā*
- leave, to** छोड़ना *chorṇā* <sup>N</sup>
- left** (opp. of right) बायाँ *bāyā*; to the left (hand) बायें/ उलटे (हाथ) *bāyē/ulṭe (hāth)*
- left** (remaining) बाकी *bāqī*
- length** लंबाई *lambāī* f.
- lentil(s)** दाल *dāl* f.
- less** कम *kam*
- letter** ख़त *khat* m., पत्र *patr* m., चिट्ठी *ciṭṭhī* f.
- lie** झूठ *jhūṭh* m.; to lie झूठ बोलना *jhūṭh bolna* <sup>N</sup>
- lie, recline, to** लेटना *leṭnā*
- life** ज़िंदगी *zindagī* f., जीवन *jīvan* m.
- lift, to** उठाना *uṭhānā* <sup>N</sup>
- light** (brightness) रोशनी *rośnī* f.; (lamp, electric light) बत्ती *battī* f.
- light** (in weight) हल्का *halkā*
- like** की तरह *kī tarah*; (equal to) (के) समान *ke samān*; (such as) जैसा *jaisā*
- like, to** पसंद करना *pasand kamā* <sup>N</sup>, पसंद होना *pasand honā*
- listen, to** सुनना *sunnā* <sup>N</sup>
- little, a** थोड़ा-सा *thoṛā-sā*
- live, to** (reside) रहना *rahnā*; (be alive) जीना *jīnā* <sup>N</sup>
- lock** ताला *tālā* m.
- London** लंदन *landan* m.
- loneliness** अकेलापन *akelāpan* m.
- look for, to** ढूँढ़ना *dhūṛhnā* <sup>N</sup>, की तलाश करना *kī talāś kamā* <sup>N</sup>

**look, to** देखना *dekhnā* <sup>N</sup>

**lose, to** खोना *khonā* <sup>N</sup>

**love** प्रेम *prem* m., प्यार *pyār* m.;  
to love us हमसे प्रेम/प्यार करना  
*hamse prem/pyār karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**luggage** सामान *sāmān* m.

**lunch** दोपहर का खाना *dopahar*  
*kā khānā* m.

**luxury** ऐश *aiś* m.

**lying** (for inanimate things)  
पड़ा *parā*; (for people, 'lying  
down') लेटा *leṭā*

**Ma** माँ *mā* f.

**mad** पागल *pāgal*

**mail, post** डाक f.

**make, to** बनाना *banānā* <sup>N</sup>

**man, person** आदमी *ādmī* m.

**mango** आम *ām* m.

**market** बाज़ार *bāzār* m.

**married** शादी-शुदा *śādī-śudā*  
(invariable -ā ending.)

**marry, to** शादी करना *śādī karnā* <sup>N</sup>;  
to marry Ram, राम से शादी  
करना *Rām se śādī karnā* <sup>N</sup>; to  
marry Ram to Sita, राम की  
शादी सीता से करना *Rām kī*  
*śādī Sītā se karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**matter** बात *bāt* f.; it doesn't  
matter कोई बात नहीं *koī bāt*  
*nahī*

**mean, miserly** कंजूस *kanjūs*

**meaning** मतलब *matlab* m., अर्थ  
*arth* m.

**meat** गोشت *gośt* m., माँस *mās* m.

**medicine** दवा *davā* f.

**meet, to** (से) मिलना *(se) milnā*

**meeting** मुलाकात *mulāqāt* f., भेंट  
*bhēṭ* f.

**memory** याद *yād* f.

**midnight** आधीरात *ādhīrāt* f.

**milk** दूध *dūdh* m.

**mine** मेरा *merā*

**minute** मिनट *minat* m.

**mistake** गलती *galtī* f., भूल *bhūl*  
f.; to make a mistake  
गलती/भूल करना *galtī/bhūl*  
*karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**Monday** सोमवार *somvār* m.

**money** पैसा *paisā* m.

**monkey** बंदर *bandar* m.

**month** महीना *mahinā* m.

**moon** चाँद *cāḍ* m.

**more** और *aur*, ज़्यादा *zyādā*,  
अधिक *adhik*

**morning** सुबह *subah* f.

**mosquito** मच्छर *macchar* m.

**most** ज़्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhik*;  
at the most अधिक से अधिक  
*adhik se adhik*, ज़्यादा से ज़्यादा  
*zyādā se zyādā*

**mostly** ज़्यादातर *zyādātar*

**mother** माता *mātā* f., माँ *mā* f.

**mountain** पहाड़ *pahār* m.

**mouth** मुँह *mūh* m.

**move, to** चलना *calnā*; हिलना  
*hilnā*; to move house शिफ्ट  
करना *śiṭī karnā* <sup>N</sup>, घर बदलना  
*ghar badalnā* <sup>N</sup>

**much** ज़्यादा *zyādā*, अधिक *adhik*  
**Muslim** मुसलमान *musalmān*  
**adj. and m.**  
**my** मेरा *merā*  
**narrow** तंग *tang*  
**near** (के) नज़दीक (*ke*) *nazdik*,  
 (के) पास (*ke*) *pās*  
**necessary** ज़रूरी *zarūrī*  
**neck** गर्दन *gardan f.*  
**need** ज़रूरत *zarūrat f.*  
**needed** चाहिए *cāhie*  
**neighbour** पड़ोसी *paṛosī m.*  
**neither... nor** न ... न *na... na*  
**new** नया (नए, नई) *nayā (nae, nai)*  
**news** ख़बर *khabar f.*, समाचार  
*samācār m.*  
**newspaper** अख़बार *akhbār m.*  
**next** अगला *aglā*  
**next to, close by** की बग़ल में *kī bagal mē*  
**night** रात *rāt f.*  
**no** नहीं *nahī*; जी नहीं *jī nahī*  
**no one** कोई नहीं *koī nahī*  
**nobody** कोई नहीं *koī nahī*  
**noise, tumult** शोर *śor m.*  
**noon, afternoon** दोपहर *dopahar f.*  
**nose** नाक *nāk f.*  
**not** नहीं *nahī*, न *na*  
**nothing** कुछ नहीं *kuch nahī*  
**now** अब *ab*  
**nowadays** आजकल *ājkal*  
**nowhere** कहीं नहीं *kahī nahī*

**o' clock** बजे *baje*  
**of** का *kā*  
**of course** ज़रूर *zarūr*, अवश्य  
*avaśya*  
**office** दफ़्तर *daftār m.*  
**often** अक्सर *aksar*  
**old** (of people) बूढ़ा *būrhā*; (of  
 things) पुराना *purānā*  
**old man** बूढ़ा *būrhā m.*  
**old woman** बुढ़िया *burhiyā f.*  
**on** पर *par*  
**on top (of)** के ऊपर *ke ūpar*  
**one** एक *ek*; one and a half डेढ़  
*ḍerh*; one and a quarter सवा  
*savā*  
**oneself** खुद *khud*, स्वयं *svayam*  
**only** सिर्फ *sirf*, केवल *keval*; ही *hī*  
**open** खुला *khulā*; to open खुलना  
*khulnā*; खोलना *kholnā*  
**opinion** राय *rāy f.*; ख़याल *khyāl*  
*m.*; in my opinion मेरे ख़याल  
 में/से *mere khyāl mē/se*  
**opportunity** मौक़ा *mauqā m.*  
**or** या *yā*  
**order (send for), to** मँगवाना  
*māgvānā<sup>N</sup>*  
**ordinary** आम *ām*, साधारण  
*sādhāraṇ*  
**other, second** दूसरा *dūsarā*  
**otherwise** नहीं तो *nahī to*  
**our, ours** हमारा *hamārā*  
**out** बाहर *bāhar*  
**out of, from among** में से *mē se*



**outside** (के) बाहर (*ke*) *bāhar*  
**own, one's own** अपना *apnā*  
**pain** दर्द *dard* m.; (mental) दुःख  
*duḥkh* m.

**paper** कागज़ *kāgaz* m.

**park (car), to** खड़ा करना *kharā*  
*karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**particular** खास *khās*, विशेष  
*viśeṣ*

**party (political)** दल *dal* m.

**party (social event)** पार्टी *pāṭī* f.

**passenger** यात्री *yātrī* m.,  
 मुसाफ़िर *musāfir* m., सवारी  
*savārī* f.

**pearl** मोती *motī* m.

**pen** कलम *qalam* m./f.

**pencil** पेंसिल *pensil* f.

**people** लोग *log* m. pl.; the  
 people, public जनता *jantā* f.  
 (used in singular)

**perhaps** शायद *śāyad*

**period, age** ज़माना *zamānā* m.

**person, individual** व्यक्ति *vyakti* m.

**phone, to** फ़ोन करना *fon karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**photograph** फ़ोटो *foto* m.; to  
 take photo फोटो खींचना *foṭo*  
*khīncnā* <sup>N</sup>

**pick up, to** उठाना *uṭhānā* <sup>N</sup>

**picture** तस्वीर *tasvīr* f., चित्र *citr* m.

**piece, bit** टुकड़ा *ṭukrā* m.

**pill** गोली *goli* f.

**place** जगह *jagah* f.

**play (game), to** खेलना *khelnā* <sup>N</sup>

**play (music), to** बजाना *bajānā* <sup>N</sup>

**please** कृपया *kṛpayā*, मेहरबानी  
 करके *meharbānī karke*

**pocket** जेब *jeb* f.

**poem; poetry** कविता *kavitā* f.

**police** पुलिस *pulis* f. (used in  
 singular)

**politician** नेता *netā* m.

**poor** गरीब *garīb*

**possible** मुमकिन *mumkin*, संभव  
*sambhav*

**post, mail** डाक *ḍāk* f.

**post office** डाकघर *ḍākghar* m.

**pour, to** डालना *ḍālnā* <sup>N</sup>

**power** शक्ति *śakti* f.

**practice** अभ्यास *abhyās* m.

**praise** तारीफ़ *tārīf* f.; to praise  
 की तारीफ़ करना *kī tārīf karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**prepare, to** तैयार करना *taiyār*  
*karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**present, gift** तोहफ़ा *tohḥā* m.,  
 उपहार *uphār* m.,  
 (presentation) भेंट *bhēt* f.

**previous** पिछला *pichlā*;

previously पहले *pahle*

**price** दाम *dām* m., कीमत *qimat* f.

**pride** गर्व *garv* m.

**problem** समस्या *samasyā* f.

**profession** पेशा *peśā* m.

**properly** ठीक से *thik se*

**public, the people** जनता *jantā* f.  
 (used in singular)

**pure, unmixed** शुद्ध *śuddh*

**put on, to** पहनना *pahannā* <sup>N</sup>

**put, to** रखना *rakhnā* <sup>N</sup>

**quarrel** झगड़ा *jhagrā* m.

**question** सवाल *savāl* m., प्रश्न *praśn* m.

**quick** तेज़ *tez*

**quickly** जल्दी *jaldī*

**quite (fairly)** काफी *kāfī*;

(completely) बिल्कुल *bilkul*

**radio** रेडियो *reḍiyo* m.

**rain** बारिश *bāriś* f.; to rain

बारिश होना *bāriś honā*, पानी

पड़ना *pānī paṛnā*

**reach, to** पहुँचना *pahūcnā*

**read, to** पढ़ना *paṛhnā* <sup>N</sup>

**ready** तैयार *taiyār*

**real** असली *aslī*

**reason** कारण *kāraṇ* m., बजह *vajah* f.

**recognize, to** पहचानना

*pahcānnā* <sup>N</sup>

**red** लाल *lāl*

**refuse (to), to** (से) इनकार करना *(se) inkār karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**relative** रिश्तेदार *riśtedār* m., f.

**remain, to** रहना *rahnā*

**remaining** बाकी *bāqī*

**remember, to** याद करना *yād karnā* <sup>N</sup>; याद होना *yād honā*

**remind, to** याद दिलाना *yād dilānā* <sup>N</sup>

**rent** किराया *kirāyā* m.; to rent किराये पर लेना/देना *kirāye par lenā/denā* <sup>N</sup>

**reply** जवाब *javāb* m.; to reply

जवाब देना *javāb denā* <sup>N</sup>

**rest, ease** आराम *ārām* m.; to

rest आराम करना *ārām karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**return, to** लौटना *lauṭnā*

**rice** चावल *cāval* m.

**rich, wealthy** अमीर *amīr*

**rickshaw** रिक्शा *riksā* m.

**right (correct)** ठीक *ṭhīk*, सही *sahī*

**right (opp. of left)** दाहिना *dāhinā*; to the right (hand)

दाहिने (हाथ) *dāhine (hāth)*

**river** नदी *nadī* f.

**robbery** चोरी *corī* f.

**room** कमरा *kamrā* m.

**run, to** दौड़ना *daūṛnā*; to run away भागना *bhāgnā*

**rupee** रुपया *rupayā* m.

**salt** नमक *namak* m.

**samosa** समोसा *samosā* m.

**sandal** चप्पल *cappal* f.

**Sanskrit** संस्कृत *sanskṛt* f.

**sari** साड़ी *sārī* f.

**Saturday** शनिवार *śanivār* m.

**save, to** बचाना *bacānā* <sup>N</sup>

**say, to** (से) कहना *(se) kahnā* <sup>N</sup>

**scold, to** डाँटना *ḍāṭnā* <sup>N</sup>

**script (alphabet)** लिपि *lipi* f.

**sea** समुद्र *samudra* m.

**search** तलाश *talāś* f.; to search for की तलाश करना *kī talāś karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**seated, sitting** बैठा *baiṭhā*  
**see, to** देखना *dekhnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**seem, to** लगना *lagnā*; मालूम होना  
*mālūm honā*  
**sell, to** बेचना *becnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**send, to** भेजना *bhejnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**sentence** वाक्य *vākya* m.  
**separate, separately** अलग *alag*  
**servant** नौकर *naukar* m.  
**several** कई *kai*  
**she** वह *vah*  
**shoe; pair of shoes** जूता *jūtā* m.  
**shop** दुकान *dukān* f.; shop-  
 keeper दुकानदार *dukāndār* m.  
**should** चाहिए *cāhie* (after  
 infinitive: 'I should go' मुझको  
 जाना चाहिए *mujhko jānā*  
*cāhie*)  
**shout, to** चिल्लाना *cillānā* <sup>N</sup>  
**shut** बंद *band*; to shut बंद करना  
*band karnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**side, direction** तरफ़ *taraff* f., ओर  
 or f.  
**silent** चुप *cup*, खामोश *khāmoś*  
**simple, easy** सरल *saral*  
**since the time when... since then**  
 जब से ... तब से *jab se... tab se*  
**sing, to** गाना *gānā* <sup>N</sup>  
**sister** बहिन *bahin* f.  
**sit, to** बैठना *baiṭhnā*  
**sitar** सितार *sitār* m.  
**sky** आकाश *ākāś* m., आसमान  
*āsmān* m.

**sleep** नींद *nīd* f.  
**sleep, to** सोना *sonā*  
**small** छोटा *choṭā*  
**smile, to** मुस्कराना *muskarānā* <sup>N</sup>  
**smoke, to** (सिग्रेट) पीना *(sigreṭ)*  
*pīnā* <sup>N</sup>  
**so** (then) तो *to*, सो *so*; so much  
 इतना *itnā*  
**soap** साबुन *sābun* m.  
**sold, to be** बिकना *biknā*  
**some** (with single countable  
 noun) कोई *koī*; (with  
 uncountable) कुछ *kuch*;  
 something else कुछ और *kuch*  
*aur*, something or other कुछ न  
 कुछ *kuch na kuch*  
**somehow** कहीं *kahī*  
**someone** कोई *koī*; someone  
 else और कोई *aur koī*, कोई  
 और *koī aur*, someone or other  
 कोई न कोई *koī na koī*  
**sometime** कभी *kabhī*;  
 sometimes कभी कभी *kabhī*  
*kabhī*  
**somewhere** कहीं *kahī*; some-  
 where else कहीं और *kahī aur*;  
 somewhere or other कहीं न  
 कहीं *kahī na kahī*  
**son** बेटा *beṭā* m.  
**song** गाना *gānā* m., गीत *gīt* m.  
**soon** जल्दी *jaldī*  
**sound** आवाज़ *āvāz* f.  
**south** दक्षिण *dakṣiṇ* m.

**speak**, to बोलना *bolnā* <sup>n</sup>  
**spoon** चम्मच *cammac* m.  
**stair, staircase** सीढ़ी *sīrhī* f.  
**stamp** टिकट *ṭikaṭ* m./ f.  
**standing** खड़ा *kharā*  
**state, province** प्रदेश *pradeś* m.  
**station** स्टेशन *ṣṭeśan* m.  
**stay**, to रहना *rahnā*  
**steal**, to चोरी करना *corī karnā* <sup>n</sup>  
**still** (up to now) अभी *abhi*  
**stomach** पेट *peṭ* m.  
**stone** पत्थर *patthar* m.  
**stop**, to रुकना *ruknā*; रोकना *roknā* <sup>n</sup>  
**story** कहानी *kahānī* f.  
**straight, straightforward** सीधा *sīdhā*  
**strange** अजीब *ajīb*  
**stranger** अजनबी *ajnabī* m.  
**street** सड़क *sarak* f.  
**string** रस्सी *rassī* f.  
**stroll**, to टहलना *ṭahalnā*  
**strong** मजबूत *mazbūt*, तेज़ *tez*  
**student** विद्यार्थी *vidyārthī* m., f.  
**studies, studying** पढ़ाई *parhāī* f.  
**study**, to पढ़ना *parhnā*  
**stupid** बेवकूफ *bevaqūf*, stupid person उल्लू *ullū* m. (lit. 'owl')  
**subject, topic** विषय *viṣay* m.  
**success** सफलता *saphaltā* f.; successful सफल *saphal*, कामयाब *kāmyāb*  
**suddenly, unexpectedly** अचानक *acānak*, एकाएक *ekāek*

**suggestion** सुझाव *sujhāv* m.; to suggest सुझाव देना *sujhāv denā* <sup>n</sup>  
**summer** गरमियाँ *garimiyā* f. pl; summer holidays गरमी की छुट्टियाँ *garmī kī chuṭṭiyā* f. pl  
**sun** सूरज *sūraj* m.; sunlight, sunshine धूप *dhūp* f.  
**Sunday** रविवार *ravivār* m.  
**surprise** आश्चर्य *āścarya* m.; I'm surprised मुझे आश्चर्य है *mujhe āścarya hai*  
**sweet** मीठा *mīṭhā*; sweet dish मिठाई *mīṭhāī* f.  
**swim**, to तैरना *tairnā* <sup>n</sup>  
**tabla** तबला *tablā* m.  
**table** मेज़ *mez* f.  
**tablet, pill** गोली *golī* f.  
**tailor** दर्जी *darzī* m.  
**take**, to (receive) लेना *lenā* <sup>n</sup>; (deliver) ले जाना *le jānā*  
**take away**, to ले जाना *le jānā*  
**take care of**, to का खयाल/ध्यान रखना *kā khyāl/dhyān rakhnā* <sup>n</sup>  
**talk, converse**, to (से) बात/बातें करना *(se) bāt/bātē karnā* <sup>n</sup>  
**tall** लंबा *lambā*; (high) ऊँचा *ūcā*  
**tap** (faucet) नल *nal* m.  
**taxi** टैक्सी *ṭaiksī* f.  
**tea** चाय *cāy* f.  
**teach**, to (a subject) पढ़ाना *parhānā* <sup>n</sup>, (a skill) सिखाना *sikhānā* <sup>n</sup>  
**teacher** अध्यापक *adhyāpak* m.

**tell, to** बताना *batānā* <sup>N</sup>

**temple** मंदिर *mandir* m.

**thank you** शुक्रिया *śukriyā*,  
धन्यवाद *dhanyavād*

**that** (conjunction) कि *ki*

**that** (pronoun) वह *vah*

**that is to say** यानी *yānī*

**theft** चोरी *corī* f.

**then** फिर *phir*, तब *tab*

**there** वहाँ *vahā̃*; right there वहीं  
*vahī̃*; over there उधर *udhar*

**these** ये *ye*

**they** ये *ye*, वे *ve*

**thick, coarse** मोटा *moṭā*

**thief** चोर *cor* m.

**thin** पतला *patlā*; (lean) दुबला-  
पतला *dublā-patlā*

**thing** चीज़ *cīz* f.; (abstract,  
'matter') बात *bāt* f.

**think, to** सोचना *socnā* <sup>N</sup>

**thirst** प्यास *pyās* f.; to feel  
thirsty, thirst to strike प्यास  
लगना *pyās lagnā*

**this** यह *yah*

**those** वे *ve*

**thought** विचार *vicār* m., खयाल  
*khyāl* m.

**throat** गला *galā* m.

**throw, to** डालना *ḍālnā* <sup>N</sup>, फेंकना  
*phēknā* <sup>N</sup>

**ticket** टिकट *ṭikaṭ* m./ f.

**time** समय *samay* m., वक्त *vaqt*  
m.; occasion बार *bār* f., दफ़ा  
*dafā* f.

**tired** थका *thakā*; to be tired  
थकना *thaknā*

**to** को *ko*

**today** आज *āj*

**together** (in company with) एक  
साथ *ek sāth*, के साथ *ke sāth*

**tomorrow** कल *kal*

**too** (also) भी *bhī*; (excessive)  
बहुत ज्यादा *bahut zyādā*

**touch, to** छूना *chūnā* <sup>N</sup>

**towards** की तरफ़/ ओर *kī*  
*taraf/ or*

**town** शहर *śahar* m.

**toy** खिलौना *khilaunā* m.

**train** ट्रेन *tren* f., गाड़ी *gāṛī* f.,  
रेलगाड़ी *relgāṛī* f.

**translation** अनुवाद *anuvād* m.;  
to translate (का) अनुवाद करना  
(ka) *anuvād karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**travel** यात्रा *yātrā* f., सफ़र *safar* m.;  
to travel यात्रा/सफ़र करना *yātrā/*  
*safar karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**traveller** यात्री *yātrī* m., मुसाफ़िर  
*musāfir* m.

**tree** पेड़ *peṛ* m.

**true** सच *sac*

**trust** भरोसा *bharosā* m., विश्वास  
*viśvās* m.

**truth** सच्चाई *sacāī* f.

**try, to** की कोशिश करना *kī kośīś*  
*karnā* <sup>N</sup>

**turn, bend** मोड़ *moṛ* m.

**turn, to** मुड़ना *muṛnā*, मोड़ना  
*moṛnā* <sup>N</sup>

two दो *do*; two and a half ढाई  
*dhāi*  
 uncle (father's younger brother)  
 चाचा *cācā* m. (inv.)  
 understand, to समझना  
*samajhnā* <sup>n</sup>  
 understanding समझ *samajh* f.  
 until तक *tak*  
 up, upstairs ऊपर *ūpar*  
 up to तक *tak*  
 upset परेशान *pareśān*  
 Urdu उर्दू *urdū* f.  
 urgent ज़रूरी *zarūrī*  
 us हम *ham*  
 useless बेकार *bekār*  
 usually आम तौर पर *ām taur par*  
 vacant खाली *khālī*  
 vacate, to खाली करना *khālī*  
*karnā* <sup>n</sup>  
 valuable कीमती *qīmī*  
 Varanasi वाराणसी *vārāṇasī* f.  
 vegetable(s) सब्ज़ी *sabzī* f.  
 very बहुत *bahut*  
 via से होकर *se hokar*  
 village गाँव *gāv* m.  
 visible, to be दिखाई देना *dikhāi*  
*denā*  
 voice आवाज़ *āvāz* f.  
 wait, waiting इंतज़ार *itnazār* m.;  
 to wait (for) (का) इंतज़ार करना  
*(kā) intazār karnā* <sup>n</sup>  
 walk, to पैदल चलना/जाना *paidal*  
*calnā/jana*

wall दीवार *divār* f.  
 want, to चाहना *cāhnā* <sup>n</sup> (in  
 past, use imperfective – मैं  
 चाहता था *maī cāhtā thā* –  
 rather than perfective)  
 warm गरम *garam*  
 wash, to धोना *dhonā* <sup>n</sup>; (bathe)  
 नहाना *nahānā*; to wash dishes  
 बरतन *mājnā* <sup>n</sup>  
 washed, to be धुलना *dhulnā*  
 watch, wristwatch घड़ी *gharī* f.  
 water पानी *pānī* m.  
 way, manner ढंग *ḍhang* m.,  
 तरह *tarah* f., प्रकार *prakār* m.  
 we हम *ham*  
 weak कमज़ोर *kamzor*  
 wear, to पहनना *pahannā* <sup>n</sup>  
 weather मौसम *mausam* m.  
 wedding शादी *śādī* f.  
 week हफ़्ता *haftā* m., सप्ताह  
*saptāh* m.  
 weep, to रोना *ronā* <sup>n</sup>  
 well, anyway ख़ैर *khair*  
 well, in a good way अच्छा  
*acchā*, अच्छी तरह (से) *acchī*  
*tarah (se)*  
 wet (soaked) भीगा *bhīgā*;  
 (damp) गीला *gilā*  
 what like, what kind of? कैसा  
*kaisā*  
 what? क्या *kyā*  
 when... then जब... तब *jab... tab*  
 when? कब *kab*

**where... there** जहाँ ... वहाँ

*jahā...vahā*

**where?** कहाँ *kahā*, किधर *kidhar*

**which, the one which** जो *jo*;

which/what ever जो भी *jo bhi*

**which?** कौनसा *kaunsā*

**while** (on the other hand) जब

कि *jab ki*

**white** सफ़ेद *safed*; white person

गोरा *gorā* m., f.

**who, the one who** जो *jo*;

whoever जो भी *jo bhi*

**who?** कौन *kaun*

**why?** क्यों *kyō*

**wife** पत्नी *patnī* f.

**wind** हवा *havā* f.

**window** खिड़की *khirkī* f.

**with** से *se*; (in company of) के

साथ *ke sāth*

**without** के बिना *ke binā*;

without doing/saying/thinking

बिना किए/बोले/सोचे *binā*

*kie/bole/soce*

**woman** औरत *aurat* f.

**wood** लकड़ी *lakṛī* f.

**word** शब्द *śabd* m.

**work** काम *kām* m.; (occu-

pation) धंधा *dhandhā* m.;

(employment) नौकरी *naukrī* f.

**world** दुनिया *duniyā* f.

**write, to** लिखन *likhnā* <sup>N</sup>

**writer** लेखक *lekhak* m.

**wrong, incorrect** ग़लत *galat*

**year** साल *sāl* m., वर्ष *varṣ* m.;

(of calendar, era) सन् *san* m.

**yes** हाँ *hā*, जी हाँ *jī hā*

**yesterday** कल *kal*

**you** (intimate) तू *tū*; (familiar)

तुम *tum*; (formal) आप *āp*

**young** छोटा *choṭā*, जवान *javān*

**your, yours** (intimate) तेरा *terā*;

(familiar) तुम्हारा *tumhārā*;

(formal) आपका *āpkā*

**adjective** A word that describes: 'green, small, nice'.

**adverb** A word or phrase that describes the way in which something happens: 'quickly, carefully, immediately, next week'.

**agreement** Having the same number, gender and case: in 'we go', the verb 'go' agrees with 'we'; in 'he goes', 'goes' agrees with 'he'.

**case** A way of showing the relationship of a word to other words in a sentence: 'she hit her' distinguishes aggressor and victim by having 'she' and 'her' in different cases. In Hindi, the main distinction is between 'direct case' and 'oblique case'.

**conjunction** A link-word between parts of a sentence, such as 'that' and 'but' in 'I heard that my brother was ill but I did nothing'.

**continuous** The tense that describes things going on at a particular time, conveyed in English by an '-ing' verb and in Hindi by a रहा *rahā* construction: वह बोल रहा है *vah bol rahā hai* 'he is speaking'.

**direct** The case used by default for nouns (and pronouns and adjectives); it is replaced by the 'oblique' when a noun (etc.) is followed by a postposition, and in some adverbial phrases.

**gender** The status of a noun as being either masculine or feminine. For animates, grammatical gender follows sexual gender (आदमी *ādmī* 'man' is masculine, औरत *aurat* 'woman' is feminine), but for inanimates the allocation of gender is not easily predictable (कान *kān* 'ear' is masculine, नाक *nāk* 'nose' is feminine).

**Imperfective** A verb tense whose action is not a completed, one-off event: मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ *mai hindī boltā hū* 'I speak Hindi'; see **perfective**.

**Intransitive verb** One that cannot take a direct object. Verbs of motion are typical examples: आना *ānā* to come, जाना *jānā* to go.

**noun** A word that names something: 'mouse, love, brother, Ram'.

**number** The status of a word as being either singular or plural.



**infinitive** The form of the verb listed in dictionaries: in Hindi it ends -ना -nā, as in करना *karnā*; in English it features the word 'to', as in 'to do'. An infinitive is used in many constructions such as मुझको जाना चाहिए *mujhko jānā cāhie* 'I ought to go'.

**object** The part of the sentence that is affected by the verb, or to which the action is done. In वह राम को पैसा देगा *vah Rām ko paisā degā* 'He'll give money to Ram', वह *vah* 'he' is the subject, पैसा *paisā* 'money' is the direct object, राम *Rām* 'Ram' the indirect object.

**oblique** The case that is used before a postposition. In मेरे कमरे में *mere kamre mē* 'in my room', मेरे कमरे *mere kamre* is made oblique by में *mē*. An oblique also appears (without postposition) in some adverbs such as इन दिनों *in dinō* 'these days'.

**participle** A form of the verb used as the basis for various tenses: जाता *jātā* is the imperfective participle from जाना *jānā* 'to go' and is used to form वह जाता है/था *vah jātā hai/thā* 'he goes/ used to go'.

**passive** A verb whose focus is on the action being done rather than the person doing it: 'the food is being cooked' is passive, 'I am cooking the food' is active.

**perfective** A verb tense that describes a completed, one-off action, as in हमने गाड़ी खरीदी *hamne gārī kharidī* 'we bought a car'.

**possessive** Having a meaning that indicates ownership: 'my' and 'our' are possessive pronouns.

**postposition** Words like में *mē* 'in', पर *par* 'on' and के लिए *ke lie* 'for', which express a relationship to the word or phrase preceding it, as in मेज़ पर *mez par* 'on the table', आप के लिए *āp ke lie* 'for you'; postpositions are the Hindi equivalents of English prepositions.

**pronoun** A word that stands for a noun: 'Manoj read a book' uses nouns, 'he read it' uses pronouns.

**relative** A relative pronoun such as 'who, which' gives further information about something already mentioned, as in 'Find the boy who took my jacket': such a word introduces a relative clause.

**stem** The base form of a verb, to which endings are added: कर *kar* in करना *karnā* 'to do'.

**subject** That person or thing who acts or is: हम *ham* 'we' in हम खाना तैयार करेंगे *ham khānā taiyār karēge* 'we will prepare food'.

**subjunctive** A form of the verb that typically expresses possibility or suggestion rather than definitive actions.

**transitive** A transitive verb is one that can take a direct object: 'to eat, to write, to ask' ('to eat *food*, to write *letters*, to ask *questions*').

**verb** A word or phrase that denotes an action or a state of being: 'ate' in 'I ate the banana', 'am' in 'I am unwell'. It usually has a subject ('I') and may also take an object ('the banana').

References are to Unit and section number.

- able, to be 6.3
- absolute 10.4
- adjectives 2.1, 3.1, 3.3
- adverbs 4.2, 8.4
- age ('how old...?') 6.2
- allow, to 6.4
- apnā* 8.3
- be, to (present) 1.1, (past) 7.1
- begin, to 11.1
- bhī* 3.3, 7.4
- cāhie* ('to need') 5.2, ('should') 11.4
- cāhnā* 6.4
- can 6.3
- case 3.3, 5.1, 6.1, 10.2
- causatives 12.2
- commands 4.1, 9.2
- comparisons 8.1
- compound verbs 12.5
- compulsion ('should, must') 11.4, 11.5
- conditionals ('if') 9.2
- crossword puzzle 12.1
- cuknā* 12.4
- dates 12.6
- days of the week 9.1
- destinations 8.4
- directions (finding the way) 11.2
- echo words 12.2
- emphasis 7.4
- English words 6.6, 12.5
- formality 2.3, 2.4, 4.1
- gender 2.1, 2.2, 2.3
- genitives (see possession)
- get, to 5.3
- greetings 1.1
- habitual actions 4.3, 7.1
- have, to 6.1
- have to, to 11.5
- health 12.2, 12.3
- hī* 7.4
- honorifics 2.3, 2.4, 4.1
- 'if' clauses 9.2
- imperatives 4.1
- intransitive verbs 10.1
- jab, jahā, jo* etc. 12.1
- jākar* construction 10.4
- jī* 2.4
- kā* 6.1
- know, to 5.2
- ko* 5.2, 7.2, 7.3, 10.2, 11.4, 11.5
- koī* 6.1
- kuch* 6.2
- kyā* (question marker) 2.2; ('what?') 2.4
- lagnā* 9.4, 11.1

- let (allow), to 6.4  
*mālūm* 5.2  
 meet, to 4.2  
*milnā* ('to meet') 4.2; ('to be available; to get') 5.3  
 months 12.7  
 must 11.4, 11.5  
*ne* 10.2  
 negatives 1.2, 4.3  
 nouns 2.2, 3.3  
 numbers 2.2, 12.6  
 object with *ko* 7.2  
 obligation expressions 11.4, 11.5  
 oblique (see case)  
 parts of the body 12.3  
*pasand* 52  
 passive 11.3  
 possession 1.2, 2.4, 3.2 6.1, 8.3  
 postpositions 3.2, 3.3, 5.2, 8.4  
 pronouns 1.2, 1.3, 2.3, 2.4, 5.1, 7.3  
 quantities 5.4  
 questions 1.2, 1.4, 2.3, 3.1, 3.2, 4.3  
 relative clauses 12.1  
 reported speech 9.1  
*saknā* 6.3  
 shades of meaning 12.4  
 should 11.4  
 style in Hindi 12.5  
 subjunctive 9.2  
 superlatives 8.1  
 tenses: continuous 8.2, future 9.1, present imperfective 4.3, past imperfective 7.1, perfective 10.1–10.3  
 time of day 12.7  
 time taken to do something 9.4  
*to* 7.4  
 transitive verbs 10.2, 12.2  
 want, to 5.2, 6.4  
 word order 3.2, 3.3  
 would 8.1



also available in a book/CD pack

teach  
yourself

## beginner's hindi

rupert snell

- Are you new to language learning?
- Do you want lots of practice and examples?
- Do you want to improve your confidence to speak?

**Beginner's Hindi** is written for the complete beginner who wants to move at a steady pace and have lots of opportunity to practise. The grammar is explained clearly and does not assume that you have studied a language before. You will learn everything you need to get the most out of a holiday or to go on to further study.

**Rupert Snell** is former Reader in Hindi at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London.

Why not try ● Hindi Conversation ● Hindi

● Beginner's Hindi Script ● or visit [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)?

Cover ● © Hugh Sitton/Getty Images ● Man with umbrella, Agra, India

the leader in self-learning with more than 500 titles, covering all subjects  
be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



UK £9.99

ISBN 978-0-340-85652-9

